

A GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE:

FOR THE USE OF

SCHOOLS,

WITH

EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES.

BY W. BINGHAM, A. M.,

OF THE HENCKEN SCHOOL.

CHICAGO: W. B. E.

1885.

Dec. 1913

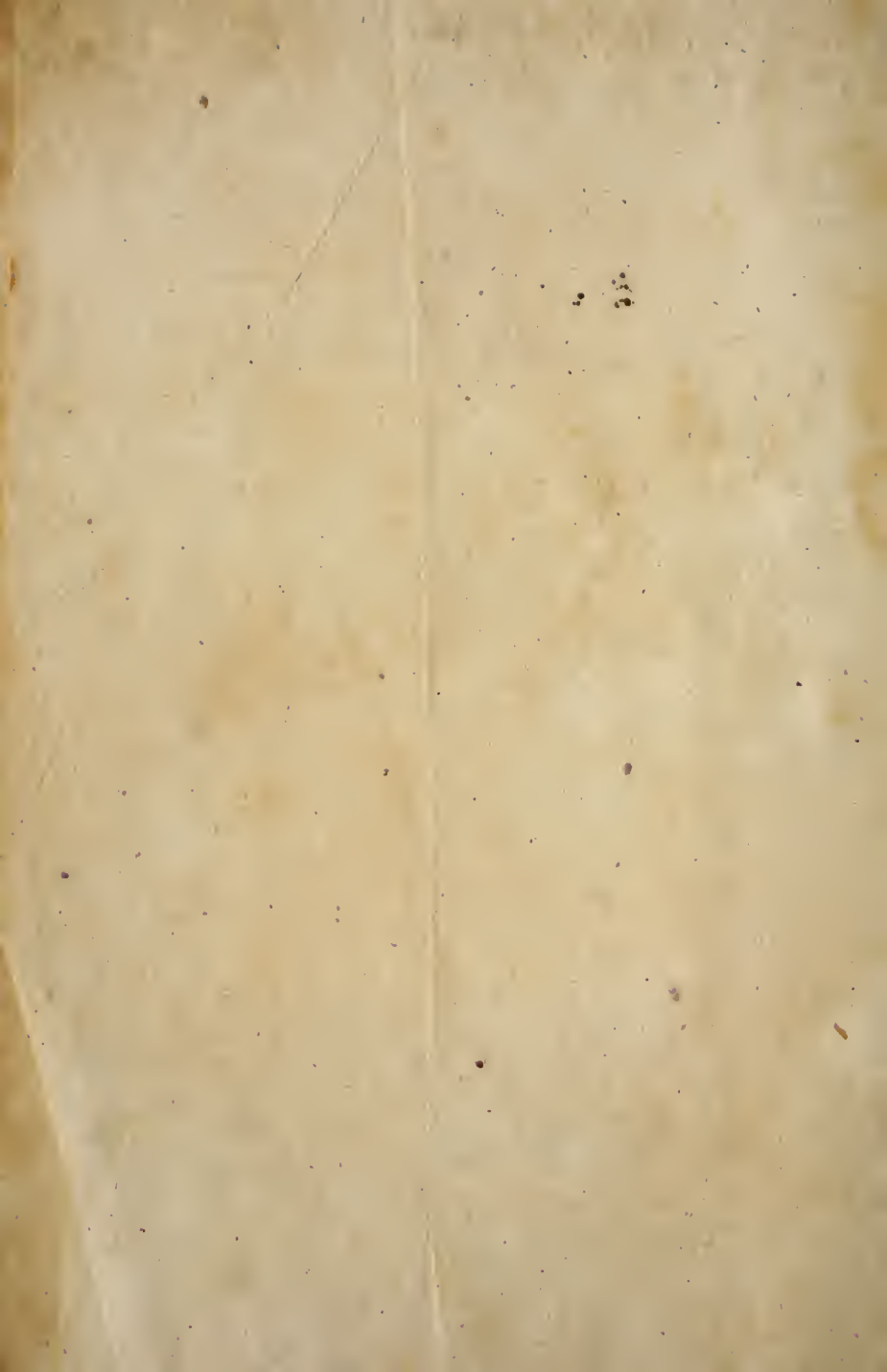
Exchange

25¢

FROM SOUTHERN BOOK EXCHANGE
RALEIGH, N. C.
DEALERS IN
OLD AND RARE BOOKS, ETC.

DUKE
UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY

Treasure Room





ERRATA.

The following are some of the most important *errata* in the Etymology and Syntax: the teacher will do well to correct at once.

Page 134, Rem. 1,	for <i>bove in</i>	read <i>bovem</i> .
" " Ex.	" <i>movebitur</i>	" <i>movebuntur</i> .
" 140	"	" { <i>edis</i> or <i>es</i> , <i>edit</i> or <i>est</i> ; <i>editis</i> or <i>estis</i> .
" "	" <i>iv-eroris</i>	" <i>iv-ero</i> , <i>-eris</i> , &c.
" 148	" § 83, 2	" § 84, 2.
" 152	" § 85, 2	" § 86, 2.
" 168, Examp. ;	" § 129	" § 129, Rem. 6.
" 170, <i>se ipse</i> ;	" § 84, b	" § 85, b.
" 173, § 144, Rem. 1,	<i>ducire</i>	" <i>ducere</i> .
" " R. xvi ;	" <i>Dative to</i>	" <i>Dative of</i> .
" " "	" <i>gerundine</i>	" <i>gerundive</i> .
" 175, Germanis ;	" § 141	" § 142.
" " mihi,	" xiv	" xvi.
" 180, annos,	" § 152	" § 153.
" 191, Rem. 1,	" <i>morire</i>	" <i>moriri</i> .
" 192, § 178, Rem. 1 ;	<i>epistola</i>	" <i>epistola</i> .
" 194, capiendi ;	" § 177	" § 176.
" 195, <i>must love</i> ;	" § 178, Rem. 2	" § 178, Rem. 1.
" 203,	" § 189, Exc	" § 189, Ex. (c).
" 206,	" <i>as he alleged</i>	" <i>as they alleged</i> .
" 207, Rem. 4 ;	" <i>imperus</i>	" <i>imperitus</i> .
" 216, R. li, b ;	" <i>occulustur</i>	" <i>occulletur</i> .
" 222 ; the reference,	§ 183, Rem.	should follow <i>vivamus</i> .
" 229 ; the running head should be	CRATIO OBLIQUA ; and that title should precede § 216	

A GRAMMAR
OF THE
LATIN LANGUAGE:

FOR THE USE OF
SCHOOLS,
WITH
EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES.

By Wm. BINGHAM, A. M.,
OF THE BINGHAM SCHOOL.

GREENSBORO, N. C.:
PUBLISHED BY STERLING, CAMPBELL & ALBRIGHT.
RICHMOND, VA., W. HARGRAVE WHITE.
1863.

41949

Entered according to Act of Congress,
in the year 1862, by
By WILLIAM BINGHAM,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Confed-
erate States, for the District of Pamlico,
North Carolina.

Oct 21

T. R.

4.7.5-

B 613

P R E F A C E .

In preparing the accompanying work it has been the aim of the author to supply what he has felt in his own experience to be a great desideratum,—a *practical first book in Latin*, suited to the capacity of beginners, and yet full enough for a book of reference throughout a course of preparation for college. Free use has been made of the works of the best German, English, and American authors, and no pains have been spared to produce a book adapted to the wants of our Southern youth. The almost insuperable difficulties in the way of publication render it impossible to present the work in the most desirable style of binding and typography; but the author is assured that such defects as result from the terrible struggle through which our nation is passing, will be readily overlooked.

It will be observed that the paradigms have been syllabicated with reference to the English method of pronunciation; but the teacher can without difficulty use either the Roman or Continental method.

Madvig's system of gender in the third declension has been adopted as the most philosophical and the shortest, all the rules and exceptions occupying but two pages; and

though teachers will find it inconvenient to have old associations broken up, the author is convinced that a fair trial will satisfy all that this system is the best.

The exercises have been taken, for the most part from classical authors, and are so arranged as to constitute a continual review of what precedes. Those teachers who prefer the synthetic method of instruction to the exclusion of the analytic, can omit the exercises, as the work is complete without them.

Many facts of the language, which the pupil will readily find out for himself, have been omitted; also a number which properly pertain to the subject of Latin prose composition, on which subject the author proposes to prepare a work for the use of schools.

The work, imperfect as the author is conscious that it is, is commended to the teachers of the Confederate States as an auxiliary, however feeble, in establishing Southern literary and intellectual independence.

OAKS, N. C., May 10th, 1863.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

§ 1. Latin Grammar is the science of the Latin language. It treats of the words of the language, and the laws by which they are combined into sentences.

It is divided into Etymology and Syntax.

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 2. Etymology treats, 1. Of the letters which make up words, and their pronunciation; 2. Of the changes which words undergo; 3. Of their derivation.

LETTERS.

§ 3. A letter is a mark used to represent a sound of the human voice.

In the Latin alphabet there are twenty-five letters. They are A,a; B,b; C,c; D,d; E,e; F,f; G,g; H,h; I,i; J,j; K,k; L,l; M,m; N,n; O,o; P,p; Q,q; R,r; S,s; T,t; U,u; V,v; X,x; Y,y; Z,z.

Remark. I and J were originally the same letter; so also U and V. K, Y, and Z are used only in words derived from the Greek. H is a breathing.

§ 4. Letters are divided into vowels and consonants. The vowels are. a, e, i, o, u, y.

Of the consonants,	{	four are liquids, l, m, n, r ;
		three are c sounds, c, g, q, — ;
		four are p sounds, p, b, f, v ;
		two are t sounds, t, d ;
		two are double consonants, x, z.

DIPHTHONGS.

§ 5. A diphthong is the union of two vowels in one sound. The diphthongs are ae, oe, (often written together, æ, œ) ai, au, ei, eu, oi.

PRONUNCIATION.

§ 6. *Continental method.*

Short a, as in *hat*.

Long a, as in *father*.

Short e, as in *met*.

Long e, as a in *made*.

Short i, as in *sit*.

Long i, as in *machine*.

Short o, as in *not*.

Long o, as in *no*.

u, as o in *do*.

æ and œ, as a in *made*.

au, as ou in *our*.

eu, as in *feud*.

ei, as i in *ice*.

§ 7. *English method.*

The letters are pronounced as in English :

Exc. 1. Final a has the broad sound, as in *ah*. Other final vowels have the long sound.

Exc. 2. Es final is pronounced like the English *ease*.

Exc. 3. Os final in plural cases is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*.

Exc. 4. C has the sound of s before e, i, and y, and the diphthongs æ, œ, and eu. Otherwise it has the sound of k.

Exc. 5. ch has the sound of k.

Exc. 6. G has the sound of j before e, i, y, æ, and œ.

SYLLABLES:

§ 8. There are no silent vowels in Latin ; but every

word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs; as *ma-re*.

2. A word { of one syllable is called a *monosyllable*; of two syllables, a *disyllable*; of more than two, a *polysyllable*.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the third from the last, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY, ACCENT.

§ 9. Rule. 1. All diphthongs are long.

Rule 2. A vowel before another vowel is short.

Rule 3. A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant is long by position.

Rule 4. Disyllables are accented on the penult; as *de-us*.

Rule 5. Polysyllables are accented

(a) on the penult if the penult is long; as *le-o-nis*.

(b) on the antepenult if the penult is short; as *dom-i-nus*.

EXPLANATION OF MARKS.

§ 10. The marks of punctuation are the *comma* (,), used to mark the shortest pauses; the *semicolon* (;), used to mark a pause twice as long as the comma; the *colon* (:), used to mark a pause three times as long as the comma; the *period* (.), used to mark the longest pause; the *interrogation point* (?), which shows that a question is asked; and the *exclamation point* (!), used to mark expressions of surprise, grief, &c. Penultimate vowels, when long, will be *italicized*.

DIVISION OF WORDS.

§ 11. I. Words are divided according to their *formation* into

1. *Primitive*; i. e. not derived from other words; as, *man*, *king*.

2. *Derivative*; i. e. derived from other words; as, *manly, kingdom*.

3. *Simple*; i. e. not made up of other words; as, *man*.

4. *Compound*; i. e. made up of other words: as, *mankind*.

II. Words are divided according to their *meaning* into eight classes called parts of speech: viz. the *Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection*.

NOUNS.

§ 12. 1. A noun is the name of a thing;* as, *man, city*.

2. A common noun is the name of any one of a class of things; as, *man, city*.

3. A proper noun is the name of an individual thing; as, *Cæsar, Rome*.

4. An abstract noun is the name of a quality, action, being, or mode of action or being; as, *goodness, running*.

5. A collective noun is one which in the singular denotes more than one; as, *multitude*.

Gender, Number, Case, Person.

§ 13. 1. To nouns belong *gender, number, case, and person*.

2. *Natural* gender denotes the distinction of sex.

* A *thing* is whatever one can *think* of (res,—*res*).

3. *Grammatical gender* is that which is determined, not by sex, but by declension and termination.

Rule 1. Names of male beings, and of most rivers, winds, months, mountains, and nations, are masculine.

Rule 2. Names of female beings, cities, countries, trees, plants, islands, ships, and gems, are feminine.

Rule 3. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are neuter.

Rule 4. Some nouns are either masculine or feminine. These, if they are names of living beings, are said to be of the common gender; if of things without life, of the doubtful gender.

§ 14. *Number* is the variation of form which shows whether one thing is meant, or more than one.

The *singular* number is the form which denotes one thing; as, *stell-a*, a star: the *plural* is the form which denotes more than one; as, *stell-æ*, stars.

§ 15. *Case* is the variation of form which shows the relation of the noun to other words.

Latin nouns have six cases: viz.

(a) The *nominative*, which answers the question *who?* or *what?* and gives the simple name of the thing spoken of;

(b) The *genitive*, which marks those relations expressed in English by *of*, or the possessive case; as, *umbra*, the shade, (*of what?*) *sylvæ*, of the forest;

(c) The *dative*, which denotes that *to* or *for* which, or *with reference to* which, any thing is, or is done;

(d) The *accusative*, which is the object of a transitive verb, or of certain prepositions;

(e) The *vocative*, which is used when a person is addressed;

(f) The *ablative*, which marks those relations expressed in English by *from, with, in, by*.

§ 16. *Person* means the character which a noun or pronoun has, according as it represents the *speaker*, the person *spoken to*, or the thing *spoken of*.

A noun or pronoun representing the *speaker* is of the *first person*; as, *I, Darius, make a decree*. Here "*I*," and "*Darius*" are of the 1st person.

A noun or pronoun representing the person *spoken to* is of the *second person*; as, *Do you hear me, Robert?* Here "*you*" and "*Robert*" are of the 2nd person.

Remark.—Things without life are sometimes addressed and are then said to be *personified*, or treated as persons.

A noun or pronoun representing the thing spoken of is of the *third person*; as, *John runs, water freezes*. Here "*John*" and "*water*" are of the 3rd person.

INFLECTION.

§ 17. The changes which words undergo to express their different relations is called *inflection*.

The inflection of nouns is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the endings of the genitive singular.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 18. Latin nouns which have *æ* in the genitive singular are of the first declension. The terminations are,

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. and Voc.	<i>a</i>	<i>æ</i>
Gen.	<i>æ</i>	<i>arum</i>
Dat.	<i>æ</i>	<i>is</i>
Acc.	<i>am</i>	<i>as</i>
Abl.	<i>a</i>	<i>is.</i>

By adding these terminations to the stem *mens*—, which means *a table*, we have the following

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>mens-a</i> , a table.	<i>mens-æ</i> , tables.
Gen. <i>mens-æ</i> of a table.	<i>mens-arum</i> , of tables.
Dat. <i>mens-æ</i> , to or for a table.	<i>mens-is</i> , to or for tables.
Acc. <i>mens-am</i> , a table.	<i>mens-as</i> , tables.
Voc. <i>mens-a</i> , O table!	<i>mens-æ</i> , O tables!
Abl. <i>mens-a</i> , with, from, in, by, a table.	<i>mens-is</i> , with, from, in, by, tables.

Remark.—The Latin has no article; therefore *mensa* may be rendered *a table*, or *the table*, according to the connection.

Rule. Latin nouns of this declension are feminine.

Exc. 1. Names and appellations of men, as *Galba*, *nauta*.

Exc. 2. Names of rivers.

Exc. 3. *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea, is masc.; and *dama*, a fallow deer, and *talpa*, a mole, are common.

Note.—*Dea*, a goddess; *equa*, a mare; *filia*, a daughter; and *mula*, a she-mule, have sometimes *abus* in the dative and ablative plural.

For Greek nouns of 1st Dec., see appendix I.

EXERCISE. 1.

§ 19. Like *mensa* decline the following nouns, and commit to memory their meanings.

Aquila,	eagle.	Epistola,	letter.
Aqua,	water.	Nauta, (§ 18, Exc. 1.)	sailor.
Columba,	dove.	Insula,	island.

Corona,	<i>crown</i>	Luna,	<i>moon.</i>
Ara,	<i>altar,</i>	Medicina,	<i>medicine.</i>
Agricola, (§ 18, Exc. 1.)	<i>farmer.</i>	Poeta, (§ 18, Exc. 1.)	<i>poet.</i>
Ala,	<i>wing.</i>	Regina,	<i>queen.</i>
Ancilla,	<i>maid-servant.</i>	Fuga,	<i>flight.</i>
Injuria,	<i>injury.</i>	Pluma,	<i>feather.</i>
Belga, (§ 18, Exc. 1.)	<i>a Belgian,</i>	Filia,	<i>daughter.</i>

Translate into English.

Columbæ. Coronarum. Aris. Reginam. Filiabus.
 Injuriis. Belgarum. Fuga. Alis. Ancillæ. Ancillis.
 Injuriarum. Columbis.

Translate into Latin.

Of water. For the farmer. Of the maid servants. To the farmers. By wings. Of feathers. To sailors. The letter. By the letters. In the island. Of islands. Of the moon.

EXERCISE. 2.

§ 20. *Rule.* The genitive is used to limit the meaning of nouns, and also of some adjectives, verbs, and adverbs.

Thus *pluma* means *a feather, any feather*; but when the genitive *columbæ* is added, the application of *pluma* is *limited, or confined* to the dove; *columbæ pluma* means *a dove's feather*, and no other sort.

Rule of position. The emphatic word, whether limiting or limited, stands first. Thus, *filia reginæ*, the *daughter* (not the son) of the queen; *reginæ filia*, the *queen's* (not the king's) daughter.

Translate into English.

Columbæ pluma. Columbarum plumæ. Columbæ alis.
 Filia agricolæ. Agricolaæ filia. Agricolarum filiabus. Reginarum coronæ. Coronæ reginarum. Nautæ epistola. Injuria poetæ. Insula Belgarum. Fuga ancillæ. Ancillarum fuga.

Translate into Latin.

[Emphatic words are in italics.]

In the island of the Belgians. For the altars of the Belgians. A sailor's letter. The Queen's letter. By the flight of the farmer. The flight of the farmer's doves. The injury of the queen's maid-servants. O daughters of the queen's maid-servants! The water of the island.

EXERCISE. 3.

Subject and Predicate. Partial conjugation of verbs.

§ 21. I. A sentence is a thought expressed in words ; as, *snow melts*.

1. Every sentence consists of

- (a) A *Predicate* ; i. e. that which is *declared* ;
- (b) A *subject* ; i. e. that of which the declaration is made.

In the sentence "*snow melts*," the predicate is "*melts*," because "*melts*" is what is declared or asserted about "*snow*;" the subject is "*snow*," because it is the thing about which the declaration is made—what *melts*? *snow*.

2. The *Predicate* is a verb alone, (as *melts* in the above example,) or the verb *to be* with a noun, adjective, or participle ; as, *snow is cold*.

3. The *subject* is a noun, or some word or phrase used as a noun, and may be known by asking the question *who* ? or *what* ? with the predicate ; as, *John runs*. (*Who runs*? *John*.) *To play is pleasant*. (*What is pleasant*? *To play*.)

4. The subject and predicate may stand alone, or each may have other words limiting its meaning ; as, *boys run* ; *some boys run fast*.

II. A verb is a word which declares, or affirms something.

1. Verbs have

(a) *Moods*, or different forms which express different kinds of affirmation.

(b) *Tenses*, or different forms to show the time when the thing declared takes place.

(c) *Voices*, or different forms which show whether the subject acts, (as, *John strikes*,) or is acted upon, (as, *John is struck*.)

(d) *Persons* and *Numbers*, or different forms which correspond to the person and number of the subject.

2. These various forms are distinguished from one another by certain endings; and the adding of these endings to the stem is called *conjugation*.

MOODS.

III. 1. The *Infinitive* mood expresses the action of the verb simply, without reference to any subject; as, *am-are, to love*.

2. The *Indicative* mood declares a fact, or asks a question; as, *amat, he loves; amat-ne? Does he love?*

TENSES.

IV. 1. The *Present* tense expresses incomplete action in present time; as, *amo, I love, I am loving*.

2. The *Imperfect* tense expresses incomplete action in past time; as, *amabam, I was loving*.

3. The *Future* tense expresses incomplete action in future time; as, *amabo, I will love, I will be loving*.

CONJUGATIONS.

V. 1. There are four Conjugations, distinguished from one another by the termination of the Infinitive Present Active. The Infinitive Present Active of the first Conjugation ends in *-are*.

Rule. To find the stem of a verb, strike off the *Infinitive ending*.

• ACTIVE TERMINATIONS.

INFINITIVE, *a-re*.

INDICATIVE.

Present. Imperfect. Future.

Singular.

1st	Person	o	<i>a-bam</i>	<i>a-bo</i>
2nd	"	as	<i>a-bas</i>	<i>a-bis</i>
3rd	"	at	<i>a-bat</i>	<i>a-bit</i>

Plural.

1st	"	<i>a-mus</i>	<i>a-ba-mus</i>	<i>ab-i-mus</i>
2nd	"	<i>a-tis</i>	<i>a-ba-tis</i>	<i>ab-i-tis</i>
3rd	"	ant	<i>a-bant</i>	<i>a-bunt</i>

By adding these terminations to the stem *am* of *amare*, to love, we have the following :

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, *a-ma-re*, to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a-mo,*</i>	<i>I love, or am loving,</i>
	<i>a-mas,</i>	<i>thou lovest, or art loving,</i>
	<i>a-mat,</i>	<i>he loves, or is loving,</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a-ma-mus,</i>	<i>we love, or are loving,</i>
	<i>a-ma-tis,</i>	<i>ye or you love, or are loving,</i>
	<i>a-mant,</i>	<i>they love, or are loving.</i>

* Accented syllables are italicized above, whether long or short.

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	a-ma-bam, a-ma-bas, a-ma-bat,	<i>I was loving, thou wast loving. he was loving,</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	am-a-ba-mus, am-a-ba-tis, a-ma-bant,	<i>we were loving, ye or you were loving, they were loving.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	a-ma-bo, a-ma-bis, a-ma-bit,	<i>I shall love, thou wilt love, he will love,</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	a-mab-i-mus, a-mab-i-tis, a-ma-bunt,	<i>we shall love, ye or you will love, they will love.</i>

Form in the same manner these tenses of

vol-are,	to fly,	laud-are,	to praise,
salt-are,	to dance,	voc-are,	to call,
cant-are,	to sing,	occup-are,	to seize,
delect-are,	to delight,	arm-are,	to arm,
par-are,	to prepare,	ædific-are,	to build.

EXERCISE. 4.

1. A *Transitive* verb is one which requires an object to complete the sense; as, *poeta reginam laudat*, the poet praises the queen.

2. An *Intransitive* verb is one which does not require an object to complete the sense; as, *aquila volat*, the eagle flies.

3. *Rule of Syntax.* The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative.

4. *Rule of Syntax.* The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. (*Reginam* above is the direct object of *laudat*; i. e. the thing to which the praising is directed.)

5. *Rule of Syntax.* The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

6. *Rule of Position.* The subject usually stands at the beginning of the sentence.

7. *Rule of Position.* The direct object precedes the verb.

8. To *analyze* a sentence is to separate it into its parts and show their relation to each other.

9. To *analyze* a word is to tell its properties, and its relation to other words.

Poeta reginam laudat, the poet praises the queen.

ANALYSIS OF THE SENTENCE.

The predicate of this sentence is *laudat*, because it is that which is *declared* or asserted about the poet.

The subject is *poeta*, because it is that of which the *praising* is *declared*. (Who praises? The poet.)

The predicate is limited by *reginam*, the direct object, (i. e. the thing to which the praising is *directed*.)

ANALYSIS OF THE WORDS.

Poeta is a common noun, masculine, 1st (decl.),—here decline it,—found in the nominative singular, subject of *audat*. Rule, *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.* (Here let the teacher ask, “Why called a noun? Why a common noun? Why masc.? Why of the 1st decl.? Why accented on the penult? &c.”)

Reginam is a common noun, feminine, 1st. (here decline it,) found in the accusative singular, object of *laudat*. Rule, *The object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.*

Laudat is a verb, transitive, 1st (conj.), found in the Indicative-Present active, 3rd person singular, (here inflect the tense,) agreeing with *poeta* as its subject. Rule, *The*

verb agrees with its subject in number and person. (Here let the teacher ask, "Why called a verb? Why transitive? Why of 1st conj.? Why indicative? &c.)

Translate into English and analyze.

§ 22. Agricola poetam amat. Aquila volabat. Ancillæ medicinam parabant. Belgæ aras ædificabant. Nautæ insulam occupabunt. Corona reginam delectabit. Agricola filiam vocabat.

Translate into Latin.

The maid-servants are preparing the table. The queen was calling the farmer's daughter. The poets will praise the queen. The sailor's daughter will sing. The farmers are building an altar. The moon delights the poet. We love the queen. You were calling the maid-servants.

§ 23.

EXERCISE 5.

Vocabulary.

umbra, æ, shadow.

obscur-are to obscure.

terra, æ, earth.

incola, æ, inhabitant.

insidiæ, arum,

used only in plural, {ambush,

{snares.

puella, æ, girl.

copiæ, arum, forces.

(copia, in the singular, means abundance in the plural, forces.)

1. The subject, as well as the predicate may have words limiting its meaning.

2. The pronouns *I, thou, we, you*, are not usually expressed in Latin, as the endings of the verb show the person and number.

3. The words *my, thy, his, their, &c.*, are not expressed in Latin, when the relation is obvious. Thus, *The queen loves her daughter*, Regina filiam amat.

Translate into English and analyze.

In analysis of sentences give the predicate with its limiters, then the subject with its limiters.

Ancilla reginæ agricolæ filiam vocabit. Terræ umbra lunam obscurat. Fuga nautarum incolæ insulæ delectat. Copiæ Belgarum insulam occupabant. Nautæ puellas vocant. Plumæ columbarum reginæ ancillas delectabunt.

Translate into English.

The flight of the queen delights the Belgians. Farmers love (their) daughters. The sailor loves the queen's maid-servant. The farmer's daughter will prepare the queen's table. A dove's feather delights the sailor's daughter. A crown delights the queen's daughter. An eagle's feather delights the queen's maid-servant; a crown delights the queen's daughter.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 24. Latin nouns whose genitive ending is *i* are of the second declension.

Those which have *um* in the nominative, are neuter; the rest, masculine.

ENDINGS.

Masculine.

Neuter.

	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	us	i	Nom.	um	a
Gen.	i	orum	Gen.	i	orum
Dat.	o	is	Dat.	o	is
Acc.	um	os	Acc.	um	a
Voc.	e	i	Voc.	um	a
Abl.	o	is	Abl.	o	is

By adding these endings to the stem *domin—*, master, and the stem *regn—*, kingdom we obtain the following:

PARADIGM.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	* <i>dom i nus</i> , a master.	<i>dom i ni</i> , masters.
Gen.	<i>dom i ni</i> , of a master.	<i>dom i no-rum</i> , of masters.
Dat.	<i>dom i no</i> , to or for a master.	<i>dom i nis</i> , to or for masters.
Acc.	<i>dom i num</i> , a master.	<i>dom i nos</i> , masters.
Voc.	<i>dom i ne</i> , O master!	<i>dom i ni</i> , O masters!
Abl.	<i>dom i no</i> , with, &c., a master.	<i>dom i nis</i> , with, &c., masters.

* In paradigms, accented syllables will be italicized, whether long or short.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>reg num, a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg na, kingdoms.</i>
Gen.	<i>reg ni, of a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg no rum, of kingdoms.</i>
Dat.	<i>reg no, to or for a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg nis, to or for kingdoms.</i>
Acc.	<i>reg num, a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg na, kingdoms.</i>
Voc.	<i>reg num, O kingdom!</i>	<i>reg na, O kingdoms!</i>
Abl.	<i>reg no, with, &c., a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg nis, with, &c., kingdoms.</i>

Rem. 1. Names of *trees, plants, &c.*, are fem. by the general rule. *Alvus, belly; carbasus, linen; colus, distaff; humus, ground; and vannus, fan,* are fem.

Virus, *juice*, and pelagus, *sea*, are neuter. Vulgus, *common people*, is neuter—rarely masculine.

Rem. 2. In proper names in *ius*, with *filius*, *son*, and *genius*, *guardian spirit*, the vocative ending *e* is absorbed; as, *Tullius*, voc. *Tulli*. *Meus* has *mi* in the voc. *Deus*, *god*, has *Deus* in the voc., and in the plural N. and V. *Dii*; G. *Deorum*; Dat. and Abl. *Dii*, *Deis*, *Dis*; Acc. *Deos*.

Rem. 3. The ending *orum* of the Gen. pl. is sometimes contracted into *um*.

Rem. 4. Neuter nouns of *all declensions* have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike, and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

§ 25.

EXERCISE 6.

Vocabulary.

dominus, i, {master (of a family), lord.	legatus, i, {ambassador, lieutenant.
servus, i, slave.	vicus, i, village.
nuntius, i, messenger.	hortus, i, garden.
Tullius, i, Tully.	lupus, i, wolf.
Crassus, i, Crassus.	Germanus, i, a German.
captivus, i, captive.	re-voc-are, to recall, call back ;
Helvetius, i, a Helvetian.	re- means back.
Gallus, i, a Gaul.	con-voc-are, to call together ;
nec-are, to kill, murder.	con- means together.
ulul-are, to howl.	rog-are, to ask for, entreat.
auxilium, i, aid.	

Translate into English and analyze.

Lupi ululant. Dominus servos amat. Reginae filios
amant. Crassus nuntios Gallorum convocabit. Tullius
agricolae hortum occupabat. Crassus vias Helvetiorum

occupabit. Galli Germanorum legatos necabunt. Germani captivos necant. Helvetii legatos revocant. Belgæ insularum incolas necabant. Tullius servum vocat.

Translate into Latin.

Tully's slaves love their* master. The master calls together his* slaves. The slaves of Crassus will call the queen's maid-servants. The inhabitants of the island are killing the captives. We will call together the sons of Crassus. Tully's son loves the sailor's daughter. The ambassadors of the Helvetians praise the queen. He will call together the farmer's sons. The messengers ask for aid. The Belgians will ask for aid.

STEMS IN *ER*.

§ 26. Nouns whose stems end in *er*, drop the endings *us* and *e* of the nom. and voc.; as *gener*, not *generus*. Most of them likewise drop the *e* of the stem in the oblique cases (all but nom. and voc. ;) as *ager*, Gen. *agri*.

PARADIGM.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>A son-in-law.</i>		<i>A field.</i>	
N. <i>Gener,</i>	<i>gen-e-ri,</i>	N. <i>A ger,</i>	<i>a gri.</i>
G. <i>gen e ri,</i>	<i>gen e ro rum,</i>	G. <i>a gri,</i>	<i>a gro rum,</i>
D. <i>gen e ro,</i>	<i>gen e ris,</i>	D. <i>a gro,</i>	<i>a gris,</i>
Ac. <i>gen e rum,</i>	<i>gen e ros,</i>	Ac. <i>a grum,</i>	<i>a gros,</i>
V. <i>gen er,</i>	<i>gen e ri,</i>	V. <i>a ger,</i>	<i>a gri.</i>
Ab <i>gen e ro,</i>	<i>gen e ris.</i>	Ab. <i>a gro,</i>	<i>a gris.</i>

Rem. 1. The following nouns retain *e* of the stem in all the cases *adulter*, *adulterer*; *gener*, *son-in-law*; *Liber*, *Bacchus*; *liberi*, *children*; *puer*, *boy*; *socer*, *father-in-law*; *vesper*, *evening*; and compounds of *fer* and *ger*; also the national names *Iber* and *Celtiber*.

* See § 23, 3.

Rem. 2. The solitary noun *vir*, *man*, is declined like *gener.* N. *vir*; G. *viri*, &c.

For Greek nouns of the 2nd Dec., see appendix II.

§ 27. EXERCISE 7.

Vocabulary.

puer, i, boy.
vir, i, man.
socer, i, father-in-law.
gener, i, son-in-law.
magister, i, master (of a school.)
ager, i, field.
liberi, orum, children.

equus, i, horse.
infren-are, to bridle.
lani-are, to tear in pieces
bellum, i, war.
folium, i, leaf.
ovum, i, egg.
aper, i, wild boar.

Translate into English and analyze.

Agricola equum filiae infrenat. Apri generum reginae laniabunt. Folia silvae ancillam reginae delectant. Magister pueros convocabat. Pueri magistrum amant. Tullii filia socerum amabit. Germani Gallorum agros occupabant. Columbarum ova liberos delectant. Viri equos infrenabunt. Bellum Germanos delectant. Socer generum amat. Servus domini equum infrenat. Nauta liberos amat.

Translate into Latin.

The poet's children love the queen. Crassus praises the fields of the Helvetians. The Germans love war. The wolves will tear in pieces the farmer's children. Wild boars love the shade of the forest. The master will call back the boys. Tully's horse loves (his) master. The farmer's slaves are bridling the horses.

EXERCISE 8.

§ 28.

The Dative Case.

1. The Dative expresses that *to* or *for* which, or *with* reference to, which any thing is, or is done.

2. *Rule of Syntax.* The remote object of a verb is in

the Dative; as, *servus domino medicinam parat*, the servant prepares medicine for his master.

Rem. The *remote object* of a verb is the thing towards which its action *tends* without necessarily *reaching* it. Thus in the above example the action expressed by *parat* is exerted directly upon the *medicine*,—*medicinam*, and the point to which it *tends* is the *master*,—*domino*,—though it does not necessarily *reach* that point, since it is not implied that the master *receives* or *uses* the medicine prepared for him.

3. *Rule of Position.* The *remote object* precedes the *direct*.

Vocabulary.

liber,i, *book*.
via,æ, *way*.
taurus,i, *bull*.
agnus,i, *lamb*.
hædus,i, *kid*.

monstr-are, *to show*.
mact-are, *to sacrifice*.
dare, *to give*, (the only verb of the 1st
conj. having a short in the pres.)

Translate into English and analyze.

Magister puero librum dat. Puella Crasso viam monstrabat. Agricola diis aram ædificabit. Galli diis tauros mactant. Servi reginæ hædum parant. Lupi agnos laniabunt. Agricolæ filius puellæ ovum dat. Galli Germanis insidias parabunt. Crassus copiis Gallorum insidias parat. Regina agricolæ equum dat. Galli nautis insulam monstrant. Reginæ ancilla Gallis Germanorum insidias monstrat.

Translate into Latin.

The queen's father-in-law will give (to) the poet a field. The queen of the Helvetians is preparing snares for Tully's forces. The inhabitants of the island were sacrificing a lamb to the gods. The master is preparing a book for the boys. The slaves are preparing a way for their master. The master gives (to) his slave a kid. The slave gives (to) the farmer's son a dove's egg.

EXERCISE 9.

§29.

The Ablative Case.

1. *Rule of Syntax.* The Ablative expresses the *cause, manner, means, and instrument*; as,

Cæcus avaritia, Blinded by avarice.

Hoc modo fecit, He did it in this manner.

Aquila alis volat, The eagle flies with his wings.

Captivum gladio necat, He kills the captive with a sword.

2. *Rule of Syntax.* The Ablative, (usually with the preposition *in*,) expresses the *place where*.

3. *Rule of Position.* Expressions of *cause, manner, means, instrument, time, and place*, precede the predicate. Expressions of *manner, means, and instrument*, are placed after the direct object, while those of *cause, time, and place* usually precede it.

Vocabulary.

in, in; (preposition with abl.)

terra, æ, the earth, ground.

tuba, æ, trumpet.

signum, i, signal, sign.

venenum, i, poison.

gladius, i, sword.

Marcus, i, Mark.

ar-are, to plow.

vex-are, to annoy, trouble.

vulner-are, to wound.

cultus, tri, knife.

ambul-are, to walk.

Translate into English and analyze.

Marci filius Gallis signum tuba dat. (*The predicate is here limited by Gallis, the remote object; signum, the direct object; and tuba, the ablative of the instrument.*) *Agricola terram equis arat.* *Captivus Tullium cultro vulnerabit.* *Poeta in silvis ambulat.* *Marcus Helvetios injuriis vexabat.* *Nauta reginæ generum gladio necabit.** *Germani captivos gladiis necant.** *Aquilæ alis volant.* *Regina filio regnum dat.* *Ancilla reginæ Crassum veneno necat.*

* *Necare* means to murder, usually with poison, hunger, &c.; but sometimes also with a weapon.

bit. Umbram silvæ amamus. Dominus servos tuba convocat. Reginae socer filium Tullii injuriis vexat.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer's sons will plow the fields with horses. The girls are dancing in the forest. The poet was walking in the garden. The slaves of Tully are preparing snares for the ambassadors of the Helvetians in the forest. The inhabitants of the islands will kill the ambassadors with their swords. The Germans were annoying the Gauls with injuries. Doves fly with their wings. The farmer will give the sailor's daughter a lamb. Wolves are howling in the forest.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 30. Nouns whose genitive ending is *is* are of the third declension.

CASE ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Masc. and fem.	Neut.	Masc. and fem.	Neut.
N. <i>s, (generally).</i>	<i>e. (sometimes.)</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>a, (ia).</i>
G. <i>is.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>um, (ium).</i>	<i>um, (ium).</i>
D. <i>i.</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>ibus.</i>	<i>ibus.</i>
Ac. <i>em, (sometimes im).</i>	<i>Like nom.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>a, (ia).</i>
V. <i>Like nom.</i>	<i>Like nom.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>a, (ia).</i>
Ab. <i>e, (sometimes i).</i>	<i>(e, sometimes i).</i>	<i>ibus.</i>	<i>ibus.</i>

Nouns of the third declension are divided into six classes, viz. :—

I. Nouns which add *s* to the stem in the nominative without any vowel change. (*Feminines*). As, *urb-s, urbs*.

II. Nouns which insert a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*. (*Feminines*). As, *rup-e-s, rupes*.

III. Nouns which change the stem-vowel *i* into *e* before adding *s*. As, stem *milit*, *milet-s, miles*. (*Masculines*.)

IV. Nouns which add *e* to the stem. (*Neuters*). As, *mar-e, mare*.

V. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the nominative without adding *s*. (*Masculines*, except nouns in *al, ar, ur*, which are neuter). As, *consul*.

VI. Nouns which change the stem in the nominative without adding *s*. As, stem *virgin*,—Nom. *virgo*.

N. B. A *c*-sound with *s* makes *x*. As, *leg-s, lex; arc-s, arx*. *D* or *t* before *s* is dropped. As, *font-s, fons*.

§ 31. CLASS I. The nominative is formed by adding *s* to the stem without changing the stem-vowel.

PARADIGMS.

Singular.					
	<i>City.</i>	<i>Law.</i>	<i>Praise.</i>	<i>Art.</i>	<i>Citadel.</i>
N. & V.	Urb-s,	Lex, (leg-s)	Laus, (laud-s)	Ars, (art-s)	Arx, (arc-s)
G.	ur-bis,	le-gis,	lau-dis,	ar-tis.	ar-cis,
D.	ur-bi,	le-gi,	lau-di,	ar-ti,	ar-ci,
Ac.	ur-bem,	le-gem,	lau-dem,	ar-tem,	ar-com,
Abl.	ur-be,	le-ge,	lau-de,	ar-te,	ar-ce
Plural.					
N. & V.	ur-bes,	le-ges,	lau-des,	ar-tes,	ar-ces,
G.	ur-bi-um,	le-gum,	lau-dum,	ar-ti-um,	ar-ci-um,
D.	ur-bi-bus,	le-gi bus,	lau-di-bus,	ar-ti-bus,	ar-ci-bus,
Ac.	ur-bes,	le-ges,	lau-des,	ar-tes.	ar-ces,
Abl.	ur-bi-bus.	le-gi-bus.	lau-di-bus.	ar-ti-bus.	ar-ci-bus.

Rule. Stems ending in two consonants, with *dos, lis, fraus, vis, faux*, (nom. obs.), *nix, compes, strix*, have *ium* in the genitive plural.

Rule. Stems of more than one syllable in *nt* and *rt* (adding *s*), with names of nations in *as*, have *ium* and sometimes *um*.

Rem. 1. Other nouns in *as* with *fornax* and *palus*, sometimes have *um*. *Quiris* and *Samnis* have *ium*.

Rem. 2. *Pars*, part, and *lens*, lentile, have sometimes *im* in the

accusative; and the same, with *sors*, lot, and *tridens*, trident, have *e* or *i* in the abl. *Partim* is usually an adverb.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which form the nominative by adding *s* to the stem without vowel change, are feminine; except

Masculines.

1. *Dens*, tooth, and its compounds; *pons*, fountain; *pons*, bridge; and *mons*, mountain; *cliens*, client; *rudens*, rope, (rarely fem.); and compounds of *as*.

2. *Grex*, flock; Greek nouns in *ax*. and *ix*, with *calix*, cup; *foenix*, arch; *perdix*, partridge; *tradux*, vine-branch.

3. *Paries*, wall; *pes*, foot; *lapis*, stone.

Masculine or Feminine.

Many nouns denoting living beings, with *scrobs*, ditch; *stirps*, trunk of a tree; *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime.

EXERCISE 10.

§ 32. 1. The ablative is used with prepositions which imply rest in a place; as, *in urbe habitat*, he lives in the city; or motion from a place; as, *ex urbe equitat*, he rides out of the city.

2. The accusative (the *whither* case) is used with prepositions implying motion to a place; as, *in urbem venit*, he comes into the city; as, *ad regem venit*, he comes to the king.

3. **Caution.** To, when it implies motion must be translated by *ad* with the acc.

4. **Rule of Position.** A preposition with its case precedes the predicate.

Vocabulary.

in, (preposition with acc. or abl.) in or into.
ad, (prep. with acc.) to, towards.
ex, (prep. with abl.) out of.
equit-are, to ride on horseback.

dens, dent-is, tooth.
rudens, rudent-is, rope.
pes, ped-is, foot.
calx, calc-is, heel.

hiem-are, *to winter, spend the winter.*
 serv-are, *to preserve, protect.*
 viol-are, *to dishonor, break; (a law, &c.)*
 habit-are, *to dwell, live.*
 mand-are, *to intrust.*
 destin-are, *to fasten.*
 rex, reg-is, *king.*
 plebs, pleb-is, *common people.*
 ferrum, i, *iron, the sword.*
 cliens, client-is *client.*

grex, greg-is, *flock.*
 lapis, lapid-is, *stone.*
 Gallia, æ, *Gall.*
 Germania, æ, *Germany.*
 antenna, æ, *sail-yard.*
 malus, i, *mast.*
 pilum, i, *dart.*
 libertas, libertat-is, *liberty.*
 nobilitas, nobilitat-is, *nobility.*
 Orgetorix, Orgetorig-is, *Orgetorix.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Orgetorix leges Helvetiorum violabat. Plebs libertatem ferro servabit. Nautæ antennis ad malos rudentibus destinant. Puer calcem servi lapide vulnerat. Crassus ex urbe ad vicum equitat. Copiæ Germanorum in Gallia hiemabunt. Galli in Gallia habitant. Rex nobilitati urbem mandat. Crassi filius clientes ex agris in urbem convocat. Lupi dentibus agnoscunt laniant. Galli Crassum pilis necabunt. Germani, Gallos bellis vexant.

Translate into Latin.

The boys are riding from the village to the city. The farmer's sons live in the forest. The doves will fly out of the fields into the forest. The king was calling together the common people out of the village into the city. The king will give the kingdom to his son. Crassus will break the laws of Gaul. The king's son will preserve the liberties of the common people. The boys are wounding the king's messengers with stones. The inhabitants of Germany will winter in the island of the Belgians. Horses walk with (their) feet. A flock of doves is flying out of the forest. The sailor will fasten the yard to the mast with ropes. The king was slaying the nobility with the sword.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 33. CLASS II. The nominative inserts a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*,) before adding *s* to the stem. (*Feminines.*)

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Rup e s, rock.</i>	<i>Vall i s, valley.</i>
N. and V.	<i>Ru pes.</i>	<i>Val lis.</i>
Gen.	<i>ru pis.</i>	<i>val lis.</i>
Dat.	<i>ru pi.</i>	<i>val li.</i>
Acc.	<i>ru pem.</i>	<i>val lem.</i>
Abl.	<i>ru pe.</i>	<i>val le.</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		
N., A. and V.	<i>ru pes.</i>	<i>val les.</i>
Gen.	<i>ru pi um.</i>	<i>val li um.</i>
Dat. and Abl.	<i>ru pi bus.</i>	<i>val li bus.</i>

Rem. 1. The following nouns have *im* in the accusative.

(a) Names of *places, rivers, and gods* in *is*; these sometimes also have *in* in the acc. *Scaldis* has *in* and *im*; *Liris* has *im, in, and em*; and *Liger* has *Ligerim*.

(b) *Amussis, a mason's rule.* *Ravis, hoarseness.*
Buris, a plough tail. *Securis, an axe.*
Cannabis, hemp. *Sinapis, mustard.*
Cucumis, (gen. is), a cucumber. *Sitis, thirst.*
Mephitis, foul air. *Tussis, a cough.*
Pelvis, a basin. *Vis, strength.*

Rem. 2. The following have *im*, and sometimes *em*:

Febris, a fever. *Puppis, the stern.*
Restis, a rope. *Turris, a tower.*

Rem. 3. The following have *em*, and rarely *im*:

Bipennis, a battle-axe. *Messis, a harvest.* *Præsepis, a stall.*
Clavis, a key. *Navis, a ship.* *Sementis, a sowing.*
Strigilis, a flesh-brush.

Rem. 4. Nouns which have *im* in the accusative, with names of months in *er* and *is*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi*; *Aprilis, Aprili*.

But *Bætis, cannabis, and sinapis* have *e* or *i*.

Rem. 5. Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *turris, turre* or *turri*.

But *restis* has *e* only.

Rem. 6. The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but most of them have oftener *e* than *i*:

Amnis,	Civis,	Corbis,	Ignis,	Postis,
Anguis,	Classis,	Finis,	Mugilis,	Sordes,
Avis,	Collis,	Fustis,	Orbis,	Unguis,
Bilis,	Convallis,	Canalis,	Ovis,	Vectis.

Rem. 7. Names of towns, when denoting the *place where*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *Carthagini*, at Carthage.

Rem. 8. Nouns of this class (adding *s* with connecting vowel *e* or *i*,) have *ium* in the genitive plural.

Exc. Canis, *dog*; juvenis, *young man*; foris, *door*; mugilis, *mullet*; proles, *offspring*; strues, *pile*; vates, *prophet*, have *um*; also generally apis, *bee*; strigilis, *flesh-brush*; volucris, *bird*; sometimes, *mensis* and *cædes*.

Rule of Gender. Nouns of this class are feminine.

Exc. 1. Palumbes, *vates*, *vepres*, are masculine or feminine.

Exc. 2. The following in *is* are masculine or feminine:

Amnis, <i>river</i> .	Canis, <i>dog</i> .	Funis, <i>rope</i> .
Anguis, <i>snake</i> .	Clunis, <i>haunch</i> .	Scrobis, <i>ditch</i> .
Callis, <i>path</i> .	Corbis, <i>basket</i> .	Tigris, <i>tiger</i> .
Canalis, <i>pipe</i> .	Finis, <i>end</i> .	Torquis, <i>chain</i> .

Fines, *boundaries*, is always masculine.

Exc. 3. The following are masculine:

Axis, <i>axle</i> .	Follis, <i>bellows</i> .	Piscis, <i>fish</i> .
Aqualis, <i>water-pot</i> .	Fustis, <i>club</i> .	Postis, <i>post</i> .
Caulis, <i>stalk</i> .	Ignis, <i>fire</i> .	Sentis, <i>brier</i> .
Cassis, <i>net</i> .	Manes, <i>pl., shades</i> .	Sodalis, <i>companion</i> .
Collis, <i>hill</i> .	Mensis, <i>month</i> .	Torris, <i>firebrand</i> .
Crinis, <i>hair</i> .	Mugilis, <i>mullet</i> .	Unguis, <i>nail</i> .
Ensis, <i>sword</i> .	Orbis, <i>circle</i> .	Vectis, <i>lever</i> .
Fascis, <i>bundle</i> .	Panis, <i>bread</i> .	Vermis, <i>worm</i> .

EXERCISE 11.

§ 34. 1. Conjunctions connect words which are in the same construction. As, *Cæsar et Brutus*, Cæsar and Brutus; *gladiis pilisque*, with swords and darts.

N. B. *Et* connects things which are separate and distinct, and of

equal importance; *que* (always written at the end of a word,) connects one thing closely to another as an appendage, the two making one complete idea. Thus the "swords and darts" above constitute together *offensive armor*.

2. If the subject consists of more than one thing, the verb must be plural. Hence

Rule of Syntax. A collective noun may have a plural verb; as, *plebs clamant*, the people shout.

Vocabulary.

ignis, is, fire.
port-are, to carry.
formid-are, to dread.
vigil-are, to watch.
festin-are, to hasten.
import-are, to import.
confirm-are, to establish.
vast-are, to lay waste.
nidific-are, to build a nest.
lev-are, to relieve.
vallis, is, a valley.
pars, part-is, a part.
Athenæ, arum, Athens.
pax, pac-is, peace.

host-is, (§ 13. Rule 4.) enemy.
cum, with (prep. with abl.)
in, in, on. (prep. with abl.)
civ-is, citizen.
av-is, bird.
ov-is, sheep.
class-is, fleet.
coll-is, hill.
per, through, (prep. with acc.)
Greciæ, æ, Greece.
litera, æ, a letter (of the alphabet.)
Cecrops, *Cecrop-is*, *Cecrops*.
Cadmus, i, *Cadmus*.
amicitiæ, æ, friendship.

Translate into English and analyze.

Cadmus in Greciam literas importat. Aves in silvis nidificant. Aqua sitim levat. Fons in valle poetam delectat. Helvetii agros Germanorum ferro ignique vastabunt. Galli cum Germanis pacem et amicitiam confirmant. Crassus ex agro in urbem festinat. Plebs in urbe nobilitatem necant. Crassus copias gladiis pilisque armabat. Cives Cecropi claves urbis dant. Lupi oves et hædos laniant. Crassus in colle turrem ædificat. Galli naves et copias Germanorum formidant. Crassus partem plebis cultris lapidibusque armabit. Columbæ per silvam volant. Cecrops Athenas ædificabit. Canes et lupi oves laniant. Rex et regina in horto ambulant. Cives in urbe vigilant.

Translate into Latin.

Crassus will lay waste the fields of the Belgians with fire

and sword (*ferro ignique*). The nobility dread the fleet of Tullius. The nobility will preserve the liberty of the citizens with the sword. The maid-servant is preparing a mullet for her master. The queen will walk in the garden with her daughters. The farmer's sons will carry sheep and kids to the city. The nobility will arm their slaves with stones and knives. The farmer's son will show (to) the ambassadors of the Belgians the way through the forest. Tullius will take possession of the hill. Medicine will relieve fevers.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 35. CLASS III. The stem-vowel is changed (*i* into *e*) before adding *s* to form the nominative.

Singular.

	<i>Miles</i> (<i>milet-s</i>), soldier.	<i>Princeps</i> (<i>princep-s</i>), chief.
N. and V.	<i>mi les</i> ,	<i>prin ceps</i> ,
G.	<i>mil i tis</i> ,	<i>prin ci pis</i> ,
D.	<i>mil i ti</i> ,	<i>prin ci pi</i> ,
Acc.	<i>mil i tem</i> ,	<i>prin ci pem</i> ,
Abl.	<i>mil i te</i> ,	<i>prin ci pe</i> ,

Plural.

N., A. and V.	<i>mil i tes</i> ,	<i>prin ci pes</i> ,
G.	<i>mil i tum</i> ,	<i>prin ci pum</i> ,
D. and Abl.	<i>mil i i-bus</i> .	<i>prin cip i bus</i> .

Rule of Gender. Nouns which change the stem-vowel, (*i* into *e*), before adding *s* to form the nominative are masculine.

Exc. 1. *Merges*, fem. (*mergitis*), a sheaf.

Exc. 2. Masc. or fem. *Adeps*, *adipis*, grease; forceps, *forcipis*, pincers..

EXERCISE 12.

§ 36. 1. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in *apposition* with it.

2. *Rule of Syntax.* Nouns in apposition agree in case ; as, Jugurtha rex, *Jugurtha the king.*

Rem. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is put in the plural ; as, Jugurtha et Bocchus, reges, *Jugurtha and Bocchus, kings.*

Vocabulary.

sec-are, to cut.
postul-are, to demand.
viol-are, to maltreat.
duplic-are, to double.
redintegr-are, to renew.
explor-are, to explore, search out.
crem-are, to burn.
virtus, virtut-is, valor.
proflig-are, to rout, dash to pieces.
a or ab, from. (prep. with abl.)
prœlium, i, battle.
Numidia, æ, Numidia.
numerus, i, number.

hospes, hospit-is, guest.
obses, obsid-is, hostage.
eques, equit-is, horseman.
pedes, pedit-is, footman.
horreum, i, granary.
merges, mergit-is, sheaf.
comes, comit-is, companion.
cæspes, cæspit-is, turf.
trames, tramit-is, by-path.
veles, velit-is, skirmisher.
Davus, i, Davus.
Balbus, i, Balbus.
Jugurtha, æ, Jugurtha.

Translate into English and analyze.

Milites gladiis cæspitem secabant. Agricola in horreum mergites portabit. Tullius a Germanis obsides postulat. Jugurtha, rex Numidiæ Crasso obsides dat. Davus et Balbus, servi agricolæ, domini liberos amant. Orgetorix, princeps Helvetiorum, ab Æduis obsides postulabit. Helvetii Orgetorigem igni cremabunt. Equites et pedites prælium redintegrabunt. Poeta virtutem Jugurthæ, regis Numidiæ, laudat. Copiæ Crassi equites peditesque hostium profligabant. Velites Tullii tramites per silvæ explorant. Comites Orgetorigis, principis Helvetiorum, agros Gallorum ferro ignique vastant. Jugurtha numerum obsidum duplicat.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer is walking with his sons, Davus and Balbus, in the forest. The Gauls dread the ships of Crassus. Davus, the king's slave, will show (to) the boys the way through the forest. Part of the skirmishers will occupy the hill. The Germans will maltreat their guests. Tully will give

the signal to the king's horsemen with the trumpet. The horsemen are bridling their horses.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 37. CLASS IV. Nouns which add *e* to the stem to form the nominative.

	Singular.	Plural.
N., Ac. and V.	<i>mar e. the sea,</i>	<i>mar i a,</i>
Gen.	<i>mar is,</i>	<i>mar i um,</i>
Dat. and Abl.	<i>mar i.</i>	<i>mar i bus.</i>

Rem. Nouns of this class have *i* in the ablative singular, *ia* in nom., acc. and voc. plural, an *ium* in gen. plural.

Exc. Names of towns in *e* have *e* in the abl. *Rete*, a net, has *e* or *i* in the abl.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which add *e* to the stem to form the nominative are neuter.

EXERCISE 13.

Vocabulary.

terra marique, by sea and land.
dormit-are, to fall asleep.
celeritas, celeritat-is, swiftness.
crudelitas, crudelit-at-is, cruelty.
Marcus, i, Marcus.
Lucius, i, Lucius.
Cassius, i, Cassius.
Syphax, Syphac-is, Syphax.
expugn-are, to storm.
cubile, cubil-is, couch.

rete, ret-is, net.
navale, naval-is, dock-yard.
sedile, sedil-is, seat.
monile, monil-is, necklace.
Romanus, i, Roman.
Carthaginiensis, is, Carthaginian.
dux, duc-is, leader.
Marius, i, Marius
oppidum, i, town.

Translate into English and analyze.

Reginæ filia in cubili dormitabit. Deus cervis et canibus celeritatem dat. Marcus et Lucius, agricolæ filii, (§ 36, Rem.) agros equis arabunt. Cassius in navalibus naves ædificat. Syphax, dux Carthaginiensium, Romanis insidias parabat. Galli crudelitatem Germanorum formidant. Marius, dux Romanorum, oppida Jugurthæ expugnabit. Lucius, dux Romanorum, hostium copias terra

marique profligabit. Regina filiabus monilia dabit. Servi in silva domino sedile parant. Davus apris retia parabit.

Translate into Latin.

Syphax, the leader of the Carthagenians, will build ships in the dock-yards. The forces of the Gauls will storm the city. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, will rout the forces of the Romans by sea and by land. Lucius and Balbus, slaves of Marius, will prepare seats for their master. The queen's daughter gives (to) the poet a necklace. Marius will lay waste the fields of Numidia with fire and sword. The foot-soldiers are bridling the horses of the horsemen. Orgetorix dreads the cruelty of the Helvetians.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 38. CLASS V. Nouns which present the stem unchanged in the nominative.

I. MASCULINES.

Honor, *honor*; masc.

Pater, *a father*; masc.

Singular. Plural.

Singular. Plural.

N.	ho nor,	ho no res.	N.	pa ter,	pat tres.
G.	ho no ris,	ho no rum.	G.	pa tris,	pa trum.
D.	ho no ri,	ho nor i bus.	D.	pa tri,	pat ri bus.
Ac.	ho no rem,	ho no res.	Ac.	pa trem,	pa tres.
V.	ho nor,	ho no res.	V.	pa ter,	pa res.
Ab.	ho no re,	ho nor i bus.	Ab.	pa tre,	pat ri bus.

Rem. 1. Nouns in *ter* and *ber* drop *e* in the oblique cases; as, *imber*, *imbris*; *pater*, *patris*.

Rem. 2. *Imber*, *pugil*, and *vesper* have *e* or *i* in the ablative, and *imber*, *linter*, *venter*, *uter*, have *ium* in gen. plural.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the nominative, (except stems in *al*, *ar*, *ur*,) are masculine.

Exc. 1. *Arbor*, *tree*, is fem.; *ador*, *spelt*, *æquor*, *sea*, *marmor*,

marble, cor, heart, fel, gall, lac, milk, mel, honey, os, bone, are neuter. (Masculine stems have o long, neuters, o short; as, honor-is, of honor, æquor-is, of the sea.) Cor, fel, lac, mel, and os drop the last letter of the stem.

Exc. 2. *Linter, boat, is feminine. Cadaver, corpse; spinther, clasp; tuber, swelling; uber, teat; ver, spring; verber, lash; also names of trees and plants in er, are neuter. But laver and tuber (names of trees) are feminine, and siser is masculine in the plural.*

EXERCISE 14.

Vocabulary.

Cæsar, Cæsar-is, *Cæsar*.
 imperator, or-is, *commander*.
 consul, consul-is, *consul*.
 anser, anser-is, *goose*.
 frater, fratris, *brother*.
 mater, matris, *mother*.
 soror, soror-is, *sister*.
 linter, lintis, *boat*.
 imber, imbris, *rain*.
 conjux, conjug-is, *husband or wife*.

sagittarius, i, *archer*.
 funditor, or-is, *slinger*.
 pastor, or-is, *shepherd*.
 venator, or-is, *hunter*.
 mercator, or-is, *merchant*.
 hiberna, orum, *winter-quarters*.
 in hiberna colloc-are, *to put into winter-quarters*.
 defens-are, *to defend*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Plebs libertatem ferro servabunt, (§ 24. Rule.) Imperator equites peditesque convocabat. Cæsar ex urbe in Galliam festinabat. Agricola conjugem liberosque amat. Pastor gregem a lupo defensabit. Crassus, consul, in navibus naves et lintres ædificat. Agricola anseres in horto habitant. Milites imperatorem a gladiis pilisque hostium defensabunt. Cæsar copias in hiberna collocat. Venator in silva apris retia parat. Cæsar cum sagittariis et funditoribus in Galliam festinat. Rex mercatores convocat. Balbus, Lucii gener, fratres sororesque amat. Puer patrem matremque amat. Imbres agricolas delectant.

Translate into Latin.

The horsemen will rout the archers and slingers of the enemy. The shepherds are sacrificing bulls and sheep to the gods. The geese are flying into the forest. The sis-

ters of Orgetorix are dancing in the garden. The brother of Lucius was defending his mother and sisters with (his) sword. The common people entrust their liberty to the consul. The hunter will show (to) the shepherd a by-path through the forest. Cæsar will hasten from the winter-quarters into the city. The slingers are wounding the horsemen of the enemy with stones.

§ 39. CLASS V. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the nominative.

II. NEUTER FORMS.

Animal, <i>an animal</i> ; neut.		Calcar, <i>a spur</i> ; neut.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>an-i-mal</i> ,	<i>an-i-ma-li-a</i> ,	<i>cal-car</i> ,	<i>cal-ca-ri-a</i> .
G. <i>an-i-ma-lis</i> ,	<i>an-i-ma-li-um</i> ,	<i>cal-ca-ris</i> ,	<i>cal-ca-ri-um</i> .
D. <i>an-i-ma-li</i> ,	<i>an-i-mal-i-bus</i> ,	<i>cal-ca-fi</i> ,	<i>cal-car-i-bus</i> .
Ac. <i>an-i-mal</i> ,	<i>an-i-ma-li-a</i> ,	<i>cal-car</i> ,	<i>cal-ca-ri-a</i> .
V. <i>an-i-mal</i> ,	<i>an-i-ma-li-a</i> ,	<i>cal-car</i> ,	<i>cal-ca-ri-a</i> .
Ab. <i>an-i-ma-li</i> .	<i>an-i-mal-i-bus</i> .	<i>cal-ca-ri</i> .	<i>cal-car-i-bus</i> .

Note. Nouns in *e*, *al*, *ar*, were originally adjectives, the adjective ending of those in *al* and *ar* having been dropped. Thus, *anim-a*, breath ; neuter adjective, *anim-ale*, (*animal*,) a thing having breath, an animal ; *calc-s*, (*calx*,) the heel ; *calc-are*, (*calc-ar*,) a thing pertaining to the heel, a spur.

Rem. 1. Nouns ending in *al* and *ar* have *i* in the ablative singular, *ium* in gen. pl., and *ia* in nom., acc. and voc. plural. Other nouns of this class have the regular endings ; but

Rem. 2. *Os*, bone, has *ossium* ; *fur*, thief ; *ren*, kidney, *lar*, tutelard deity, have *um* or *ium*.

Rem. 3. *Baccar*, *far*, *jubar*, *nectar*, *par* and *sal* have *e* in the ablative singular.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which present in the nominative the unchanged stem in *al*, *ar*, *ur*, are neuter.

EXCEPTION. *Sal*, *salt*, is masculine or neuter in the singular, but always masculine in the plural, (*sales*.) *Fur*, *thief* ; *furfur*, *bran* ; *salar*, *trout* ; *turtur*, *dove* ; *vultur*, *vulture*, are masculine.

§ 40.

EXERCISE 15.

Vocabulary.

jumentum, <i>i.</i> work-horse, beast of burden.	furfur, <i>is</i> , bran.
jubar, <i>is</i> , sunshine.	dic-are, to dedicate.
vultur, <i>is</i> , (masc.) vulture.	concit-are, to arouse, urge on.
templum, <i>i</i> , temple.	rapt-are, to snatch away, carry off.
marmor, <i>is</i> , marble.	stimulus, <i>i</i> , goad.
templum de marmore, a temple of marble.	fing-are, to put to flight.
	tempestas, tempestat- <i>is</i> , tempest.

Translate into English and analyze.

Crassus diis templum de marmore dicabit. Vultures agnos et hædos raptant. Jubar nautas delectat. Agricola jumenta stimulo concitat. Cecrops, rex Græciæ, equum calcaribus concitat. Regina in insula aram de marmore ædificat. Agricola jumentis furfurem dat. Velites Cæsaris hostium sagittarios funditoresque fugabunt. Tempestates maris classem hostium profligabunt.

Translate into Latin.

The boys love the master. Cæsar will lay waste the fields of the Gauls with fire and sword. Tully will rout the forces of the enemy by sea and land. Tully's foot-soldiers occupy the hill. Farmers plough their fields with work-horses. Eagles and vultures build nests in the rocks. Cæsar's skirmishers will search out the by-paths through the forests. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, was storming his brother's towns. Sailors dread tempests. Horsemen urge on their horses with spurs.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 41. CLASS VI. Nouns which present the stem *changed* in the nominative.

I. MASCULINE FORMS.

n of stem dropped.*r* of stem changed into *s*.*Singular.* Speech, (m.)

Dust, (m.)

Flower, (m.)

N. ser mo,

pul vis,

flos.

G. ser mo nis,

pul ver is,

flor is.

D. ser mo ni,

pul ver i,

flor i.

Ac. ser mo nem.

pul ver em,

flor em.

V. ser mo,

pul vis,

flos.

Ab. ser mo ne,

pul ver e,

flor e.

Plural. Speechs.

Flowers.

N. ser mo nes,

pul ver es,

flor es.

G. ser mo num,

pul ver um,

flor um.

D. ser mon i bus,

pul ver i bus,

flor i bus.

Ac. ser mo nes,

pul ver es,

flor es.

V. ser mo nes,

pul ver es,

flor es.

Ab. ser mon i bus.

pul ver i bus.

flor i bus.

Rem. 1. Most Latin nouns drop final *n* of the stem in the nominative. *Sanguis* (sanguin,) and *pollis* (pollin,) change *n* into *s*.

Rem. 2. Final *r* of the stem is often changed into *s*; as, *mos*, *mor-is*.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which drop *n* of the stem in the nominative are masculine.

Exc. Abstracts in *io* (mostly formed by adding *io* to the supine stem of verbs,) are feminine. *Bubo* is masc. and fem.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which change *er* of the stem into *is*, *r* into *s*, are masculine.

Exc. *Os*, mouth. is neuter. *Cinis* is masculine or feminine in the singular; *cineres*, ashes of the dead, is always masculine. *Pulvis*, dust, is very rarely feminine.

EXERCISE 16.

Vocabulary.

mos, *mor-is*, manner, custom.*centurio*, *on-is* *centurion*.*leo*, *on-is*, lion.*mons*, *mont-is*, (§ 31. Exc. 1.) mountain.*latro*, *on-is*, robber.*pirata*, *a*, pirate.*Cato*, *on-is*, Cato.*rebellio*, *on-is*, (f.) rebellion.*Varro*, *on-is*, Varro.*oratio*, *on-is*, (f.) speech, oration.*trucidare*, to slay.*concitare*, to excite, raise.*apud*, (prep. with *ac*) among, (of persons among whom anything is done.)*apud Helvetios*, among the Helvetians*apud Catonem*, with, at the house of, Cato*Cicero*, *on-is*, Cicero.*orator*, *or-is*, orator.*coenare*, to sup.*more regis*, after the manner of a king.

Translate into English and analyze.

Cæsar, more regis, obsides ab Helvetiis postulat. Centurio tures (§ 33. Rem. 2) ædificat. Varro consul in silvis more latronis habitat. Orgetorix apud Helvetios rebellionem concitabit. Cicero, orator, plebem oratione delectat. Oratio Catonis nobilitatem delectat. Pars nobilitatis apud regem cœnant. Leones in montibus et silvis habitant. Latrones in silva filium reginæ trucidabant. Rex latrones piratasque trucidabit. Regis filiæ apud agricolam cœnant. Nobilitas rebellionem et plebem formidant. Cecrops nobilitatem concitat. Nautæ piratas formidant.

Translate into Latin.

The conversation (*sermo*) of the poet delights the queen. A lion will tear in pieces the children of Cadmus. The daughter of Cecrops gives flowers to her father-in-law. The common people are breaking the laws of the city. Marcus, the brother of Marius, was building a tower upon a hill. Crassus will sup at the house of Cicero. Cæsar dreads a rebellion among the Gauls. Cæsar demands hostages of (*from*) the Germans. The Gauls, after the manner of the Germans, burn pirates with fire. Kings slay robbers and pirates. Part of the nobility dread Cato. The poet loves Cato's daughter.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 42. CLASS VI. Nouns which present the stem changed in the nominative.

II. FEMININE FORMS.

Virgo, a virgin; fem.; (stem *virgin*.)

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	<i>vir go,</i>	<i>vir gi nes,</i>
G.	<i>vir gi nis,</i>	<i>vir gi num,</i>
D.	<i>vir gi ni,</i>	<i>vir gin i bus,</i>
Ac.	<i>vir gi nem,</i>	<i>vir gi nes,</i>
V.	<i>vir go,</i>	<i>vir gi nes,</i>
Ab.	<i>vir gi ne,</i>	<i>vir gin i bus.</i>

Rule of Gender. Nouns which change *in* of the stem into *o*, are feminine.

Exc. *Ordo, cardo*. and *turbo* are masculine. *Nemo, homo*, and *urgo* are masculine or feminine.

Rem. *Caro*, flesh, has *carnis*. &c., contracted for *carinis*, and has *ium* in the genitive plural.

EXERCISE 17.

§ 43. *Rule of Position.* Adverbs usually stand immediately before the words they limit.

Rule of Position. A genitive limiting the object of a preposition usually stands between the preposition and its case; as, in *Cæsaris horto*.

Rule of Syntax. Adverbs limit verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

Vocabulary.

multitudo, in-is, *multitude*.
turbo, turbin-is, *whirl-wind*.
origo, origin-is, *origin*.
ordo, ordin-is, *rank*.
consuetudo, in-is, *custom, habit*.
magnitudo, in-is, *greatness*.
immortalitas, at-is, *immortality*.
non, [adverb,] *not*.

disput-are, *to discuss, debate, dispute*.
turb-are, *to confuse, disorder*.
per-turb-are, *to throw into great confusion, confound*.
de, [prep. with abl.] *concerning*.
periculum, i, *danger*.
animus, i, *soul, mind*.
ex consuetudine, *according to custom*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Oratio Cæsaris multitudinem delectat. Equites Crassi multitudinem hostium fugabunt. Cato de animi origine cum Cicerone disputat. Magnitudo periculi consulem per-turbat. Equites copias hostium turbabunt. Rex ex consuetudine in Crassi horto ambulabat. Cicero de animi immortalitate disputabat. Pedites ordines non servabant. Nautæ piratas et turbines formidant. Rex captivos non necabit. Lucius ex agricolæ agro in vicum festinat. Consul multitudinem hostium non formidat. Velites in Helvetiorum agris prælium redintegrabunt.

Translate into Latin.

The Gauls sacrifice virgins to the gods. The poet, according to custom, was walking in Tully's field. The King of the Belgians is sacrificing bulls and sheep in the Queen's garden. The Gauls do not debate concerning the origin of the soul. The Helvetians will not burn Orgetorix with fire. Cæsar will not arm the skirmishers with javelins (*pilis*.) Cæsar rides into the city after the manner of a King. Tully, according to custom, demands hostages from the Belgians. The soldiers will confuse the ranks of the enemy. Cæsar does not dread the whirlwind.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 44. CLASS VI. Nouns which present the stem changed in the nominative.

III. NEUTER FORMS.

Carmen, *a verse*; neut.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	car men,	car mi na,
G.	car mi nis,	car mi num,
D.	car mi ni,	car min i bus,
Ac.	car men,	car mi na,
V.	car men,	car mi na,
Ab.	car mi ne,	car min i bus.

Opus, *a work*; neut.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	o pus,	op e ra,
G.	op e ris,	op e rum
D.	op e ri,	o per i bus,
Ac.	o pus,	op e ra,
V.	o pus,	op e ra,
Ab.	op e re,	o per i bus.

Caput, a head; neut.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	ca put,	cap i ta,
G.	cap i tis,	cap i tum,
D.	cap i ti,	cap i ti bus,
Ac.	ca put,	cap i ta,
V.	ca put,	cap i ta,
Ab.	cap i te,	cap i ti bus.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which change in of the stem into *en*; or into *ur*; *er*, or, *ur* into *us*, &c., are neuter.

Exc. Pecten, pectin-is, *comb*; lepus, lepor-is, *hare*; and mus, mur-is, *mouse*, are masculine. Tellus, tellur-is, *earth*, is feminine.

Rem. Occiput has *i* in abl. sing., and *rus* has *e* and *i*.

EXERCISE 18.

Vocabulary.

robur, roboris, *strength*.

corpus, corpor-is, *body*.

ius, iur-is, *justice, law*, [generally *unwritten law*, as opposed to *lex*, *written law*.]

mus, mur-is, *mouse*.

port-are, *to carry*.

natura, æ, *nature*.

tard-are, *to hinder*.

munus, muner-is, *gift*.

lepus, lepor-is, *hare*.

foedus, foeder-is, *treaty*.

onus, oner-is, *burden*.

flumen, flumin-is, *river*.

tran-are, *to swim across*.

Tiberis, is, [masc.] *the Tiber*.

nemus, nemoris, *grove*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Dominus robur servi laudat. Regina ancillis munera dabit. Belgæ foedus non violabunt. Lepores et mures in agris habitant. Servi reginæ in oppidum onera portant. Carmina poetæ imperatores delectant. Crassus Tiberim, (§ 33, Rem. 1) tranabit. Robur corporis multitudinem delectat. Robur animi Catonem delectat. Equites flumen tranant. Cicero de jure legibusque disputat. Poeta Cæsari carmina dicabit. Magnitudo operis consulem non tardabit. Puellæ in Cæsaris nemore saltant. Cicero de animi et corporis natura disputat.

Translate into Latin.

The poet was walking with the king in Cæsar's garden. The boys and girls are dancing in Tully's grove. The soldiers of Orgetorix will swim across the river. Whirlwinds will dash in pieces the fleet of the enemy. The commander praises the valor of the soldiers. The consul is building ships and boats in the dock-yards of Gaul. The enemy violate the treaty. The nature of the work hinders the forces of the enemy. Davus and Balbus, Tully's slaves, will carry burdens into the city.

IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 45.

Vis, *strength*, fem.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	<i>Ju pi ter,</i>	N.	<i>vis,</i>	<i>vi res,</i>
G.	<i>Jo vis,</i>	G.	<i>vis,</i>	<i>vir i um,</i>
D.	<i>Jo vi,</i>	D.	—	<i>vir i bus,</i>
Ac.	<i>Jo vem,</i>	Ac.	<i>vim,</i>	<i>vi res,</i>
V.	<i>Ju pi ter,</i>	V.	<i>vis,</i>	<i>vi res,</i>
Ab.	<i>Jo ve.</i>	Ab.	<i>vi,</i>	<i>vir i bus.</i>

Iter, *a journey*; neut.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	<i>i ter,</i>	<i>i tin e ra,</i>
G.	<i>i tin e ris,</i>	<i>i tin e rum,</i>
D.	<i>i tin e ri.</i>	<i>it i ner i bus,</i>
Ac.	<i>i ter,</i>	<i>i tin e ra,</i>
V.	<i>i ter,</i>	<i>i tin e ra,</i>
Ab.	<i>i tin e re,</i>	<i>it i ner i bus.</i>

Jus-jurandum, *oath*; neut.

N.	<i>jus ju ran dum,</i>	<i>ju ra ju ran da.</i>
G.	<i>ju ris ju ran di,</i>	_____
D.	<i>ju ri ju ran do,</i>	_____
Ac.	<i>jus ju ran dum.</i>	<i>ju ra ju ran da.</i>
V.	<i>jus ju ran dum,</i>	<i>ju ra ju ran da.</i>
Ab.	<i>ju re ju ran do,</i>	_____

*Materfamilias, mother of a family.**Singular.*

N.	ma ter fa mil i as,
G.	ma tris fa mil i as,
D.	ma tri fa mil i as,
Ac.	ma trem fa mil i as,
V.	ma ter fa mil i as,
Ab.	ma tre fa mil i as, &c.

Supellex, furniture ; fem. Jecur, liver ; neut.

N.	su pel lex.	N.	jecur,
G.	supel lec ti lis,	G.	je cin o ris,
D.	supel lec ti li,	D.	je cin o ri,
Ac.	supel lec ti lem,	Ac.	je cur,
V.	su pel lex,	V.	je cur,
Ab.	supel lec ti le or i.	Ab.	je cin o re.

Bos, an ox or cow ; masc. or fem

N.	bos,	bov es,
G.	bov is,	bo um,
D.	bov i,	bo hus, or bu bus,
Ac.	bov em,	bov es,
V.	bos,	bov es,
Ab.	bov e,	bo bus, or bu bus.

Jecur has also *jecoris* and *jecineris*. *Lac*, milk, has *lactis*. Like *materfamilias* is declined *paterfamilias*, father of a family.

EXERCISE 19. *Z.**Vocabulary.*

comedo, on-is, *glutton*.
 provincia, æ, *province*.
 aurum, i, *gold*.
 argentum, i, *silver*.
 cibus, i, *food*.

tent-are, *to attempt*.
 per vim, *by force*.
 decor-are, *to adorn*.
 vor-are, *to devour, gulp down*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Helvetii, jurejurando foedus confirmant. Paterfamilias servos tuba convocat. Imperator Jovi oves taurosque mactat. Jugurtha, rex Numidiæ, Jovi templum de marmore dicabit. Helvetii iter per provinciam per vim tentabant. Jecinora anserum comedones delectant. Leones incolas in-

sulæ vorabunt. Comedo cibum more canis vorat. Galli templa deorum auro et argento decorant. Materfamilias ancillis cibum dat. Agricola genero supellectilem dabit. Agricola agros bubus arat.

Translate into Latin.

The king will not violate his oath. Farmers plow their fields with horses and oxen. Gluttons love the liver of the goose. The queen of the Belgians will sacrifice a flock of sheep to Jupiter. Dumnorix, the chief of the Æduans, will attempt a journey through the province by force. The Gauls will bring sheep and oxen to (*ad*) Cæsar. The mother of the family will give food to her children. Farmers urge on their oxen with the goad. Robbers dread the power (*vis*) of kings. The soldiers of Marius were cutting turf with their swords. The merchants will import swords into the villages of the Helvetians.

§ 46. SUMMARY OF THE RULES OF GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Nouns which change stem vowel (*i* into *e*) and add *s*; as, *miles* (stem *milit*), *princeps* (stem *princip*.)

Exc. *Merges*, fem.; *adepts* and *forceps*, masc. or fem.

2. Nouns which present the stem unchanged in the nominative; as, *honor*, *consul*, *anser*.

Exc. 1. Unchanged stems in *al*, *ar*, *ur*, with *ador*, *æquor*, *marmor*, *cor*, *fel*, *lac*, *mel*, *os*, neuter.

Exc. 2. *Arbor* and *linter*, fem. *Cadaver*, *spinther*, *tuber*, *uber*, *ver*, *verber*, with names of trees and plants in *er*, are neuter. But *laver* and *tuber* (names of trees,) are fem.; and *siser* is masc., in the plural.

3. Nouns which drop *n* of the stem in the nom., without adding *s*; as, *sermo*, *sermonis*.

Exc. Abstracts in *io* all fem. *Bubo* masc. or fem.

4. Nouns which change *er* of the stem into *is*, *r* into *s*; as, *pulvis*, *pulver-is*; *flos*, *flor-is*.

Exc. *Os*, *oris*. neut. *Cinis*, *cineris*, masc. and fem. in singular.

II. FEMININES.

1. Nouns which add *s* to the stem without vowel change; as, *urbs*, *lex* (*leg-s*), *ars* (*art-s*), *arx* (*arc-s*).

Exc. 1. Masc. *Dens* and its compounds, *fons*, *pons*, *mons*, *cliens*, *rudens* (rarely fem.), and compounds of *as*; *grex*, Greek nouns in *ax* and *ix*, with *calix*, *fornix*, *perdix*, *tradux*; *paries*, *pes*, *lapis*.

Exc. 2. Masc. or fem. Many nouns denoting living beings, with *scrobs*, *stirps*, *cakv*.

2. Nouns which insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*; as, *host-i-s*, *rup-e-s*.

Exc. 1. Masc. and fem. *Palumbes*, *vates*, *vepres*; *amnis*, *anguis*, *callis*, *canalis*, *canis*, *clunis*, *corbis*, *finis*, (always masc. in pl.), *funis*, *scrobis*, *tigris*, *torquis*.

Exc. 2. Masc. *Axis*, *aqualis*, *caulis*, *cassis*, *collis*, *crinis*, *ensis*, *fascis*, *foliis*, *fustis*, *ignis*, *manes*, *mensis*, *mugilis*, *orbis*, *panis*, *piscis*, *postis*, *sentis*, *sodalis*, *torris*, *unguis*, *vectis*, *vermis*.

3. Nouns which change *in* into *o*; as, *virgo*, *virgin-is*.

Exc. *Ordo*, *cardo*, *turbo*, masc. *Nemo*, *homo*, *margo*, masc. or fem.

III. NEUTERS.

1. Nouns which add *e* to the stem; as, *mare*, *mar-is*.

2. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in *al*, *ar*, *ur*; as, *animal*, *animal-is*; *calcar*, *calcar-is*; *fulgur*, *fulgur-is*.

Exc. *Sal*, masc. or neut. in singular, always masc. in pl. Masc. *Fur*, *furfur*, *salar*, *turtur*, *vultur*.

3. Nouns changing *in* into *en*; or into *ur*; *er*, *or*, *ur*, into *us*.

Exc. Masc. *Pecten*, *lepus*, *mus*. Fem. *Tellus*.

N. B. Many nouns on account of their meaning vary from these rules. See § 13, Rules.

TENSES OF THE VERB

EXPRESSING COMPLETED ACTION.

§ 47. I. The tenses which express *incomplete* action are the *present*, *imperfect* and *future*; those which express *completed* action are the *present-perfect* (*perfect*),

past-perfect (*pluperfect*), and *future-perfect*. These three tenses are always formed on the same stem, called the *perfect-stem*.

II. The *perfect-stem* in the first conjugation is formed by adding *-av-* to the *present-stem*; as, *present-stem*, *am-*; *perfect-stem*, *am-av-*.

III. The *present-perfect* tense expresses completed action in *present* time; as, *pres. cœno*, *I sup*; *pres. perf. cœnavi*, *I have supped*. The same form of the verb is used to express an action *indefinitely* as past, without reference to its continuance or completion. This is called the *aurist-perfect*, or *indefinite-perfect*; as, *cœnavi*, *I supped*, (at some indefinite past time.)

IV. The *past-perfect* tense expresses completed action in *past* time; as, *imp. cœnabam*, *I was supping*; *past-perf. cœnav-eram*, *I had supped*.

V. The *future-perfect* tense expresses action completed in *future* time; as, *fut. cœnabo*, *I shall sup*; *future-perf. cœnav-ero*, *I shall have supped*.

ENDINGS. INDICATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT-PERF.	PAST-PERF.	FUTURE-PERF.
<i>Singular.</i>			
1st pers.	i,	e ram	e ro.
2nd "	* <i>is ti</i> ,	e ras,	e ris.
3rd "	it,	e rat,	e rit.
<i>Plural.</i>			
1st "	imus,	e ra mus,	er i mus.
2nd "	is tis,	e ra tis,	er i tis.
3rd "	e runt or e re	e rant.	e rint.

By adding these endings to the perfect stem, *am-av-*, of *amare* we obtain the following:

* Accented syllables are italicized.

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present-Perfect. *loved, or have loved.*

Sing.	a <i>ma vi</i> ,	<i>I have loved,</i>
	am a <i>vis ti</i> ,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
	a <i>ma vit</i> ,	<i>he has loved ;</i>
Plur.	a <i>mav i mus</i> ,	<i>we have loved,</i>
	am a <i>vis tis</i> ,	<i>ye have loved,</i>
	am a <i>ve runt or re</i> ,	<i>they have loved.</i>

Past-Perfect. *had.*

Sing.	a <i>mav e ram</i> ,	<i>I had loved,</i>
	a <i>mav e ras</i> ,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
	a <i>mav e rat</i> ,	<i>he had loved ;</i>
Plur.	a <i>mav e ra mus</i> ,	<i>we had loved,</i>
	a <i>mav e ra tis</i> ,	<i>ye had loved,</i>
	a <i>mav e rant</i> ,	<i>they had loved.</i>

Future-Perfect. *shall, or will have.*

Sing.	a <i>mav e ro</i> ,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
	a <i>mav e ris</i> ,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
	a <i>mav e rit</i> ,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>
Plur.	am a <i>ver i mus</i> ,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
	am a <i>ver i tis</i> ,	<i>ye will have loved,</i>
	a <i>mav e rint</i> ,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

Rem. 1. A few verbs of the first conjugation form the perfect stem by adding *u* to the present stem ; as, *nec-at*, he kills ; *nec-u-it*, he has killed ;—or by lengthening the present stem ; as, *juv-at*, (*u* short) he helps ; *juv-it*, (*u* long) he has helped.

Rem. 2. The *supine-stem* is generally formed in the 1st conjugation by adding *-at* to the present-stem ; as, *amo*, *am-at-um*. The ending of the supine is *-um*.

NOTE. The pupil should hereafter give the principal parts, in analyzing verbs. Where the perfect and supine stems vary from the usual formation, they will be given in the vocabularies.

EXERCISE 20.

Vocabulary.

Dare [*perf. stem* ded-, *sup. stem* dat-,] *to give.*

Nec-are, [necav- or necu-, necat-, *rarely* nect-,] *to kill.*

Sec-are, [secu-, sect-,] *to cut.*

Lav-are, [lav-, lavat, laut-, lot-,] *to wash, bathe.*

The other verbs used, thus far, form the perfect supine stems regularly.

Translate into English and analyze.

Germani in fluminibus lavant. Rex filio regnum dedit. Princeps captivos veneno necavit. Milites cespites gladiis seouerunt. Orgetorix leges Helvetiorum violavit. Helvetii iter per provinciam per vim tentaverunt. Principes Gallorum Cæsari obsides dederant. Cæsar cum Gallis foedus jurejurando confirmaverat. Lupi et leones incolas insulae voraverunt. Jugurtha more regis a Romanis obsides postulaverat. Servi equos infrenaverint. Crassi copiae in Gallorum agris hiemaverant. Latrones tramites per silvam exploraverunt. Equites Cæsaris hostium funditores fugaverant, et in vicum festinabant. Marius numerum obsidum duplicavit. Magister puero librum dedit.

Translate into Latin.

Cicero disputed concerning the origin of the soul. The consul had routed the forces of the enemy by land and sea. The brother of Cicero the orator, called together the common people. Balbus, Tully's slave, brought burdens into the city. The queen had walked in the farmer's garden. The king's son had given (to) his sister a necklace. The boys loved the master's children. The ambassadors of the Æduans had asked aid. The nobility dreaded a rebellion among the common people. Cæsar hastened into Gaul. The Gauls prepared snares for Crassus.

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 48. Nouns whose genitive ending is *us* (long,) are of the fourth declension. The nominative endings are *us* and *u*.

Rem. 1. These nouns were originally of the third declension, the termination *us* of the genitive being contracted from *uis*.

	Masculine Endings.		Neuter Endings.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. and V.	<i>us,</i>	<i>us,</i>	<i>u,</i>	<i>ua.</i>
G.	<i>us,</i>	<i>uum,</i>	<i>us,</i>	<i>uum.</i>
D.	<i>ui,</i>	<i>ibus, (ubus,)</i>	<i>u,</i>	<i>ibus, (ubus!)</i>
Ac.	<i>um,</i>	<i>us,</i>	<i>u,</i>	<i>ua.</i>
Ab.	<i>u,</i>	<i>ibus, (ubus,)</i>	<i>u,</i>	<i>ibus, (ubus.)</i>

PARADIGM.

Fructus, fruit, mas.

Cornu, a horn, neut.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	<i>fruc tus,</i>	<i>fruc tus.</i>	N.	<i>cor nu,</i>	<i>cor nu a.</i>
G.	<i>fruc tus,</i>	<i>fruc tu.um.</i>	G.	<i>cor nus,</i>	<i>cor nu um.</i>
D.	<i>fruc tu i,</i>	<i>fruc ti bus.</i>	D.	<i>cor nu,</i>	<i>cor ni bus.</i>
Ac.	<i>fruc tum,</i>	<i>fruc tus</i>	Ac.	<i>cor nu,</i>	<i>cor nu a.</i>
V.	<i>fruc tus,</i>	<i>fruc tus.</i>	V.	<i>cor nu,</i>	<i>cor nu a.</i>
Ab.	<i>fruc tu,</i>	<i>fruc ti bus.</i>	Ab.	<i>cor nu,</i>	<i>cor ni bus.</i>

Rem. 2. Some nouns of this declension have likewise the inflection of the second declension, especially in the genitive singular; as, *senatus, senati*.

Rem. 3. A contracted form of the dative in *u* sometimes occurs.

Rem. 4. The following nouns have *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

<i>Acus, a needle.</i>	<i>Artus, a joint.</i>	<i>Partus, a birth.</i>	<i>Specus, a den.</i>
<i>Arcus, a bow.</i>	<i>Lacus, a lake.</i>	<i>Pecu, a flock.</i>	<i>Tribus, a tribe.</i>

Genu, a knee; portus, a harbor; tonitrus, thunder; and veru, a spit, have ibus or ubus.

Rem. 5. *Domus, a house, is thus declined:*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	<i>do mus,</i>	<i>do mus.</i>
G.	<i>do mus, or do mi.</i>	<i>dom u um, or do mo rum.</i>
D.	<i>dom u i, or do mo,</i>	<i>dom i bus.</i>
Ac.	<i>do mum,</i>	<i>do mus, or do mos.</i>
V.	<i>do mus,</i>	<i>do mus.</i>
Ab	<i>do mo,</i>	<i>dom i bus.</i>

Domus in the genitive singular generally means of a house; *domi* at home. The ablative *domu* is found. *Domorum* and *domos* are the most common forms of the gen. and acc. plural.

Rule of Gender. Nouns of the fourth declension in *us* are masculine; those in *u*, neuter.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Acus, needle. *Idus*, *Ides*. *Manus*, hand. *Tribus*, tribe.
Domus, house, *Ficus*, fig. *Porticus*, gallery.

Exc. 3. *Penus*, storehouse, is masculine or feminine. *Secus*, sex, is neuter. *Spēcus*, den, is masculine, rarely feminine or neuter.

EXERCISE 21.

Vocabulary.

fluctus, us, wave.
arbor, or-is, [fem.] tree.
homo, in-is, man.
Lemannus, i, *Lemannus*.
Rhenus, i, *Rhine*.

expect-are, to await.
cre-are, to create.
exercitus, us, army.
adventus, us, arrival.

Translate into English and analyze.

Agricola in penum mergites portaverat. Deus fructus arborum creavit. Poeta in domo ambulat. Agricola domum ædificat. Deus tauris cornua dedit. Deus hominibus animos dedit. Agricola in domum fructus terræ portat. Venator arcum sagittasque parat. Nautæ fluctus non formidant. Cæsar a lacu Lemanno ad flumen Rhenum festinavit. Cæsar adventum legatorum expectaverat. Imperatoris adventus exercitum delectat. Leones in specubus habitant.

Translate into Latin.

The soldiers bathed in the lake. The consul will hasten

with the army to Lake Lemannus. The master will build houses for his slaves in the field. Marcus gave (to) his son Lucius a bow and arrows. The boys awaited their father's arrival. The waves will dash in pieces the enemy's ships. The sailors fastened the yards to the masts with ropes. Lions do not dread the horns of bulls. The chief of the Germans lives in a cave. A hunter wounded the consul's son-in-law in the King's forest.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 49. Nouns which have *ei* in the genitive from *es* of the nominative are of the fifth declension. They are all feminine except *dies*, day, (masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural,) and *meridies*, midday, (masc.).

ENDINGS.

	Singular.	Plural. .
N. and V.	es,	es.
G.	ei,	erum.
D.	ei,	ebus.
Ac.	em,	es.
Ab.	e,	ebus.

PARADIGM.

Res, a thing.			Dies, a day.		
	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
N.	res,	res.	N.	di es,	di es,
G.	re i,	re rum.	G.	di e i,	di e rum,
D.	re i,	re bus.	D.	di e i,	di e bus,
Ac.	rem,	res.	Ac.	di em,	di es,
V.	res,	res.	V.	di es,	di es,
Ab.	re,	re bus.	Ab.	di e,	di e bus.

Rem. 1. *Dies*, day, is feminine only when it denotes a fixed day.

Rem. 2. The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *e* or *i*, instead of *ei*.

Rem. 3. There are only about eighty nouns of this declension,

and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. *Acies*, *effigies*, *eluvies*, *facies*, *glacies*, *progenies*, *series*, *species*, *spes*, want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and the rest want the plural altogether.

Rem. 4. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plebēs*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies*, *aries*, *paries* *quies*, and *requies*, which are of the third declension.

EXERCISE 22.

senatus, us, senate, [§ 48. *Rem.* 2.]
plebes, ei, common people.
tribunus, i, tribune.
acies, ei, edge, point,
also line of battle.
parens, ent-is, parent.
facies, ei, face.
vultus, us, countenance,
salus, salut-is, safety, health.
nox, noct-is, night.

currus, us, chariot.
fides, ei, faith, promise.
spes, ei, hope.
victoria, æ, victory.
progenies, ei, offspring.
effigies, ei, likeness, image.
præda, æ, booty.
scelus, er-is, crime.
dictator, or-is, dictator.

Translate into English and analyze.

Senatus dictatori salutem urbis mandaverat. Animalia progeniem amant. Leones faciem vultumque hominis formidant. Spes prædæ latrones ad scelera concitat. Lucius, tribunus plebis, centuriones convocavit. Marcus filium acie gladii vulneravit. Spes victoriæ exercitum delectavit. Jugurtha, rex Numidiæ, fidem non servavit. Tribuni libertatem plebei servaverunt. Crassus consul in templo effigiem Jovis collocavit. Helvetii exercitum Cassii consulis fugavere. Parentes progeniem amant. Regina poetæ curum equosque dedit. Turbines classem hostium profligavere.

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar put his army into winter-quarters. The dictator will slay robbers and pirates. Crassus the tribune will not violate his promise. The hope of victory and booty urges the chiefs to (*ad*) war. The queen's daughter will set-up

(*collocare*) an image of Jupiter in the king's garden. The queen adorned the image of Jupiter with silver and gold. The boy wounded his brother's foot with the point of a knife. The senate committed to the tribunes the liberty of the common people. God created day and night. The waves of the sea dashed in pieces the ships of the enemy. The poet's children loved their parents.

§ 50 *Respublica*, (fem.), *the state*.

Singular.

Plural.

N. V. *res pub li ca*,

N. V. *res pub li cæ*,

G. D. *re i pub li cæ*,

G. *rerum pub li ca rum*,

Ac. *rem pub li cam*,

D. Ab. *re bus pub li cis*,

Ab. *re pub li ca*.

Ac. *res pub li cas*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 51. Irregular nouns are either variable or defective.

1. VARIABLE NOUNS

Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*.

1. *Heterogeneous nouns.*

(a.) Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as, *Avernus*, a hill in Campania. *Pangæus*, a promontory in Thrace. *Dindymus*, a hill in Phrygia. *Tœnarus*, a promontory in Laconia. *Ismarus*, a hill in Thrace. *Tartarus*, hell. *Mænalus*, a hill in Arcadia. *Taygetus*, a hill in Laconia.

(b.) Masculine in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural; as, *jocus*, a jest, plural *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, plural *loci*, passages in books, topics, places; *locæ*, places; *sibilus*, a hissing, plural, *sibila*, rarely *sibili*.

(c.) Feminine in the singular, neuter in the plural; as, *carbasus*, a sail, plural *carbasa*; *Pergamus*, the citadel of Troy, plural *Pergama*.

(d.) Neuter in the singular, masculine in the plural; as, *Argos*, Argos, a city, in Greece plural *Argi*; *Elysium*, the Elysian fields, plural *Elysii*; *cælum*, heaven, plural *cæli*.

Note 1.—*Argos*, in the singular, is used only in the Nom. and Acc.

(e.) Neuter in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural; as, *frenum*, a bridle, plural *freni* and *frena*; *rastrum*, a rake, plural *rastri* and *rastra*.

(f.) Neuter in the singular, feminine in the plural; as, *balneum*, a bath, plural *balnea*, seldom *balnea*; *epulum*, a banquet, plural *epulae*.

(g.) Feminine or neuter in the singular and feminine in the plural; as, *delicia* or *delicium*, plural *deliciae*.

2. *Heteroclitēs*.

(a.) Second and third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as, *jugerum*, an acre; gen. *jugeri*, or *jūgeris*; abl. *jugere* or *jūgero*; plur., nom. and acc. *jūgera*; gen. *jūgerum*; abl. *jūgeris* and *jūgeribus*, from the obsolete *jūgus* or *jūger*.

(b.) Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Defective nouns want some of their cases. The following list contains most nouns defective in case. Those occurring but once in Latin authors are marked with the asterisk.

*Abactus, acc. pl.; a driving way.	Astu, nom., acc.; a city.
Accitu, abl.; a calling for.	Astus, nom.; astu, abl.; craft;—astus, acc. pl.
Admissu, abl.; admission.	Cacoethes, nom., acc.; an evil custom;—cacoethe, nom. pl.; -æ and -es, acc. pl.
Admonitu, abl.; admonition.	Cœlite, abl.; pl. entire, inhabitants of heaven.
Æs, not used in gen. pl.	*Commutatum, acc.; an alteration.
Affatu, abl.; an addressing;—pl. affatus, -ibus.	Compedis, gen.; compede, abl.; a fetter;—pl. compedes, -ium, -ibus.
Algus, nom.; algum, acc.; algu, or -o, abl.; cold.	Concessu, abl.; permission.
Ambage, abl.; a winding stair; pl. entire.	Condiscalpato, abl.; companion-ship at school.
*Amissum, acc.; a loss.	Cratim, or -em, acc.; -e, abl.; o hurdle;—pl. crates, -ium, -ibus
Aplustre, nom. and acc.; the flag of a ship;—pl. aplustria, or aplustra.	Cetos, acc.; a whale;—cete, nom. and acc. pl.
Arbitratus, nom.: -um, acc.; -u, abl.; judgment.	
Arcessitu, abl.; a sending for.	

- Chaos, *nom., acc.*; chao, *abl.*; *Frustratui, *abl.*; a deceiving.
 chaos.
 Cassem, *acc.*; casse, *abl.*; a net;
 pl. *entire*.
 Circumspectus, *nom.*; -um; -u; a
 looking around.
 Coactu, *abl.*; constraint.
 Daps, *nom.*; scarcely used; dapis,
gen. &c.; a feast.
 *Datu, *abl.*; a giving.
 Derisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -n, *abl.*;
ridicule.
 Despicatui, *dat.*; contempt.
 Dica, *nom.*; dicam, *acc.*; a legal
 process;—dicas, *acc.*; pl.
 Dicis, *gen.*; as, dicis gratia, for
 form's sake.
 Ditionis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -ent, *acc.*;
 -e, *abl.*; power.
 Diu, *abl.*; in the day time.
 Divisui, *dat.*; a dividing.
 Ebur, *ivory*;—not used in the
 plural.
 *Efflagitatu, *abl.*; importunity
 *Ejectus, *nom.*; a throwing out.
 Epos, *nom. and acc.*; an epic poem.
 Ergo, *abl. (or adv.)*; for the sake.
 Essedas, *acc. pl.*; war chariots.
 Evectus, *nom.*; a carrying out.
 Fæx, *dregs*, wants *gen. pl.*
 Fame, *abl.*; hunger.
 Far, *corn*, not used in the *gen.*,
dat. and abl. pl.
 Fas, *nom.*; *acc.*; right.
 Fauce, *abl.*; the throat;—*pl.*
entire.
 Fax, a torch, wants *gen. pl.*
 Fel, *gall*, wants *gen. pl.*
 Feminis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -e, *abl.*;
 the thigh;—*pl. femina, -ibus*.
 Flictu, *abl.*; a striking.
 Foris, *nom. and gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e,
abl.; a door;—*pl. entire*.
 Fors, *nom.*; -tis, *gen.*; -tem, *acc.*;
 -te, *abl.*; chance.
 Frux, *fruit, nom.*; scarcely used;
 —frugis, *gen.*, etc.
 Fulgetras, *acc. pl.*; lightning.
 Gausape, *nom., acc., abl.*; a rough
 garment;—gausapa, *acc. pl.*
 Glos, *nom.*; a husband's sister.
 Grates, *acc. pl.*;—gratibus, *abl.*;
 thanks.
 Hebdomadam, *acc.*; a week.
 Hiems, *winter*, not used in *gen.*,
dat. and abl. pl.
 Hippomanes, *nom. and acc.*
 *Hir, *nom.*; the palm of the hand.
 Hortatu, *abl.*; an exhorting;—*pl.*
 hortatibus.
 Impetis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; a shock;
 —*pl. impetibus*.
 Incitas, or -a, *acc. pl.*; as, ad in-
 citas redactus, reduced to a
 strait.
 *Inconsultu, *abl.*; without advice.
 *Indultu, *abl.*; indulgence.
 Inferiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; -is,
abl.; sacrifices to the dead.
 Infittias, *acc. pl.*; a denial; as,
 ire infittias, to deny.
 Ingratiis, *abl. pl.*, (used adverbially);
 against one's will.
 Interdiu, *abl. (or adv.)*; in the
 day time.
 *Invitatu, *abl.*; an invitation.
 Irrisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*;
 derision.
 Injussu, *abl.*; without command.
 Iniquis, *nom.*; restlessness.
 Instar, *nom., acc.*; a likeness.
 Jovis, *nom.*, rarely used;—*pl.*
 Joves.
 Jugeris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an acre;
 —*pl. jugera, -um, -ibus*.
 Jussu, *abl.*; command.
 Labes, a spot, wants *gen. pl.*
 Lucu, *abl.*; day-light.
 *Ludificatui, *dat.*; a mockery.

- Lux, *light*, wants *gen. pl.*
 Mandatu, *abl.*; a *command*.
 Mane, *nom., acc.*; mane or rarely *-i, abl.*: the *morning*.
 Mel, *honey*, not used in *gen., dat.* and *abl. pl.*
 Melo's, *nom., acc.*; melo, *dat.*; melody;—mele, *nom., acc. pl.*
 Metus, *fear*, not used in *gen., dat.* and *abl. pl.*
 Missu, *abl.*; a *sending*;—*pl. missus, -ibus.*
 Monitu, *abl.*; *admonition*;—*pl. monitus.*
 Natu, *abl.*; by *birth*.
 Nauci, *gen.*, with *non*; as, homo nou nauci, a *man of no account*.
 Nefas, *nom., acc.*; *wickedness*.
 Nemo, *nobody*, wants the *voc.* and the *pl*; *gen. & abl.* rarely used.
 Nepenthes, *nom., acc.*; an *herb*.
 Nex, *death*, wants the *voc.*;—*néces, nom., acc. pl.*
 Nihil, or nihilum, *nom.* and *acc.*; *-i, gen.*; *-o, abl.*: *nothing*.
 Noctu, *abl.*; by *night*.
 Nuptui, *dat.*; *-um, acc.*; *-u, abl.*; *marriage*.
 Obex, *nom.*; *-icem, acc.*; *-ice* or *-jice, abl.*; a *bolt*;—*pl. obices, -jicibus.*
 Objectum, *acc.*; *-u, abl.*; an *interposition*;—*pl. objectus.*
 Obtentui, *dat.*; *-um, acc.*; *-u, abl.*; a *pretext*.
 Opis, *gen.*; *opem, acc.*; *ope, abl.*; *help*?—*pl. entire.*
 Oppositu, *abl.*; an *opposing*;—*pl. oppositus, acc.*
 Opus, *nom., acc.*; *need*.
 Os, the *mouth*, wants the *gen. pl.*
 Panaces, *nom.*; *-is, gen.*; *-e, abl.*; an *herb*.
 Pax, *peace*, wants *gen. pl.*
 Peccatu, *abl.*; a *fault*.
 Pecudis, *gen.*; *-i, dat.*; *-em, acc.*; *-e, abl.*;—*pl. entire.*
 Pelage, *acc. pl.* of *pelagus*; the *sea*.
 Permissu, *abl.*; *-um, acc.*; *permission*.
 Piscatus, *nom.*; *-i, gen.*; *-um, acc.*; *-u, abl.*; a *fishing*.
 Pix, *pitch*; *pices, acc. pl.*
 Pondo, *abl.*; in *weight*.
 Preci, *dat.*; *-em, acc.*; *-e, abl.*; *prayer*;—*pl. entire.*
 Procer, *nom.*; *-em, acc.*; a *peer*;—*pl. entire.*
 Promptu, *abl.*; *readiness*.
 Pus, wants *gen., dat.* and *abl. pl.*
 Relatum, *acc.*;—*u, abl.*; a *recital*.
 Repetundarum, *gen. pl.*; *-is, abl.*; *money taken by extortion*.
 Rogatu, *abl.*; a *request*.
 Ros, *dew*, wants *gen. pl.*
 Rus, the *country*, wants *gen., dat.* and *abl. pl.*
 Satias, *nom.*; *-atem, acc.*; *ate, abl.*; *satiety*.
 Secus, *nom., acc.*; *sex*.
 Situs, *nom.*; *-um, acc.*; *-u, abl.*; *situation*;—*situs, nom. and acc. pl.*
 Sol, the *sun*, wants *gen. pl.*
 Sordis, *gen.*; *-em, acc.*; *-e* and *-i, abl.*; *filth*;—*pl. sordes, -ium.*
 Suboles, *offspring*, wants *gen. pl.*
 Spontis, *gen.*; *-e, abl.*; of *one's own accord*.
 Suppetiæ, *nom. pl.*; *-as, acc.*; *supplies*.
 Tabum, *nom.*; *-i, gen.*; *-o, abl.*; *corrupt matter*.
 Tempe, *nom., acc. voc. pl.*; a *vale in Thessaly*.
 Tus, wants *gen., dat.* and *abl. pl.*

Veni and -b, dat.; um, acc.; -o, abl.; sale.	Vespera, nom.; -am, acc.; -a, abl.; the evening.
Veprēm, acc.; -e, abl.; a brier;—pl. entire.	Virus, nom.; -i, gen.; -us, acc.; -o, abl.: poison.
Verberis, gen.; -e, abl.; a stripe; —pl. verbera, -um, -ibus.	Vis, gen. and dat. rare; strength; pl. vires, -ium, etc. See § 45.
Vesper, nom.; -um, acc.; -e, -i, or -o, abl.; the evening.	Viscus, nom.; -eris, gen.; -ere, abl.; an internal organ; pl. viscera, etc.
Vicis, gen.; -i, dat.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.; change; —pl. entire, except gen.	Vocath, abl.; a calling;—vocatus, acc. pl.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 52. 1. All verbs that have *ere* (penult long) in the Infinitive-Present are of the second conjugation.

2. The perfect-stem in verbs of this conjugation is usually formed by adding *u*, and the supine-stem by adding *it*, to the present-stem; as, *mon-eō*, I advise; *monu-i*, I have advised, supine *mon-it-um*. (Perfect and supine stems which are otherwise formed will be given in the vocabularies.)

ENDINGS OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1st Pers.	2nd.	3rd.	1st Pers	2nd.	3rd.
<i>Present.</i>	eo,	es,	et,	e mus,	e tis,	ent.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	e bam,	e bas,	e bat,	e ba mus,	e ba tis,	e bant.
<i>Future.</i>	e bo,	e bis,	e bit,	eb i mus,	eb i tis,	e bunt.

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1st Pers.	2nd.	3rd.	1st Pers.	2nd.	3rd.
<i>Present-perf.</i>	i,	is ti,	it,	i mus,	is tis,	e rupt or e re
<i>Past-perf.</i>	e ram,	e ras,	e rat,	e ra mus,	e ra tis,	e rant.
<i>Future-perf.</i>	e ro,	e ris,	e rit,	er i mus,	er i tis,	e rint.

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
<i>I advise.</i>	<i>I was advising.</i>	<i>I shall or will advise</i>
<i>Sing. mo neo,</i>	<i>S. mo ne bam,</i>	<i>S. mo ne bo,</i>
<i>mo nes,</i>	<i>mo ne bas,</i>	<i>mo ne bis,</i>
<i>mo net,</i>	<i>mo ne bat,</i>	<i>P. mo ne bit,</i>
<i>Plur. mo ne mus,</i>	<i>P. mon e ba mus,</i>	<i>mo neb i mus,</i>
<i>mo ne tis,</i>	<i>mon e ba tis,</i>	<i>mo neb i tis,</i>
<i>mo nent.</i>	<i>mo ne bant.</i>	<i>mo ne bunt.</i>

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

Present-perfect.	Past-perfect.	Future-perfect.
<i>I advised, or have advised.</i>	<i>I had advised.</i>	<i>I shall have advised.</i>
<i>S. mon u i,</i>	<i>S. mo nu e ram,</i>	<i>S. mo nu e ro,</i>
<i>mon u is ti,</i>	<i>mo nu e ras,</i>	<i>mo nu e ris.</i>
<i>mon u it;</i>	<i>mo nu e rat;</i>	<i>mo nu e rit,</i>
<i>P. mo nu i mus,</i>	<i>P. mon u e ra mus,</i>	<i>P. mon u er i mus,</i>
<i>mon u is tis,</i>	<i>mon u e ra tis,</i>	<i>mon u er i tis,</i>
<i>mon u e runt or e re.</i>	<i>mo nu e rant.</i>	<i>mo nu e rint.</i>

§ 53.

EXERCISE 23.

Vocabulary.

<i>Hab-ere, to have, hold.</i>	<i>Mov-ere, (mov—, mot—,) to move.</i>
<i>Præb-ere, (for præ-hab-ere,) to offer, furnish.</i>	<i>Man-ere, (mans—, mans—,) to remain.</i>
<i>Lat-ere, to lie hid, (no sup.)</i>	<i>Mord-ere, (momord—, mors—,) to bite, champ</i>
<i>Terr-ere, to frighten.</i>	<i>Tond-ere, (totond—, tons—,) to shear.</i>
<i>Per-terr-ere, to frighten thoroughly, to terrify.</i>	<i>Vid-ere, (vid—, vis—,) to see.</i>
<i>Tim-ere, to fear, (no sup.)</i>	<i>Castra, oruin, pl. camp.</i>
<i>Impetus, us, attack.</i>	<i>Frumentum, i, corn.</i>
	<i>Frenum, i, (2 sl. I. I. e.) bit.</i>
	<i>Legio, legion-is, (f), legion.</i>

Translate into English and analyze.

Plebs nobilitatōm timuerunt (§ 34, 2, Rule.) Puer taurum cornibus habebat. Impetus equitum hostes terret. Puer librum in manu habet. Agricolæ oves totonderant. Canis ancillam mordebit. Rex Germanorum castra moverat. Plebs in regis horto reginam vidit. Leones in specubus, (§ 48, R. 4,) latent. Magnitudo periculī servos perterrebit. Nautæ fluctus turbinesque non timent. Exerci-

tus Crassi in hibernis mansit. Galli Cæsaris exercitui frumentum præbebunt. Equi frena momordere. Hostes impetum equitum timebant. Marius consul castra ad collem moverat.

Translate into Latin.

The chief of the Eduans feared the cruelty of the Helvetians. The attack of the cavalry thoroughly frightened the enemy's archers and slingers. The skirmishers lay hid in the forest. The works of Cicero the orator delight the poet. The farmers had not sheared their sheep. The horses were champing their bits. The King and Queen remained in the temple. The Helvetians had moved their camp from the hill to the river. The Gauls furnished corn to Cæsar's army.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 54. 1. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a noun.

2. Adjectives are declined like nouns; they are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

CLASS I. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 55. Adjectives of this class have their masculine and neuter endings of the second declension, their feminine endings of the first.

PARADIGM.

Bon-us, bon-a, bon-um, good.

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
bon us,	bon a,	bon um,
bon i,	bon æ,	bon i,
bon o,	bon æ,	bon o,
bon um,	bon am,	bon um,
bon e,	bon a,	bon um,
bon o,	bon a,	bon o.

Plural.

<i>bon i,</i>	<i>bon æ,</i>	<i>bon a,</i>
<i>bon o rum,</i>	<i>bon a rum,</i>	<i>bon o rum,</i>
<i>bon is,</i>	<i>bon is,</i>	<i>bon is,</i>
<i>bon os,</i>	<i>bon as,</i>	<i>bon a,</i>
<i>bon i,</i>	<i>bon æ,</i>	<i>bon a,</i>
<i>bon is,</i>	<i>bon is,</i>	<i>bon is.</i>

Rem. 1. Participles and pronouns in *us* are declined like *bonus*.

Rem. 2. Adjectives whose stems end in *er* generally drop the endings *us* in the nominative, and *e* in the vocative; and most of them drop *e* of the stem in inflection; as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, *beautiful*; *pulchr-i*, *pulchr-æ*, *pulchr-i*, &c.

Rem. 3. The following retain *e* of the stem :

Asper; rough; *exter*, foreign; *gibber*, crook-backed; *lacer*, torn; *liber*, free; *miser*, wretched; *prosper*, prosperous; and compounds of *fer* and *ger*; as, *corniger*, horned.

Rem. 4. *Alter*, the other of two, has *altera*, *alterum*; and *dexter*, right, has sometimes *dextera*, *dexterum*.

Satur, full, has *satura*, *saturum*.

§ 56. Six adjectives in *us*, and three in *er*, have their genitive singular in *ius*, and their dative in *i*, in all the genders :

<i>Alius</i> , another.	<i>Totus</i> , whole.	<i>Alter</i> , -tera, -terum, the other.
<i>Nullus</i> , no one.	<i>Ullus</i> , any.	<i>Uter</i> , -tra, -trum, which of the two.
<i>Solus</i> , alone.	<i>Unus</i> , one.	<i>Neuter</i> , -tra, -trum, neither.

To these may be added the other compounds of *uter*,—namely, *uterque*, each of two; *utercumque*, *uterlibet*, and *utervis*, which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque*. etc.—also, *alteruter*, one of two; gen. *alterutrius*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*; dat. *alterutri*. So *alteruterque*, and *unusquisque*.

Nullus, *solus*, *totus*, *ullus*, and *unus* are thus declined :

Singular.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	<i>u nus,</i>	<i>u na,</i>	<i>u num,</i>
G.	<i>u ni us,</i>	<i>u ni us,</i>	<i>u ni us,</i>
D.	<i>u ni,</i>	<i>u ni,</i>	<i>u ni,</i>
Ac.	<i>u num,</i>	<i>u num,</i>	<i>u num,</i>
V.	<i>u ne,</i>	<i>u na,</i>	<i>u num,</i>
Ab.	<i>u no.</i>	<i>u na.</i>	<i>u no.</i>

The plural is regular, like that of *bonus*.

Rem. 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius* contracted for *alius*.

Rem. 2. Some of these adjectives occasionally form their genitive and dative regularly.

§ 57.

EXERCISE 24.

Vocabulary.

Alt-us, a, um, *high, deep.*

Long-us, a, um, *long.*

Lat-us, a, um, *broad.*

Magn-us, a, um, *great, large.*

Mult-us, a, um, *much, many.*

Dens-us, a, um, *thick.*

Benign-us, a, um, *kind.*

Fid-us, a, um, *faithful.*

Improb-us, a, um, *wicked.*

Iniqu-us, a, um, *unjust.*

Judex, judic-is, *judge.*

Thrax, Thracis, *Thracian.*

1. *Rule of Position.* The adjective, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits; as, *puer bonus, a good boy.*

2. *Rule of Syntax.* Adjective words agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender, number, and case; as,

Puer bonus, A good boy.

Puella pulchra, A beautiful girl.

Flumen latum, A broad river.

Translate into English and analyze.

Rex Thracum in colle turren altis ædificat. Filius improbus patrem lapide vulneraverat.

Silvæ densæ nuncios reginæ terruerunt. Venator canes fidos amat. Improbi homines faciem vultumque judicis timent. Plebes iniquum judicem formidat. Nubes densæ lunam obscuraverant. Equites hostium flumen latum tranabunt. Agricolaæ filii bobus magnis agros aravere. Cæsar multa oppida expugnavit. Puer cultrum longum in manu habuit. Pueri boni parentes amant. Magister benignus bonis pueris libros dedit.

Translate into Latin.

The consul slew many robbers. The kind mother gives

food to her children. The wicked consul killed the tribunes of the people. The chief of the Thracians lay hid in the King's grove. The shepherd armed his sons with long knives. The enemy's skirmishers swam across a broad river. The faithful servants defended their master with knives and stones. The attack of the enemy did not frighten the general. The great commander slew many captives. The hunter saw many wolves in the forest. Wicked men do not fear the countenance of an unjust judge. The kind master, according to custom, was advising the boys.

EXERCISE 25.

§ 58. I. *Rule of Position.* When a noun is limited by an adjective and a genitive, the adjective is generally put first, as, *fidus Tullii servus*, *Tully's faithful slave*.

2. *Rule of Position.* An adjective limiting the object of a preposition is often put before the preposition; as, *magno in prælio*, *in a great battle*.

3. *Rule of Syntax.* With words expressing a part, the genitive is used to denote the whole; as, *unus militum*, one of the soldiers; *multi equitum*, many of the horsemen.

Remark. This is usually called the *partitive genitive*. The partitive word, if an adjective, agrees in gender with the word denoting the whole. *Unus militum* is equivalent to *unus miles militum*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Magnæ hostium copiæ in silva latuerunt. Magna pars nobilitatis apud Crassum cœnabant. Cives multi magna in urbe habitant. Consul in hostium castris multos milites vidit. Pastor oves multosque agnorum totonderat. Imperator magnus uno in prælio copias hostium fugavit. Alter fratrum magnum ad oppidum festinat. Una Romanorum

legio totum hostium exercitum perterruit. Neutra ancillarum canes timet. Germani in prælio nullum ordinem servant. Rex Thracum nullam reipublicæ (§ 50) legem violaverat. Una in urbe homines multi habitant. Impetus hostium nullius legienis ordines turbavit.

Translate into Latin.

The Thracians will furnish corn to the consul's great army. One of the skirmishers saw the enemy's horsemen in the dense forest. The shepherd's faithful dog defended the sheep from (a) the wolves. The general, after the manner of a king, demanded a great number of hostages. The whole army dreaded the cruelty of the general. The inhabitants of the whole village feared the farmer's big bull. Cæsar feared no danger. A great multitude of footmen hastened to the camp.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 59. CLASS II. *Adjectives having two endings in the nominative. Third Declension.*

Adjectives of the second class have *is* in the masculine and feminine, and *e* in the neuter, and are of the third declension.

Paradigm. Brev-is, short.

Singular.

Plural.

M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. V. brev is,	brev e,	brev es,	brev ia,
G. brev is,	brev is,	brev ium,	brev ium,
D. brev i,	brev i,	brev ibus,	brev ibus,
Ac. brev em,	brev e,	brev es,	brev ia,
Ab. brev i,	brev i,	brev ibus,	brev ibus.

Rem. 1. Comparatives may be considered of this class.

Rem. 2. Adjectives which have *e* in the nominative neuter, have *i* in the ablative singular; *ium* in gen. pl.; and *ia* in nom. acc. voc. pl. neut. Comparatives have *um* and *a*.

Rem. 3. The following have also *er* in the nominative singular masculine ; as, *acer* or *acris*, *acris*, *acre*.

<i>acer</i> , sharp.	<i>celeber</i> , famous.	<i>silvester</i> , woody.
<i>alacer</i> , cheerful.	<i>equester</i> , of a horse.	<i>terrester</i> , of the earth.
<i>campester</i> , of the plain.	<i>paluster</i> , marshy.	<i>volucer</i> , winged.
<i>celer</i> , swift.	<i>pedester</i> , on foot.	<i>saluber</i> , wholesome.
	<i>puter</i> , rotten.	

Rem. 4. *Volucer* has *um* in the genitive plural.

§ 60.

EXERCISE 26.

Vocabulary.

Fort-is, e, brave.
Agil-is, e, active.
Crudel-is, e, cruel.
Grav-is, e, heavy, severe.
Omn-is, e, all, every.
Nobil-is, e, noble.

Adventus, us, arrival.
Fatig-are, to weary.
Civitas, *civitat-is*, state.
Locus, i, [2 51, I, 1, (b)] place.
Levis, e, light, slight.
Piger, grā, grum, lazy.

Rem. The adjective is often used as a noun, the noun with which it agrees being omitted ; as, *boni*, the good ; *bona*, good things, property. Masculine adjectives thus used express persons ; neuter adjective, things.

Translate into English and analyze.

Imperator fortis centuriones omnes convocavit. Magister bonus omnes pueros monuerat. Servi agiles taurum cornibus habebant. Onera gravia magnos agricolæ boves fatigant. Materfamilias liberis servisque omnibus cibum salubre dabit. Puer manum cultro secuit. Pedestres Carthaginiensium copiae equites fortes fugaverant. Bella longa multas civitates ferro ignique vastavere. Princeps nobilis apud regem cœnaverat. Deus omnia creavit. Boni gravia bella formidant. Latrones improbi multos cives trucidaverunt. Velites agiles multos silvarum tramites explorabunt. Canis fidus per totam noctem vigilat. Equites palustria loca timent.

Translate into Latin.

The cruel chief has slain all the captives with the sword.

All the citizens dreaded the great cruelty of the wicked king. Lazy slaves love short days and light work. One of the swift horsemen is hastening to (*ad*) the camp of Cæsar. The active sailors were fastening the yards to the masts with long ropes. The arrival of the brave consul thoroughly frightened all the chiefs of the Gauls. Lazy boys do not love their books. Cæsar's army laid waste many states of Gaul. The farmer's lazy son loves the shade of the thick trees. The brave general fears no danger. Cæsar put all the legions into winter-quarters.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 61. CLASS III. *Adjectives of the Third Declension. One Ending.*

1. Adjectives of this class have but one ending for all genders in the nominative.

PARADIGMS.

FELIX, *happy*.

Singular.			Plural.		
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	
N.	<i>fe lix,</i>	<i>fe lix,</i>	<i>fe lic es,</i>	<i>ia.</i>	
G.	<i>fe lic is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>fe lic ium,</i>	<i>ium,</i>	
D.	<i>fe lic i.</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>fe lic ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	
Ac.	<i>fe lic em,</i>	<i>fe lix,</i>	<i>fe lic es,</i>	<i>ia,</i>	
V.	<i>felix,</i>	<i>fe lix,</i>	<i>fe lic es,</i>	<i>ia,</i>	
Ab.	<i>fe lic e or i. e or i.</i>		<i>fe lic ibus,</i>	<i>ibus.</i>	

PRUDENS, *prudent*.

Singular.

M. & F.	Neuter.
N. <i>pru dens,</i>	<i>pru dens,</i>
G. <i>pru dent is,</i>	<i>pru dent is,</i>
D. <i>pru dent i,</i>	<i>pru dent i,</i>
Ac. <i>pru dent em,</i>	<i>pru dens,</i>
V. <i>pru dens,</i>	<i>pru dens,</i>
Ab. <i>pru dent e or i,</i>	<i>pru dent e or i; &c.</i>

2. Present participles are declined like *prudens*. When used as participles they have *e* rather than *i* in the ablative singular; but when used as adjectives they have *i* rather than *e*. Comparatives also have oftener *e* than *i*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have either *e* or *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the ablative:

Bicorpor, bipes, cælebs, compos, deses, discolor, hospes, impos, impubes, juvenis, locuples, pauper, princeps, puber or pubes, senex, sospes, superstes, tricorpor, tricuspis, and tripes.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives of one termination have only *i* in the ablative:

Anceps, concors, discors, hebes, immemor, iners, ingens, inops, memor, par, præceps, recens, repens, vigil, and most adjectives in *x*, especially those in *plex*.

REM. 1. *Inerte*, *recente*, and *præcipe* sometimes occur.

REM. 2. *Præsens*, when used of things, makes the ablative in *i*; when used of persons, it has *e*.

4. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *ium*; but *vetus*, old, and *uber*, fertile, have *a*, and *um*.

Exc. 1. Those adjective that have only *e* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *facio* and *capio*, and of such nouns as make *um* in their genitive plural, with *celer*, *compar*, *cicur*, *dives*, *memor*, *immemor*, *præpes*, *supplex*, and *vigil*, make their genitive plural in *um*.

Exc. 3. *Dis*, *locuples*, *sons*, and *insons* have either *um* or *ium*; and other adjectives have sometimes *um* instead of *ium* in the poets and later prose writers.

§ 62

EXERCISE 27.

Vocabulary.

Dives, divit-is, rich.

Ferax, ac-is, fertile.

Innocens, ent-is, innocent.

Pauper, pauper-is, poor.

Vetus, veter-is, ancient: pl. veteres, the ancients.

Ingens, ent is, huge.

Augere, (aux-, auct-), to increase, swell.

Ferox, feroc-is, warlike, fierce.

Atrox, atroc-is, terrible, cruel, savage.

Recens, ent-is, recent.

Civilis, e, civil.

Translate into English and analyze.

Imbres recentes flumina omnia auxerunt. Vir bonus pauperibus cibum dabit. Pastor prudens oves agnosque a lupis defensabit. Orgetorix, princeps Helvetiorum, copias auxerat. Veteres Jovi tauros ingentes mactabant. Agricolaë prudentes in penum mergites omnes portant. Cæsar fortes centuriones laudabat. Marius, Romanorum imperator, feraces Numidiæ agros ferro ignique vastavit. Princeps crudelis innocentem plebem trucidavit. Bella civilia nobilitatem et cives divites perterruerant. Principes feroces atrocia bella amant. Rex ferox nobilitatem ad bellum magnum et atrox concitavit.

Translate into Latin.

No prudent (man) will give his sheep to the wolves. The happy mother loves her children. The innocent do not fear the face and countenance of a judge. The consul will preserve the ancient laws of the commonwealth. The prudent shepherds had sheared their sheep. A terrible lion tore in pieces all the inhabitants of the village. The enemy's soldiers had laid waste the whole city with fire and sword. The rich dread civil wars. The recent rains have swelled the great river. The poor (man) does not fear the robber.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 63. 1. Adjectives expressing number are called *numerals*, and are divided into three classes, viz:

(a.) *Cardinals*, which answer the question "*How many?*" as, unus, *one*; duo, *two*:

(b.) *Ordinals*, which express order or rank; as, primus, *first*; secundus, *second*:

(c.) *Distributives*, which answer the question, "*How many to each?*"—" *How many apiece?*" as, *singuli*, one to each, one at a time, one apiece; *bini*, two apiece.

2. To these may be added numeral adverbs, which answer the question "*How many times?*" as, *semel*, once; *bis*, twice.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
<i>One, two, &c.</i>	<i>First, second, &c.</i>	<i>One by one, &c.</i>	<i>Once, twice, &c.</i>
1 Unus	Primus	Singuli	Semel
2 Duo	Secundus	Bini	Bis
3 Tres	Tertius	Terni	Ter
4 Quatuor	Quartus	Quaterni	Quater
5 Quinque	Quintus	Quini	Quinques
6 Sex	Sextus	Seni	Sexies
7 Septem	Septimus	Septeni	Septies
8 Octo	Octavus	Octoni	Octies
9 Novem	Nonus	Noveni	Novies
10 Decem	Decimus	Deni	Decies
11 Undecim	Undecimus	Undeni	Undecies
12 Duodecim	Duodecimus	Duodeni	Duodecies
13 Tredecim	Tertius	Terni	Tredecies
14 Quatuordecim	Quartus	Quaterni	Quatuordecies
15 Quindecim	Quintus	Quini	Quindecies
16 Sexdecim	Sextus	Seni	Sedecies
17 Septendecim	Septimus	Septeni	Decies & septies
18 Octodecim	Octavus	Octoni	Duodevicies
19 Novendecim	Nonus	Noveni	Undevicies
20 Viginti	Vicesimus	Viceni	Vicies
30 Tringinta	Tricesimus	Triceni	Tricies
40 Quadraginta	Quadragesimus	Quadrageni	Quadrages
50 Quinquaginta	Quinquagesimus	Quinquageni	Quinquages
60 Sexaginta	Sexagesimus	Sexageni	Sexages
70 Septuaginta	Septuagesimus	Septuageni	Septuages
80 Octoginta	Octogesimus	Octogeni	Octoges
90 Nonaginta	Nonagesimus	Nonageni	Nonages
100 Centum	Centesimus	Centeni	Centies
200 Ducenti	Ducentesimus	Ducenteni	Ducenties
300 Trecenti	Trecentesimus	Trecenteni	Trecenties
400 Quadringenti	Quadringentesimus	Quadringenti	Quadringenties
500 Quingenti	Quingentesimus	Quingenti	Quingenties
600 Sexcenti	Sexcentesimus	Sexcenteni	Sexcenties
700 Septingenti	Septingentesimus	Septingenti	Septingenties
800 Octingenti	Octingentesimus	Octingenti	Octingenties
900 Noningenti	Nongentesimus	Nongenti	Nongenties
1000 Mille	Millesimus	Milleni	Millies

Rem. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined. From four to a hundred they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

Rem. 2. For the declension of *unus*. See § 56. *Tres* is declined like the plural of *brevis*.

§ 64. *Duo* is thus declined:—

	<i>M.</i>	<i>Plural.</i> <i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>du o,</i>	<i>du æ,</i>	<i>du o,</i>
G.	<i>du o rum,</i>	<i>du a rum,</i>	<i>du o rum,</i>
D.	<i>du o bus,</i>	<i>du a bus,</i>	<i>du o bus,</i>
Ac.	<i>du os, or du o,</i>	<i>du as,</i>	<i>du o,</i>
V.	<i>du o,</i>	<i>du æ,</i>	<i>du o,</i>
Ab.	<i>du o bus.</i>	<i>du a bus.</i>	<i>du o bus.</i>

Rem. 1. *Duorum, duarum*, are often contracted into *duum*, especially in compounds, as, *duumvir*, and when joined with *millium*.—*Ambo*, both, is declined like *duo*.

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

Rem. 2. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *unæ nuptiæ*, one marriage; *una castra*, one camp. It is used also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. So, also, when it takes the signification of “alone” or “the same;” as, *uni Ubii*, the Ubians alone; *unis moribus vivere*,—with the same manners.

3. (a.) Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, and nineteen, are often expressed by two numbers, the greater of which usually precedes, united by *et*; thus, *decem et tres*, *decem et novem*, or, omitting *et*, *decem novem*. *Octodecim* has no good authority. See *infra*, 4.

(b.) From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the greater without *et*; as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*. Above one hundred, the greater precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*; *trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex*. *Et* is never twice used, but the poets sometimes take *ac, atque*, or *que*, instead of *et*.

4. For eighteen, twenty eight, &c., *duodeviginti*, *duodetriginta*, &c. (*two-from-twenty*, *two-from-thirty*, &c.) are more commonly used; and for nineteen, twenty nine, &c., *undeviginti undetriginta*, &c. (*one-from-*

twenty, one-from-thirty, &c.) Neither *in* (*unus*) nor *duo* are declined in these combinations.

5.-(a.) Thousands are generally expressed by prefixing the smaller cardinal numbers to *millia*; as, *decem millia*, ten thousand; *ducenta millia*, two hundred thousand. As there is in Latin no unit above *mille*, (a thousand,) the higher units of modern numération are expressed by prefixing the humeral adverbs to the combinations. *centena millia*; as, *decies centena millia*, a million; *centies centena millia*, ten millions. In such combinations *centena millia* is sometimes omitted; as, *decies*, *scil.*, *centena millia*.

(b.) The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing smaller numbers; as, *bis sex* for *duodecim*; *bis centum* for *ducenti*, etc.

6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or as an adjective.

(a.) When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number, and, in the plural, has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc.; as, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, two thousand men, etc. When *mille* is a substantive, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites*.

(b.) As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable; as, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *cum bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

§ 65. 1. In the ordinals, instead of *primus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

2. (a.) From thirteenth to nineteenth, the smaller number is usually put first without *et*; as, *tertius decimus*, but sometimes the greater with or without *et*; as, *decimus et tertius*, or *decimus tertius*.

(b.). Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc., are often expressed by *unus et vicesimus*, *unus et tricesimus*, etc., one and twentieth, etc.; and twenty-second, &c., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesimus*, etc., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesimus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesimus*.

(c.) For eighteenth, etc., to fifty-eight, and for nineteenth, etc., to fifty-ninth, the subtractive forms, *duodvicesimus*, etc., and *undevicesimus*, etc., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by the subtractives, *duodevicensi*, etc., *undevicensi*, etc.

4. (a.) Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *bina spicula*, two darts. Virg. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *binæ nuptiæ*, two weddings.

(b.) The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *binus*, two-fold. So *ternus*, *quinus*, *septenus*.

5. In the numeral adverbs, for the intermediate numbers 21, 22, etc., the larger number also may be put first, either with or without *et*; and for twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodetrices* and *undequadragies* are found.

EXERCISE 28.

§ 66. 1. *Rule of Syntax.* The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative. As, *tertia hora*, at the third hour. (*Ablative of Time.*)

2. *Rule of Syntax.* Duration of time, and extent of space, are expressed by the accusative, sometimes by the ablative. As, *tres horas mansit*, he remained three hours; *fossa duos pedes lata*, a ditch two feet wide.

3. *Rule of Position.* Designations of time usually precede the predicate.

Vocabulary.

Fossa, æ, ditch.
Hora, æ, hour.
Mensis, is, (§ 33. Exc. 3.) month.
Dies, ei, day.
Annus, i, year.
Una ex parte, on one side.
Hiems, hiem-is, winter.

Passus, us, pace.
Con-tin-ere, (tinu-, tent-) to keep, hold in, restrain.
Sus-tin-ere, (tinu-, tent-) to sustain, bear.
Tempus, or-is, time.
Noster, a, um, our.
Estas, æstat-is, summer.

Translate into English and analyze.

Servi fidi horas multas vigilaverant. Nullus agricola prudens oves hieme tondet. Cæsar, Romanorum imperator, tres legiones in hibernis collocavit. Consul multos*

* In *kibernis* refers to the resting of troops in winter-quarters; in *hiberna*, to the motion of going thence.

annos in urbe habitaverat. Mons altus una ex parte Helvetios continuit. Equites nostri hostium impetum duas horas sustinuerunt. Pastor prudens oves omnes æstate tondit. Legatus fortis decem dies Cæsaris adventum expectabat. Imperator tertio die castra movit. Princeps atrox multos menses civitatem perterrebat. Consul fortis nullo anni tempore adventum hostium timuit. Rex latrones omnes brevi tempore trucidavit. Crassus tria millia passuum equitavit. Consul mille passus castra movit.

Translate into Latin.

The great rains had kept our soldiers in the camp many months. In one summer Cæsar laid waste many States of Gaul with fire and sword. For many years (*acc.*) the Romans routed all their enemies by sea and land. Cæsar moved his camp ten thousand paces from the city. The soldiers of the tenth legion had carried heavy burdens for many hours (*acc.*) Our skirmishers sustained the attack of the Germans three hours. Lake Lemannus held-in the Helvetians on one side. The farmer had a ditch three feet wide in his field. The farmer will have in his fields five ditches, each three feet (*ternos*) wide. The master gave (to) the boys four books apiece. A ditch twelve feet wide and six feet deep had hindered the attack of the enemy many days.

EXERCISE 29.

§ 67. 1. PARTIAL PARADIGM OF ESSE, *to be*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Person. { 1. sum, *I am*,
2. es, *thou art*,
3. est, *he is*;

PLURAL.

su mus, *we are*,
es tis, *ye or you are*,
sunt, *they are*.

Imperfect.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>e ram, I was,</i> | <i>e ra mus, we were,</i> |
| 2. <i>e ras, thou wast,</i> | <i>e ra tis, ye or you were,</i> |
| 3. <i>e rat, he was ;</i> | <i>e rant, they were.</i> |

Future. *shall, or will.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>e ro, I shall be,</i> | <i>er i mus, we shall be,</i> |
| 2. <i>e ris, thou wilt be.</i> | <i>er i tis, ye or you will be,</i> |
| 3. <i>e rit, he will be ;</i> | <i>e runt, they will be.</i> |

*Present-perfect. *have been; or was.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>fu i, I have been,</i> | <i>fu i mus, we have been,</i> |
| 2. <i>fu is ti, thou hast been,</i> | <i>fu is tis, ye have been,</i> |
| 3. <i>fu it, he has been,</i> | <i>fu e runt or re, they have been.</i> |

Past-perfect.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>fu e ram, I had been,</i> | <i>fu e ra mus, we had been,</i> |
| 2. <i>fu e ras, thou hadst been.</i> | <i>fu e ra tis, ye had been,</i> |
| 3. <i>fu e rat, he had been ;</i> | <i>fu e rant, they had been.</i> |

Future-perfect. *shall or will have.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>fu e ro, I shall have been,</i> | <i>fu er i mus, we shall have been,</i> |
| 2. <i>fu e ris, thou wilt have been,</i> | <i>fu er i tis, ye will have been,</i> |
| 3. <i>fu e rit, he will have been ;</i> | <i>fu e rint, they will have been.</i> |

2. A noun or adjective may limit the predicate as well as the subject ; thus we may say *Cicero orator*, *Cicero the orator* ; and *Cicero orator fuit*, *Cicero was an orator* ; *ager ferax*, *a fertile field*, and *ager ferax est*, *the field is fertile*.

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

3. *Rule of Syntax.* A noun in the predicate denoting the same thing as the subject, agrees with it in case, and is called the *predicate nominative* ; as, *Cicero orator fuit*, *Cicero was an orator*.

Rem. 1. If the subject consists of more than one thing, the *predicate nominative* is plural.

Rem. 2. Adjectives in the predicate agree with the subject. See § 57, 2.

* The aorist-perfecti is translated, *I was, thou wast, he was, we were, &c.*

EXERCISE 29.

*Vocabulary.*Integer, a, um, *untouched, unhurt,*
*fresh.*Humanus, a, um, *human.*Incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*Verus, a, um, *true.*Turpis, e, *base.*Ingens, ent-is, *huge.*Duplex, duplic-is, *double.*Triplex, triplic-is, *triple.*Vulnus, vulner-is, *wound.*Vita, æ, *life.*Velox, veloc-is, *swift.*Cæcus, a, um, *blind.*Mendacium, i, *lie.*Corniger, a, um, *horned.*Præclarus, a, um, *distinguished.*Acies, ei, *line of battle.*Renunciatio, ou-is, *report.**Translate into English and analyze.*

Non omnia animalia cornigera sunt. Aquilarum alæ magnæ sunt. Non omnes homines sapientes sunt. Res humanæ incertæ sunt. Vita hominum incerta est. Unus equorum cæcus fuit. Cæsaris milites veloces fortesque fuerunt. Cæsar fuit imperator magnus. Marius dux fuit Romanorum. Regis filius rex erit. Renunciatio legatorum vera fuit. Aper ingens in silva habitat. Imperator in prælio integer fuit. Vulnere militum gravia sunt. Consul annos multos cæcus fuerat. Cæsaris acies triplex fuit. Omnes decimæ legionis milites integris viribus (§ 45) prælium redintegraverant. Mendacia turpia sunt. Cicero fuit orator præclarus. Improborum (§ 60 Rem,) vita onus est grave. Gallorum acies duplex est.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer's oxen are large. Many bulls are horned. All generals are not wise. The inhabitants of the villages dread the huge lion. Cicero was a wise consul and a great man. The wounds of the brave soldiers were severe. Many of the swift horsemen were unhurt. Davus, Cæsar's slave, has been blind many years. Our soldiers in a triple line renew the battle. All human things are uncertain. The shade of the dense forest will frighten the king's swift messenger.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 68. 1. The change which adjectives undergo to express different degrees of quality is called comparison.

2. Grammarians generally give three degrees of comparison, the *positive*, *comparative* and *superlative*.

3. The simple form of the adjective is usually called the positive; as, *altus*, *high*.

4. The *comparative* represents the quality as existing in one of *two* things or sets of things, in a higher degree than in the other; as, *mons arbore altior est*, *a mountain is higher than a tree*.

5. The *superlative* represents the quality as existing in one of *several* things, or sets of things, in a higher degree than in any of the rest; as, *trium montium altissimus*, *the highest of the three mountains*.

Rem. 1. When two qualities of the same thing are compared; the comparative is used; as, *Aristides iustior quam sapientior fuit*, *Aristides was more just than wise*.

Rem. 2. The comparative may often be translated by *too* or *rather* with the positive, especially when one of the things compared is omitted; as, *rex elementior est*, *the king is too merciful*.

Rem. 3. The superlative often expresses a high degree of a quality; as, *mons altissimus*, *a very high mountain*.

FORMATION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

§ 69. 1. The comparative is formed by adding *ior*, and the superlative by adding *issimus* to the stem of the adjective; as, *alt-us*, *high*, *alt-ior*, *higher*, *alt-issimus*, *highest*.

2. Superlatives are of the first and second declensions.

Comparatives are of the third declension, and are thus declined :

Singular.		Plural.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. <i>dur ior,</i>	<i>dur ius,</i>	<i>dur ior es,</i>	<i>dur ior a,</i>
G. <i>dur ior is,</i>	<i>dur ior is,</i>	<i>dur ior um,</i>	<i>dur ior rum,</i>
D. <i>dur ior i,</i>	<i>dur ior i,</i>	<i>dur ior ibus,</i>	<i>dur ior ibus,</i>
Ac. <i>dur ior em,</i>	<i>dur ius,</i>	<i>dur ior es,</i>	<i>dur ior a,</i>
V. <i>dur ior,</i>	<i>dur ius,</i>	<i>dur ior es,</i>	<i>dur ior a,</i>
Ab. <i>dur ior e or i.</i>	<i>dur ior e or i.</i>	<i>dur ior ibus.</i>	<i>dur ior ibus.</i>

EXERCISE 30.

§ 70. 1. That with which anything is compared is connected by the conjunction *quam*, than, in the same case, or in the nominative, subject of *est*, *fuit*, &c., understood ; as, *fortiorem vidi neminem quam Marium, I have seen no braver man than Marius* ; or *fortiorem vidi neminem quam Marius (est,) I have seen no braver man than Marius is.*

2. *Quam* is sometimes omitted ; then

Rule of Syntax. The ablative is used with the comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, to express that with which something is compared ; as, *mons est arbore altior, a mountain is higher than a tree.*

Vocabulary.

Sanctus, a, um, *sacred* ; (of a man, *pure*.)

Durus, a, um, *hard*.

Nemo, *neminis*, *no man*.

Nihil, (indeclinable,) *nothing*.

Regio, on-is, *region*.

Gens, gent-is, *race, nation*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Prudentiorem vidi neminem quam Marium, Romanorum ducem. (Lupi sunt canibus ferociores. Nulla regio est Gallia feracior. Nihil est jurejurando (§ 45) sanctius. Equus est bove velocior. Germani fuerunt Gallis ferociores. Nullum bellum est bello civili atrocius. Nemo Romanorum sanctior fuit quam Cato. Consul gentem ferociorem

nullam videbit quam Helvetios. Cæsar in exercitu fortiores habet neminem quam Lucius. Aurum gravius est quam argentum. Ferrum est auro durius. Nihil incertius est quam vita humana. Agricola canem quam lupum ferociorem habuit. Equites quam pedites sunt velociores.

Translate into Latin.

The general is braver than the soldiers. The consul's son will be more prudent than his father. No nation was braver than the Helvetians. The king's messengers are swifter than horses. Lions are fiercer than dogs. Nothing is more sacred than the oath of a good man. A good man's promise is more sacred than a wicked man's oath. The Belgians were a braver race than the Gauls. No general was more prudent than Cæsar. The king's garden is more fertile than the farmer's field. Iron is harder than silver. Silver is not heavier than gold. The general is not more prudent than the centurion.

EXERCISE 31.

§ 71. The *partitive genitive* is used with comparatives and superlatives; as, *fortior duorum fratrum*, the braver of the two brothers; *fortissimus militum*, the bravest of the soldiers.

Vocabulary.

Jura, æ, (masc.) *Jura*, (a mountain.)
Italia, æ, *Italy*.
Roma, æ, *Rome*.

Ira, æ, *anger, wrath*.
Noster, tra, trum, *our*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Jura, mons altissimus, (§ 69, Rem. 3) Helvetios una ex parte continet. Imperator fortissimos militum laudavit. Judex iniquus quam latro est turpior. Velitum velocissimi omnes silvarum tramites exploraverant. Prudentior duorum imperatorum copias hostium fugabit. Fortissimi

centurionum magnitudinem periculi timebant. Orgetorix fuit Helvetiorum noblissimus. Nostrorum (§ 60, Rem.) impetus fortissimos hostium perterruerat. Jugurtha, homo improbissimus, fratres trucidavit. Vulnera militum fuerunt gravissima.

Translate into Latin.

The bravest of the enemy did not sustain the attack of our horsemen. The Rhine, a very broad river, keeps in the Helvetians on one side. The wicked king had slain the noblest of the hostages. The consul will lay waste the most fertile states of Gaul. On the third day the general moved his camp into the most fertile part of the province. The most wicked of men fear the wrath of God. The greatness of the danger frightened the bravest of our soldiers. The general is wiser than the king's ambassadors. One of the enemy wounded Lucius, a very brave man, with a stone. Davus is the most faithful of all the slaves. Rome is the noblest city of Italy.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 72. 1. Adjectives whose stems end in *er* form the superlative by adding *rimus*; as, *pulcher*, beautiful, *pulchrior*, *pulcherrimus*.

2. Six adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *limus* to the stem:

Facilis,	facilior,	facillimus,	easy.
Difficilis,	difficilior,	difficillimus,	difficult.
Gracilis,	gracilior,	gracillimus,	slender.
Humilis,	humilior,	humillimus,	low.
Similis,	similior,	simillimus,	like.
Dissimilis,	dissimilior,	dissimillimus,	unlike.

Imbecillus or *imbecillis*, weak, has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus*.

3. Compound adjectives ending in *dicus*, *ficus* and *volus*, form the comp. and superl. by adding *entior* and *entissimus* to the stem; as, *benevolus*, benevolent, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*.

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:

Dexter,	dexterior,	dextimus,	right.
Extera, (<i>fem.</i>)	exterior,	extrémus, or extimus,	outward.
Postera, (<i>fem.</i>)	posterior,	postremus or postumus,	hind.
Inferus,	inferior,	infimus, or imus,	below.
Superus,	superior,	supremus, or summus,	above.

REMARK 1. The nominative singular of *postera* does not occur in the masculine; and that of *extera* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison:

Bonus,	melior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus,	bad,	worse.	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	little,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plurimus,	much,	more,	most.
Multa,	—	plurima,			
Multum,	plus,	plurimum,			
Nequam,	nequior,	nequissimus,	worthless, etc.		
Frugi,	frugalior,	frugalissimus	frugal, etc.		

Plus, more, is thus declined:—

Singular.

Plural.

N.

M & F.

N.

N.	plus,	N.	plu res,	plu ra, rarely plu ri a,
G.	plu ris,	G.	plu ri um,	plu ri um,
D.	—,	D.	plu ri bus,	plu ri bus,
Ac.	plus,	Ac.	plu res,	plu ra,
V.	—	V.	—,	—
Ab.	plu re, (<i>obs.</i>)	Ab.	plu ri bus,	plu ri bus.

So, but in the plural number only, *complures*, a great many.

EXERCISE 32.

§ 73. The *partitive genitive* is frequently used with neuter adjectives, such as *multum*, *plus*, *minimum*, *plurimum*, &c. ; as, *multum auri*, much gold.

Translate into English and analyze.

Principes Gallorum Cæsaris exercitui plurimum frumenti præbuerunt. Cives in domibus multum auri habent. Minimum virtutis est in iudice iniquo. Agricola plus frumenti habent quam auri. Iter per Alpes difficillimum est. Magister optimos puerorum laudabit. Cæsar maximus fuit imperatorum Romanorum. Multum cibi comedonem delectat. Reginæ filia est pulcherrima. Agricola boves pigerrimi sunt. Pastor minimos agnorum non tondit.

Translate into Latin.

The great whirlwinds will dash in pieces very many of the ships. The poet's daughter is the most beautiful of all the girls. The greatest city in Italy is Rome. The soldiers will bring much corn into the city. The commander will remain in the camp the whole winter. The consul's soldiers demanded gold from the citizens. The citizens gave (to) the consul's soldiers more (of) wounds than (of) gold. The general called together the greatest of the chiefs. Cæsar was a greater general than Crassus.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 74. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive :

Citerior, citimus, *nearer*.

Deterior, deterrimus, *worse*.

Interior, intimus, *inner*.

Ocior, ocissimus, *swifter*.

Prior, primus, *former*.

Propter, proximus, *nearer*.

Ulterior, ultimus, *further*.

2. Eight want the terminational comparative :

Consultus, consultissimus, *skillful*.Inlutus, inclutissimus, *renowned*.Invictus, invictissimus, *invincible*.Invitus, invitissimus, *unwilling*.Meritus, meritissimus, (very rare),
deserving.Par, parissimus, (very
rare), *equal*.Persuasus, persuasissimus (neuter) *persuaded*.Sacer, sacerrimus, *sacred*.

3. The following want the terminational superlative :

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young*.Agrestis, agrestior, *rustic*.Alacer, alacrior, *active*.Ater, atrior, *black*.Cæcus, cæcior, *blind*.Deses, desidior, *inactive*.Diuturnus, diuturnior, *lasting*.Infinitus, infinitior, *unlimited*.Ingens, ingentior, *great*.Jeiunus, jejuniior, *fasting*.Juvenis, juniior, *young*.Licens, licentior, *unrestrained*.Longinquus, longinquier, *distant*.Opimus, opimior, *rich*.Proclivis, proclivior, *sloping*.Pronus, pronior, *bending down*.Protervus, protervior, *violent*.Propinquus, propinquier, *near*.Salutaris, salutarior, *salutary*.Satis, *sufficient*; satius, *preferable*.Satur, saturior, *full*.Senex, senior, *old*.Silvestris, silvestrior, *woody*.Sinister, sinisterior, *left*.Supinus, supinior, *lying on the back*.Surdus, surdior, *deaf*.Teres, teretior, *round*.

Rem. 1. The superlative of *juvenis* and *adolescens* is applied by *minimus natu*, youngest; and that of *senex* by *maximus natu*, oldest. The comparatives of *minor natu* and *major natu* sometimes also occur.

4. Many adjectives form the comparative and superlative by prefixing *magis*, more, and *maxime*, most; as, *pius*, *magis pius*, *maxime pius*; pious, more pious, most pious. This is especially the case with adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus*, *orus*, *tus*, and *us* with a vowel before it.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 75. Verbs of the third conjugation have *ere* (short) in the infinitive present; those of the fourth conjugation, *ire*.

2. INDICATIVE ENDINGS; THIRD CONJUGATION.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Persons.</i>			<i>Persons.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present,	-o,	-is,	-it,	-i-mus,	-i-tis,	-unt.
Imperfect,	-e-bam,	-e-bas,	-e-bat,	-e-ba-mus,	-e-ba-tis,	-e-bant
Future,	-am,	-es,	-et,	-e-mus,	-e-tis,	-ent.

3. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	SINGULAR.		
	<i>Persons.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.
Present,	-io,	-is,	-it,
Imperfect,	-i-e-bam,	-i-e-bas,	-i-e-bat,
Future,	-i-am,	-i-es,	-i-et,

	PLURAL.		
	<i>Persons.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.
Present,	-i-mus,	-i-tis,	-i-unt.
Imperfect,	-i-e-bamus,	-i-e-ba-tis,	-i-e-bant.
Future,	-i-e-mus,	-i-e-tis,	-i-ent.

4. By adding these endings to the stems *reg-*, *rule*, and *aud-*, *hear*, we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INDICATIVE MOOD; THIRD CONJUGATION.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
	<i>I rule.</i>	<i>I was ruling.</i>	<i>I shall or will rule.</i>
Sing.	<i>re go,</i> <i>re gis,</i> <i>re git;</i>	S. <i>re ge bam,</i> <i>re ge bas,</i> <i>re ge bat;</i>	S. <i>re gam,</i> <i>re ges,</i> <i>re get;</i>
Plur.	<i>reg i mus,</i> <i>reg i tis,</i> <i>re gunt,</i>	P. <i>reg e ba mus,</i> <i>reg e ba tis,</i> <i>re ge bant.</i>	P. <i>re ge mus,</i> <i>re ge tis,</i> <i>re gent.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD; FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
<i>I hear.</i>	<i>I was hearing.</i>	<i>I shall or will hear.</i>
S. <i>au di o,</i> <i>au di s,</i> <i>au di t;</i>	S. <i>au di e bam,</i> <i>au di e bas,</i> <i>au di e bat;</i>	S. <i>au di am,</i> <i>au di es,</i> <i>au di et;</i>
P. <i>au di mus,</i> <i>au di tis,</i> <i>au di unt.</i>	P. <i>au di e ba mus,</i> <i>au di e ba tīs,</i> <i>au di e bant.</i>	P. <i>au di e mus,</i> <i>au di e tis,</i> <i>au di ent.</i>

5. The endings of the perfect tenses are the same in all conjugations. The perfect-stem is variously formed in the third conjugation; in the fourth it is formed by adding *-iv* to the present-stem; as, *aud-io*, I am hearing; *aud-i-vi*, I have heard. See § 47.

6. The supine-stem is generally formed, in the third conjugation by adding *t* to the present-stem; in the fourth, by adding *-it*; as, *duc-ere*, *duct-um*; *aud-ire*, *aud-it-um*.

§ 76.

EXERCISE 33.

Vocabulary.

Reg-ere, (*rex, rect-*) *to rule.*
Duc-ere, (*dux-, duct-*) *to lead.*
E-duc-ere, (*edux-, educt-*) *to lead out.*
Re-duc-ere, (*redux-, reduct-*) *to lead back.*
Vert-ere, (*vert-, vers-*) *to turn.*
Mun-ire, *to fortify.*
Pun-ire, *to punish.*
Sc-ire, *to know.*
Vallum, *i*, *rampart.*

Castellum, *i*, *tower.*
Fur, *fur-is*, (§39, Rem. 2,) *thief.*
Finis, *is*, (§33, Rem. 6, Ex. 2,) *boundary,*
end.
Vigilia, *æ*, *watch.*
Tertius, *a*, *uni*, (§33, 1, L,) *third.*
De, (*prep. with abl.*) *about, concerning;*
of time, at, after; *de tertia vigilia*, *at,*
or after the third watch.
Tergum, *i*, *back.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Deus omnia regit. Imperator magnus civitates multas rexit. Consul annos multos (§66, 2,) provinciam rexerat. Consul is frater exercitus reipublicæ ducet. Princeps ferox plebem omnem ad bellum ducebat. Cæsar de tertia vigilia exercitum e castris eduxit. Marius nostros ad victoriam duxerat. Hostes terga vertere. Fures latronesque vultum

regis timent. Imperator castra vallo fossaque munivit. Princeps prudens omnia Helvetiorum oppida muniet. Marius consul exercitum ad urbem reduxit. Principes Thracum castella multa munient. Rex fures latronesque puniebat. Dominus pigros servos punit. Davus nihil scit de legibus reipublicæ.

Translate into Latin.

The centurion has led back many of the brave soldiers. All the horsemen of the enemy are turning their backs. The boy rules his horse with the bridle. Our men knew nothing about the journey of the enemy. Cæsar was leading the whole army through the boundaries of the Æduans. The consul will lead out the army from the town after the third watch. The great king will punish many thieves and robbers. The prudent general had fortified his camp with a rampart and ditch. One of the consuls has led the Romans to victory.

PRONOUNS.

§77. 1. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns :

Ego, <i>I.</i>	Hic, <i>this, the latter.</i>	Suus, <i>his, hers, its, etc.</i>
Tu, <i>thou.</i>	Is, <i>that or he.</i>	Cujus? <i>whose?</i>
Sui, <i>of himself, etc.</i>	Quis? <i>who?</i>	Noster, <i>our.</i>
Ille, <i>that, the former.</i>	Qui, <i>who.</i>	Vester, <i>your.</i>
Ipse, <i>himself.</i>	Meus, <i>my.</i>	Nostras, <i>of our country.</i>
Iste, <i>that, that of yours</i>	Tuus, <i>thy.</i>	Cujas? <i>of what country?</i>

3. Of these *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*, are called *substantive*, because they are used as nouns; and *personal*, because *ego*, always denotes the *speaker*; *tu*, the person *spoken to*; and *sui*, the person *spoken of*.

SUBSTANTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 78. The substantive personal pronouns are thus declined :

Singular.

N.	e-go, I.	tu, thou.	
G.	me-i, of me.	tu-i, of thee.	{ su-i, of himself, herself, itself.
D.	mi-hi, to me.	tib-i, to thee.	sib-i, to himself, &c.
Ac.	me, me.	te, thee.	se, himself, &c.
V.	_____	tu, O thou.	_____
Ab.	me, with me.	te, with thee.	se, with himself, &c.

Plural.

N.	nos, we.	vos, ye or you.	_____
G.	{ nos-trum } of us.	vos-trum or ves-tri, } of you.	su-i, of themselves.
D.	no-bis, to us.	vo-bis, to you.	sib-i, to themselves.
Ac.	nos, us.	vos, you.	se, themselves.
V.	_____	vos, O ye or you.	_____
Ab.	no-bis, with us.	vo-bis, with you.	se, with themselves.

Rem. 1. The nominatives *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, are expressed with the verb only for the sake of emphasis or contrast; as, *ego equito*, *tu ambulas*; *I am riding*, *you are walking*; *nos vocabamus*, *respondistis* *vos*; *we were calling*, *ye answered*.

Rem. 2. The syllable *met* is annexed to all the forms of the personal pronouns, except *tu*, *nostrum* and *vestrum*, for emphasis; *sese* is frequently used for *se*, being more emphatic; also *tute*; and *tute-met* for *tu*.

Rem. 3. The pronoun *sui* is also called *reflexive*, because it refers to the subject of the sentence; as, *puer se laudat*, the boy praises himself.

EXERCISE 34.

§ 79. 1. *Rule of Syntax.* If the subject consist of more than one, the verb is plural. If the nominatives be of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as, *ego*

et tu (=nos) valemus, I and you are well; *tu et Cicero (=vos) valetis*, you and Cicero are well.

2. *Rule of Position.* The preposition *cum* is always put after the ablative of the substantive personal pronouns; as, *mecum*, with me.

3. *Rule of Position.* The substantive personal pronouns, when connected by conjunctions to other words, stand first; as, *tu et rex*, you and the king.

Ego always precedes; as, *ego et rex*, the king and I; *ego et tu*, you and I.

4. *Rule of Position.* Contrasted words are put as near together, or as far apart as possible. *Nos equitamus, ambulatis vos*; or, *equitamus nos, vos ambulatis*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Nos equitabimus, ambulatis vos. In urbe magnam multitudinem hominum videbis. *Ego et pater* in regis horto cœnabimus. *Tu et Lucius nobiscum* manebitis. *Ego et Cicero pueris* libros dabamus. *Rex Thracum tibi* multum auri dabit. *Reginæ nuncius mihi* viam monstrabit. *Tu et Tullias mecum* ambulabatis. *Ancilla sibi* medicinam paraverat. *Imperator fortis* multos captivos secum ducet. *Consul mercatores omnes* ad se convocaverat. *Poetæ carmina* audiemus. *Sapiens sese* non laudat. *Ego et tu apud Tullium* cœnabamus. *Improbi sese* timent. *Puer bonus in urbem* nos ducet. *Davus, Catonis servus, sese* cultro vulneravit.

Translate into Latin.

In a great city we see many men. (My) father and I sustained the attack of the enemy many hours (§ 66. 2.) In a short time Lucius and I will have given books to all

the boys. I rode, you* walked. You and Tully will remain many days with us. The general has given (to) one of the soldiers much silver and gold. Wise men do not praise themselves. We shall hear the songs of the great poet. We have punished all the thieves in the province. I have held the fierce bull by the horns. The wicked king does not rule himself. Ye have walked five thousand paces (§ 66. 2.)

ADJECTIVE-PERSONAL, OR POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 80. From the substantive pronouns are derived the *adjective-personal*, or *possessive* pronouns, so called, because they are *adjectives*, and denote possession. They are:

From <i>mei</i> ,	<i>meus, mea, meum, my, mine.</i> (Voc. masc., mi. rarely <i>mous</i> :) like <i>bonus</i> .
From <i>tui</i> ,	<i>tuus, tua, tuum, thy, thine, your, (like bonus.)</i>
From <i>sui</i> ,	<i>suus, sua, suum, his, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.</i>
From <i>nostri</i> ,	<i>noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours, (like pulcher.</i>
From <i>vestri</i> ,	<i>vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours, (like pulcher.)</i>

Rem. 1. The emphatic suffixes *met* and *pte*, are sometimes added to the possessive pronouns, especially in the ablative singular; as, *meamet manu*, with my own hand.

Rem. 2. *Suus*, like *sui*, is always reflexive, referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands.

EXERCISE 35.

§ 81. 1. Questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, are asked in Latin by means of the interrogative particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num*.

2. (*a.*) The enclitic *ne* asks for information, and is pla-

* You will be translated by *tu* when it refers to one; by *vos* when it means more than one.

ced after the verb, usually standing with it at the beginning of the sentence.

Scribit-ne Caius? Is Caius writing?

Pater tuus tibi equum dedit-ne? Has your father given you a horse?

(b.) *Nē* stands with any specially emphatic word at the beginning of the sentence.

Tu-ne scribis? Are you writing?

3. *Num* stands at the beginning of the sentence, and expects the answer *no*.

Num tu patrem tuum necavisti? Have you murdered your own father?

4. *Nonne* (placed at, or near the beginning of the sentence,) expects the answer *yes*.

Nonne epistolam scripsisti? Have you not written the letter?

Vocabulary.

Scrib-ere, (scrips-, script-,) to write.	Cubiculum, i, bed-chamber.
Con-scrib-ere, (conscrips-, conscript-,) to levy, to enroll.	Salus, salut-is, safety.
Relinqu-ere, (relinqui, relictum,) to leave.	Tuæ salut-is causa, for the sake of your own safety, (causa, always put last.)
Ven-ire, (ven-, vent-,) to come	Cantus, us, ringing.
Dorm-ire, to sleep.	Vox, voc-is, voice.

Translate into English and analyze.

Audis-ne vocem patris mei? Nonne magnitudo operis consulem sapientem tardabit? Nonne filii imperatoris in castris dormiebant? Num servus tuus totam noctem in silva mansit? Vidisti-ne magnum ovium gregem in agro meo? Tu-ne regem nostrum vidisti. Nostri (§ 60, Rem.) totum diem impetum hostium sustinuerant. Vestræ salutis causa vos monui. Tuæ salutis causa in urbem te duxi. Audies-ne cantum avium? Num consul tres legiones parvo in vico conscripsit? Pulchra puella manu sua epistolam

scribet. Veniet-ne in urbem imperator magnus cum omnibus copiis? Conscripsit-ne Cæsar legiones duas in provincia? Mater improba suam filiam veneno necavit. Marius, dux Romanus, omnes copias suas ex hibernis eduxerat.

Translate into Latin.

(*My, thy, his, her, their, our, &c.,* will not be translated into Latin when the relation is obvious.)

My father advised the poet's daughter. Will not the beautiful queen write the whole letter with her own hand? Will a kind father murder his own children? Will a wise king break the laws of the state? Shall we sup with (*apud*) Tully's son-in-law? Will not the brave general lead the forces of the republic to victory? Has your father seen my slave in his garden? Were your slaves carrying heavy burdens through the city? Our kind brother will advise us for the sake of our own safety. The shepherd will shear all his own sheep. Will not the good shepherd defend all his own sheep from dogs and wolves. Thou shalt sleep in the little bed-chamber. Will a brave general leave his army in the boundaries of the enemy? Hast thou heard the singing of the birds in the forest? We shall hear the voice of the general.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 82. 1. Demonstratives are so called, because they are used to *point out* things; as, *ille puer, that boy; hæc silva, this forest.*

2. They are *is, hic, iste, ille,* and their compounds, and are thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>il le,</i>	<i>il la,</i>	<i>il lud,</i>	<i>il li,</i>	<i>il læ,</i>	<i>il la,</i>
G. <i>il li us,</i>	<i>il li us,</i>	<i>il li us,</i>	<i>il lo rum,</i>	<i>il la rum,</i>	<i>il lo rum,</i>
D. <i>il li,</i>	<i>il li,</i>	<i>il li,</i>	<i>il lis,</i>	<i>il lis,</i>	<i>il lis,</i>
Ac. <i>il lum,</i>	<i>il lam,</i>	<i>il lud,</i>	<i>il los,</i>	<i>il las,</i>	<i>il la,</i>
V. <i>il le,</i>	<i>il la,</i>	<i>il lud,</i>	<i>il li,</i>	<i>il læ,</i>	<i>il la,</i>
Ab. <i>il lo,</i>	<i>il la,</i>	<i>il lo.</i>	<i>il lis,</i>	<i>il lis,</i>	<i>il lis.</i>

Iste is declined like *ille*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>hic,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hoc,</i>	<i>hi,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
G. <i>hu-jus,</i>	<i>hu-jus,</i>	<i>hu-jus,</i>	<i>ho rum,</i>	<i>ha-rum,</i>	<i>ha-rum,</i>
D. <i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>
Ac. <i>hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hoc,</i>	<i>hos,</i>	<i>has.</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
V. <i>hic,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hoc,</i>	<i>hi,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
Ab. <i>hoc,</i>	<i>hac,</i>	<i>hoc.</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his.</i>

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>is,</i>	<i>e-a,</i>	<i>id,</i>	<i>i-i,</i>	<i>e-æ,</i>	<i>e-a,</i>
G. <i>e-jus,</i>	<i>e-jus,</i>	<i>e-jus,</i>	<i>e-o-rum,</i>	<i>e-a-rum,</i>	<i>e-o-rum,</i>
D. <i>e-i,</i>	<i>e-i,</i>	<i>e i,</i>	<i>i-is or e-is,</i>	<i>i-is or e-is,</i>	<i>i-is or e-is,</i>
Ac. <i>e-um,</i>	<i>e-am,</i>	<i>id,</i>	<i>e-os,</i>	<i>e-as,</i>	<i>e-a,</i>
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. <i>e-o,</i>	<i>e-a,</i>	<i>e-o.</i>	<i>i-is or e-is,</i>	<i>i-is or e-is,</i>	<i>i-is or e-is.</i>

3. *Istic*, (sometimes written *isthic*), and *illic* are compounded of *iste hic*, and *ille hic*, and are more emphatic than *iste* and *ille*.

N. <i>is tic,</i>	<i>is tæc,</i>	<i>is toc, or is tuc,</i>	N. — <i>is tæc,</i> —
Ac. <i>is tunc,</i>	<i>is tanc,</i>	<i>is toc, or is tuc,</i>	Ac. — — <i>is tæc,</i>
Ab. <i>is toc,</i>	<i>is tæc,</i>	<i>is toc.</i>	

Illic is declined in the same manner.

4. The suffix *dem* is annexed to *is*, forming *idem*, "the same," which is thus declined :

Singular.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>i dem,</i>	<i>e a dem,</i>	<i>i dem,</i>
G.	<i>e jus dem,</i>	<i>e jus dem,</i>	<i>e jus dem,</i>
D.	<i>e i dem,</i>	<i>e i dem,</i>	<i>e i dem,</i>
Ac.	<i>e un dem,</i>	<i>e an dem,</i>	<i>i dem.</i>
V.	_____	_____	_____
Ab.	<i>e o dem,</i>	<i>e a dem,</i>	<i>e o dem.</i>

Plural.

N.	<i>i i dem,</i>	<i>e æ dem,</i>	<i>e a dem,</i>
G.	<i>e o run dem,</i>	<i>e a run dem,</i>	<i>e o run dem.</i>
D.	<i>e is dem, or i is-</i> <i>dem,</i>	<i>e is dem, or i is dem,</i>	<i>e is dem, or i is-</i> <i>dem,</i>
Ac.	<i>e os dem,</i>	<i>e as dem,</i>	<i>e a dem,</i>
V.	_____	_____	_____
Ab.	<i>e is dem or i is dem,</i>	<i>e is dem or i is dem</i>	<i>e is dem or i is-</i> <i>is dem.</i>

EXERCISE 36.—*Is*, and *Idem*.

§83. 1. *Is*, that, is very often used as a substantive-personal pronoun, (*he, she, it, they, them, &c.,*) of the same gender with the noun for which it stands; as, *Cicero multos libros scripsit; eos (= libros) libenter lego; Cicero has written many books; I read them (i. e. the books,) with pleasure.*

2. (a.) *His, her, its, their*, will be translated by *suus* when they refer to the subject; (b.) if they refer to any other word in the sentence, they will be translated by the genitive of the demonstrative, *is, ea, id*.

- (a.) *Rex filium suum ad se vocat;* *The king calls his (own) son to him.*
 (b.) *Rex agricolam et filium ejus ad se vocat;* *The king calls the farmer and his (the farmer's) son to him.*

Vocabulary.

Scriptor, -or-is, *writer*.
 Præstans, -ant-is, *excellent, distinguished*.
 O vidias, *i, Ovid*.
 Virgilius, *i, Virgil*.
 Plato, -on-is, *Plato*.

Contendere, (contend, content-) *to strive, fight*.
 Ger-ere, [gess, gest-] *to carry on, to wage*.
 Dumnorix, -ig-is, *Dumnorix*.
 Libenter, (adv.) *gladly, with pleasure*.

Translate into English and analyze.

• Cæsar hostes fugavit, et ab iis obsides multos postulavit. Romani cum Gallis contenderunt, atque in eorum finibus bellum gesserunt. Rex mercatores omnes ad se convocavit, atque iis multum auri (§73) dedit. Consul's filia pulcherrima est; eam in urbe vidi. Dumnorix eo (*that*) tempore (§66, 1,) in Germania bellum gerebat. In eodem oppido multi milites fuerunt. Tullius eundem servum ad se vocabit. Eodem die imperator clarus ad castra venit. Ovidius et Virgilius sunt poetæ clarissimi; opera eorum libenter legimus. Cæsar Labienum et ejus filium in Gallia reliquerat. Poetæ opera sua laudant. Poeta clarus imperatorem amat, et ejus virtutem laudabit. Pater tuus filiam suam amat, et ejus liberis multum argenti (§73) dabit. In ea provincia sunt quatuor legiones.

Translate into Latin.

Cicero is a very distinguished orator; we shall hear him with pleasure. Plato is an excellent writer; have you read all his works? Will the Queen see her son and his daughter in our city? The King will not leave Tully and his (Tully's) son in the city. A wise man does not carry all his gold with him. In one day Cæsar led the whole army through the boundaries of the Helvetians to lake Lemanus; on the same day he routed very great forces of the enemy. At that time the rains had swollen all the rivers, and were keeping (*continere*) the Germans in their own boundaries. The King loved his faithful slave, and gave him a golden necklace. Have you seen the centurion's beautiful daughter? I saw her in the King's grove. Art thou a famous general.

EXERCISE 37.—*Hic, Iste, Ille.*

§84. 1. *HIC, HÆC, HOC, this*, points out a thing near the speaker in place or time, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the *first person*. As, *hic liber*, this book, (near me;) *hoc die*, on this day.

2. *ISTE, ISTA, ISTUD, this, that*, points out a thing near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the *second person*. As, *iste liber*, that book, (of yours.) It is often used to express contempt; as, *iste homo*, that fellow.

3. *ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD, that*, points out a thing remote from the speaker, and is often called the demonstrative of the *third person*. As, *ille liber*, that book (yonder.)

Translate into English and analyze.

Hic servus dominum amat. Hæc epistola sororem meam delectabit. Hoc bellum civile gravissimum et atrocissimum est. Hic puer bonus est, ille improbus (supply est.) Hic miles, omnium est fortissimus. Iste tuus equus pulchrum animal est. Ista tua oratio rempublicam servavit. Iste-nos puniet? Ille bos magna cornua habet. Illos milites in castra ducemus. Equites omnes ad illud oppidum festinant. Hic pastor bonus gregem servabit.

Translate into English.

This good master gives food to all his slaves. That dove of yours will fly through the thick woods. Those dogs of yours will frighten all the boys in the village. That fierce lion has torn in pieces many sheep and cows. This excellent orator will delight the common people with his speech. That maid-servant of yours will prepare medicine for the

queen and her (the queen's daughters.) Will you give that beautiful horse to my father? Has the king punished all the thieves and robbers in this city? These horsemen will urge on their horses with spurs.

INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

§85. The pronoun *IPSE*, *IPSA*, *IPSUM*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, is called *intensive*, because it makes the word to which it is added more emphatic. As,

- | | | |
|------|----------------------------|---|
| (a.) | Regem <i>ipsum</i> vidi; | <i>I have seen the king himself.</i> |
| (b.) | Ego me <i>ipse</i> laudo; | <i>I myself (and not another,) praise myself.</i> |
| (c.) | Ego me <i>ipsum</i> laudo; | <i>I praise myself, (and not another.)</i> |

Singular.

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>ip se,</i>	<i>ip sa,</i>	<i>ip sum,</i>	<i>ip si,</i>	<i>ip sæ,</i>	<i>ip sa,</i>
G.	<i>ip si us,</i>	<i>ip si us,</i>	<i>ip si us,</i>	<i>ip so rum,</i>	<i>ip sa rum,</i>	<i>ip so rum,</i>
D.	<i>ip si,</i>	<i>ip si,</i>	<i>ip si,</i>	<i>ip sis,</i>	<i>ip sis,</i>	<i>ip sis,</i>
Ac.	<i>ip sum,</i>	<i>ip sam,</i>	<i>ip sum,</i>	<i>ip sos,</i>	<i>ip sas,</i>	<i>ip sa,</i>
V.	<i>ip se,</i>	<i>ip sa,</i>	<i>ip sum,</i>	<i>ip si,</i>	<i>ip sæ,</i>	<i>ip sa,</i>
Ab.	<i>ip so,</i>	<i>ip sa,</i>	<i>ip so.</i>	<i>ip sis,</i>	<i>ip sis,</i>	<i>ip sis.</i>

EXERCISE 38.

§ 86. 1. *Rule of Syntax.* The infinitive mood is often used as a neuter noun in the nominative or accusative, and may be the subject of a verb; as, *Gratum est tecum ambulare*, It is pleasant to walk with you.

2. *Rule of Syntax.* The infinitive is used as a complement (filling up,) with certain verbs and adjectives expressing an incomplete idea. *Complementary Infinitive.*

Parat bellum gerere. He is preparing to wage war.

Vocabulary.

Prædic-are, <i>to tell, to boast</i>	Vinc-ire, (vinx-, vinct-) <i>to bind.</i>
Instru-ere, (instrux-, instruct-) <i>to draw up.</i>	Vinculum, i, <i>chain.</i>
Constitu-ere, [constitu-, constitut-] <i>to determine.</i>	Vinc-ere, [vic-, vict-] <i>to conquer.</i>
De se ipso, <i>about one's self.</i>	Ferreus, a, um, <i>of iron, iron.</i>
Inter, [prep. with acc.,] <i>between, among.</i>	Iracundia, æ, <i>hasty temper.</i>
Inter se, <i>among themselves, with one another.</i>	Orbis [333] terrarum, <i>the world, (the circle of the countries.)</i>
Sua, [pl. neut.,] <i>his [own] things, his [own] property.</i>	Alexander, -dri, <i>Alexander.</i>
Ascend-ere, [ascend-, ascens-] <i>to ascend.</i>	Macedonia, æ, <i>Macedonia.</i>
	Semper, (adv.) <i>always.</i>
	Facinus, facinor-is, <i>deed, crime.</i>

Translate into English and analyze.

Ego ipse totam noctem vigilavi. Rex ipse exercitum triplici acie instruxerat. Nonne regina ipsa in hac domo dormivit? Decima ipsa legio magnitudinem periculi timebat. Tu-ne te ipse laudabis? Me ipsum non laudabo. Poeta se ipse laudabat. Turpe est de se ipso prædicare. Pater ipse et filius suus de agri finibus contendunt. Alexander magnus, rex Macedoniae, orbem terrarum vincere paraverat. Alexander se ipsum non rexit. Imperator magnus suam iracundiam non regit. Difficillimum (§66, §67, 3,) est montem altum ascendere. Facinus est civem Romanum vincere. Sapiens semper se ipse regit. Helvetii sua omnia portabant.

Translate into Latin.

Our king has determined to conquer the whole world. Your king is a boy. The common people have bound our king with chains. These soldiers are always boasting about themselves. It is not very difficult to ascend a hill. Nothing is more difficult than to rule a hasty temper. Have you read the works of Cicero, the distinguished orator? Will a father and a son contend with one another about an eagle's wing? They will not contend. Am I myself praising myself? Has not this fellow (§83, 2,) always

praised himself? It is a great crime to kill (one's) father. The wicked judge is preparing to bind Roman citizens. The common people will bind the judge himself. The greatness of this work will hinder Caesar himself. The general has determined to put three legions into winter quarters.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§87. 1. The pronoun *qui, quæ, quod*, (*who, which*), is called *relative*, because it refers to some word or phrase going before, called the *antecedent*.

Singular.

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	qui,	quæ,	quod,	qui	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cu jus,	cu jus,	cu jus,	quo rum	qua rum,	quo rum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	qui bus,	qui bus,	qui bus,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
A.	quo,	qua,	quo	qui bus,	qui bus,	qui bus.

REM. *Qui* is sometimes used in the ablative in all genders.

2. From *qui* are derived *quicumque* or *quicunque* and *quisquis*, *whoever, whosoever*. *Quicumque* is declined like *qui*; *quisquis* is thus declined:

N.	quis quis,	quis quis,	quid quid,	N.	qui qui,
Ac.	quem quem,	_____	quid-quid,	D.	qui bus qui bus.
Ab.	quo quo,	qua qua,	quo quo.		

EXERCISE 39.

1. Sentences are either principal or dependent. A principal sentence makes complete sense when standing alone; a dependent sentence does not make complete sense alone, but must be connected with another sentence.

2. A sentence introduced by a relative pronoun is called a *dependent relative sentence*.

3. *Rule of Syntax.* The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case depends upon the construction of the relative sentence.

As,

Ego qui scribo,

Vos qui scribitis,

Puella quam vidi,

I who write.

You who write.

The girl whom I saw.

(Here *quam* is sing., fem., 3rd person, because *puella* is the same; but accusative, because it is the object of the transitive verb *vidi*.)

4. *Rule of Position.* The preposition *cum* is annexed to the ablative plural of the relative *qui*, and sometimes also to the ablative singular; as, *quibuscum*.

5. *Rule of Position.* The relative generally stands at the beginning of the relative sentence, after the antecedent, and as near the latter as possible; but for the sake of emphasis the relative sentence is often placed first.

6. In general expressions the forms of *is* are often used merely as the antecedent of a relative clause; as, *Is stultus est qui de se ipso prædicat*. He is foolish who boasts of himself. *Is* is emphatic when it stands at the beginning of the principal sentence.

7. When the antecedent is *indefinite*, it is often omitted altogether; as, *Qui tertiam partem incolunt Galli appellantur*. (Those) who inhabit the third part are called Gauls. (Compare the English, "Who steal my purse, steals trash," i. e. *any one who*, &c.)

Vocabulary.

Incol-ere, [incolu-, incult-] to inhabit.

Divid-ere, [divis-, divis-] to separate, to divide.

Continenter, [adv.] continually.

Trans, [prep. with acc.,] across.

Translate into English and analyze.

Omnis Galliæ sunt partes tres, quarum unam incolunt

Belgæ. Trans Rhenum incolunt Germani, quibuscum Belgæ continentur bellum gerunt. Flumen Rhenus, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit, latissimus est atque altissimus. Jura, qui una ex parte, Helvetios continet, mons est altissimus. Cæsar legiones duas, quæ in Gallia hiemabant, ex hibernis eduxit. Puellæ pulchræ, quas in horto vidisti, filiæ sunt Ciceronis. Recentes imbres, qui flumina omnia auxerunt, opus nostrum tardabunt. Puer cui magister librum dedit, optimus est puerorum. Agricola cujus canis ancillam terruit, in urbem venit. Helvetii eos qui leges reipublicæ violant igni cremant. Qui sua omnia secum portat non sapiens est. Qui sese non regit, est-ne is vir magnus?

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar will hasten into the province with three legions which he has levied in Gaul. The centurion has divided his field into three parts, one of which he will give to his son. Have you showed to your father the letter which the queen wrote with her own hand? The general had placed in winter-quarters the legions which he had levied in the province. The great river which we saw is the Rhine. Will not the general slay the robber who lives in the forest? Is not he (*is*) a fool who holds (*tenere*) a fierce bull by the horns? The fields through which we were walking are very fertile. (He) who boasts about himself is a fool. (He) who conquers himself is a brave man.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 88. 1. Interrogative pronouns are used in asking questions. They are

Quis	} Who? What?	Qui	} Which? What?
Quisnam		Quinam	

Rem. 1. *Qui* and *quinam* are declined like the relative *qui*. They are almost always adjectives.

Rem. 2. *Quis* and *quisnam* are usually substantives, but sometimes adjectives. *Quid* is always a substantive. *Quisnam* is stronger than *quis*;—*Who then? Who, pray?*

2. *Quis* is thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>quis,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>	<i>quod or quid,</i>	<i>qui,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>
G. <i>cu jus,</i>	<i>cu jus,</i>	<i>cu jus,</i>	<i>quo rum,</i>	<i>qua rum,</i>	<i>quo rum,</i>
D. <i>cui,</i>	<i>cui,</i>	<i>cui,</i>	<i>qui bus,</i>	<i>qui bus,</i>	<i>qui bus,</i>
Ac. <i>quem,</i>	<i>quam,</i>	<i>quid,</i>	<i>quos,</i>	<i>quas,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>
V. <u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
Ab. <i>quo,</i>	<i>qua,</i>	<i>quô.</i>	<i>qui bus,</i>	<i>quæ bus,</i>	<i>qui bus,</i>

3. The genitive *cujus, whose?* is sometimes used as an adjective, agreeing with the noun which it limits in gender, number and case; as, *Cujum pecus est hoc? Whose flock is this? It is thus declined.*

N. <i>cu jus,</i>	<i>cu ja,</i>	<i>cu jum,</i>	N. <i>cu jæ,</i>
Ac. <i>cu jum,</i>	<i>cu jam,</i>	<u> </u>	Ac. <i>cu jas.</i>
Ab. <u> </u>	<i>cu ja.</i>	<u> </u>	

EXERCISE 40.

Translate into English and analyze.

Quis tecum in horto ambulabat? Quæ regio est Gallia (§ 70, 2,) feracior? Qui consul est Cicerone prudentior? Quem hominem vidisti quam Balbum (§ 70, 1,) turpiorem? Qua in terra est poeta Virgilio præstantior? Cuius ancilla est hæc? Reginæ. Qui puer calcem Davi lapide vulneravit? Quid argenti (§ 73) apud te habes? Quinam rex tibi aurum dabit, Dave? Quisnam te vocavit, Tulli? (§ 24, Rem. 2.). Qui pastor prudens oves hienæ tondebit? Cuius canis bovem meum momordit? Qua in civitate imperator legiones in hibernis collocabit?

Translate into Latin.

Who, pray, will show (to) us the way through the King's forest? What enemy will sustain the attack of our war-like soldiers? What is baser than a lie? Who gave (to) you that (§ 83, 2) beautiful horse of yours? What citizens were with (*apud*) Cicero? Who, pray, has called together all these merchants? Which of you slept in the little bed-chamber? What general will leave his army in the enemy's country (*finis*)? Who art thou? Art thou the consul's son-in-law? Is the king preparing, according to custom, to wage war with the nearest states?

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 89. Indefinite pronouns do not refer to any particular thing. They are

Aliquis, some one, some.

Quidam, a certain one, pl. *some*.

Quivis,
Quilibet, } any (where all are included,) any one you please.

Quisquam, any one, where all are excluded; almost always a substantive, and used in negative sentences.

Quispiam, any one, some one; used in affirmative sentences.

Quis, *qui*, any one, some one, especially after *si*, *ne*; and the interrogative prefixes *num-* and *ec-*, forming *numquis* and *ecquis*.

Quisque, each one, every one.

Unusquisque, each one, (stronger than *quisque*.)

Rem. 1. All these pronouns have *quod* or *quid* in the neuter; the *quod* forms are adjectives; the *quid* forms, nouns.

Rem. 2. The indefinite *quis* or *qui* has *qua* in the nominative singular feminine, and nom., and acc. pl. neut. So also *aliquis*.

Rem. 3. *Quidam*, *quilibet* and *quivis* are declined like

the relative *qui*; and *quisque*, *quispiam* and *quisquam* like the interrogative *quis*. But *quisquam* wants the feminine, except *quam-quam*, (acc. sing. fem.)

Note. In pronouns *m* is changed into *n* before *d*. As, *quendam*, for *quemdam*; *quorundum* for *quorumdam*.

Rem. 4. *Unusquisque* is used only in the singular, and both *unus* and *quisque* are declined. *Unusquisque*, *unaxque*, *unumquodque* or *quidque*; gen. *uniuscujusque*; &c.

EXERCISE 41.

§ 90. 1. The *partitive genitive* (§ 58, 3) is used with many pronouns; as, *Quivis militum*, any one you please of the soldiers; *aliquid novi*, some news, (*novi* is gen. sing. neut. of *novus*, *a*, *um*, used as a noun.)

2. After *quidam*, *ex* with the ablative is generally used instead of the gen.; as, *Quidam ex militibus*, a certain one of the soldiers.

Vocabulary.

Mitt-ere, (mis-, miss-) to send.

Perven-ire, (perven-, pervent-) to come through, to arrive.

In urbem pervenire, to reach the city.

Defend-ere, (defend-, defens-) to defend.

Neque, (conjunction,) neither, nor.

Disc-e-re, (discess-, isces-) to depart.

Occid-ere, (occid-, occis-) to kill, cut down.

Occasus, is, setting.

Sol, sol-is, sun; solis occasu, (§ 66. 1.) at sunset.

Catilina, æ, Catiline.

Translate into English and analyze.

Cicero quendam Gallum ad Cæsarem misit. Aliquis solis occasu in domum tuam venit. Quidam ex militibus se suaque (§ 60, Rem.) ab hostibus defendebant. Mater benigna unicuique liberorum suorum dat cibum. Nostri copias hostium fugavere, neque quisquam omnium in oppidum pervenit. Lucius in urbe aliquid novi audiet. Rex

filiabus suis aliquam partem regni dabit. Milites Catilinæ exercitum reipublicæ non timuerant, neque quisquam ex castris discessit. Nonne quisque sese defendit? Quodvis animal cor habet.

Translate into Latin.

The faithful slaves will watch all night; nor will any one leave (*depart from*) his place. Some one has wounded one of our horsemen with a javelin? Cæsar sent a certain one of the Gallic (*Gallus*,) horsemen to Cicero's camp. The cruel chiefs will kill all the prisoners at sunset. The prudent general will move his camp at sunset. The master gave (to) each of the boys a beautiful book.

CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 91. 1. The correlative pronouns are such as answer to each other; as, *tantus*, so great, *quantus*; as, *talis*, such, *qualis*; as, *tot*, as many, *quot*, as.

2. The Correlative Pronouns are

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Indefinite.
<i>talis, such.</i>	<i>qualis, as, of what kind.</i>	<i>qualiscunque, of whatever kind.</i>
<i>tantus, so great, so much,</i>	<i>quantus, as great.</i>	<i>quantuscunque, however great.</i>
<i>*tot, so many.</i>		<i>aliquantus, somewhat great.</i>
<i>*totidem, just so many.</i>	<i>*quot, as many</i>	<i>*aliquot, some.</i>
		<i>*quotquot, however many.</i>

Rem. 1. *Qualis?* of what kind? *quantus?* how great? *quot?* how many? are also used interrogatively.

Rem. 2. Those marked thus (*) are indeclinable; the rest are declined like adjectives.

§ 92.

EXERCISE 42.

Vocabulary.

Voluptas, voluptat-is, *pleasure.*

Præmium, i, *reward.*

Timor, -or-is, *fear, panic.*

Aliquantum, agri, *a considerable piece of ground.*

Sententia, æ, *opinion.*

Opera, æ, *labor, pains.*

{ Tanta opera, *so great labor.*

{ Tantum operæ, *so much (æf) labor.* Tuntus, meaning *so great*, agrees with the noun; meaning *so much*, it is neuter and followed by the partitive genitive.

Quantus is used in the same way.

{ Qualis est dominus, talis est servus; *As is the master, so is the slave.* Or, est being omitted,

{ Qualis dominus, talis servus, *The slave is such as the master is:*

Translate into English and analyze.

Quantum voluptatis virtus præbet! Tantis timor centuriones occupavit. Quot homines, tot sententiæ. Quantus est agricolæ taurus? Quanta sunt hujus bovis cornua? Quot legiones in castris sunt? Quot homines, totidem animi. Qualis est imperator, tales sunt milites. Quanta præmia virtus habet? Quantum operæ poetæ carminibus suis dant! Rex huic servo aliquantum auri dedit.

Translate into Latin.

The burdens are as great as the slaves can carry. The Thracians will give us as many hostages as we have demanded. The consul gave the soldiers such food as they demanded. Lucius will give his daughter as much land as Caius has given to each of his twelve sons. Each of the boys will remain just as many hours in the city as the master remained. Such bread as Marius gives the soldiers will kill a dog.

VERBS.

§93. 1. A verb is a word which declares or affirms something.

2. That of which the declaration is made is called the *subject*.

3. Verbs have

(a) *Moods*, or different forms which express different kinds of affirmation; as, *amo*, I love; *amarem*, I might love.

(b) *Tenses*, or different forms to show the *time* when the thing declared takes place; as, *amo*, I love, I *am* loving; *amabam*, I *was* loving.

(c) *Voices*, or different forms which show whether the subject *acts*, (as, John *strikes*;) or is *acted upon*, (as, John *is struck*.)

(d) *Persons and Numbers*, or different forms which correspond with the person and number of the subject.

4. These various forms are distinguished from one another by certain endings; and the adding of these endings to the stem is called CONJUGATION.

5. Verbs are either *transitive* or *intransitive*.

6. A transitive verb is one which requires an object to complete the sense. As, *Poeta reginam laudat*, The poet praises the queen.

7. An intransitive verb is one which does not require an object to complete the sense. As, *Aquila volat*, The eagle flies.

MOODS.

§94. 1. There are four moods, the *indicative*, *subjunctive*, *imperative*, and *infinitive*.

2. The indicative mood declares a *fact*, or asks a question. As, *amat*, he loves; *amat-ne?* Does he love?

3. By the subjunctive mood a thing is asserted, not as a *fact*, but as *simply conceived in the mind*. As, *amarem*, I would love.

4. The imperative mood is used in *commanding*, *exhorting*, or *entreating*. As, *Huc veni*, come hither.

5. The infinitive mood expresses the action of the verb simply, without reference to any subject. As, *amare*, to love.

TENSES.

§95. There are three divisions of time, the *present*, *past*, and *future*. In each division there are two tenses; one expressing *incomplete* action; the other, *completed* action. There are therefore six tenses; three for incomplete action, viz: the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*; and three for completed action, viz: the *present-perfect*, *past-perfect*, and *future-perfect*.

Name.	Incomplete Action.	Name.	Completed Action.	Name.
PRESENT TIME.	amo, I am loving.	PRES.	amavi, I have loved.	PRES.-P.
PAST TIME.	amabam, I was loving.	IMP.	amaveram, I had loved.	PAST-P.
FUTURE TIME.	amabo, I shall love.	FUT.	amavero, I shall have loved.	FUT.-P.

I. The present tense expresses *incomplete* action in *present* time; as, *amo*, I love, I am loving.

Rem. 1. This tense also expresses an existing custom or general truth; as, *Romani signum tuba dant*, the Romans give the signal with a trumpet.

Rem. 2. The present tense is often used for a past to give greater animation to the narrative. This is called the *historical present*.

Rem. 3. This tense may also express what has existed and still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero*, for so many years I have waged war, and am still waging it; or, for so many years I have been waging war.

II The imperfect tense expresses *incomplete* action in *past* time; as, *amabam*, I was loving.

Rem. 4. This tense expresses,

- (a) A customary past action; as, *amabam*, I used to love;
- (b) What had existed and was still existing in past time; as, *tot annos bella gerebam*, for so many years I had been carrying on war;
- (c) The *beginning*, or *attempting* of a thing in past time;

(d) In letters, this tense is sometimes used (in reference to their being read,) for a present.

III. The future tense expresses *incomplete* action in future time. As, *amabo*, I shall love.

IV. The present-perfect tense expresses completed action in present time ; as, *amavi*, I have loved.

The same form of the verb is used to express an action *indefinitely* as past, without reference to its continuance or completion. This is called the *aorist-perfect*, or *indefinite-perfect*. As, *cœnavi*, I supped, (at some indefinite past time.)

V. The past-perfect tense expresses *completed* action in past time ; as, *amaveram*, I had loved.

VI. The future-perfect tense expresses completed action in future time ; as, *amavero*, I shall have loved.

VOICES.

§96. 1. There are two voices, the *active* and *passive*.

2. The active voice represents the subject as acting ; as, *amo*, I love.

3. The passive voice represents the subject as *acted upon* ; *amor*, I am loved.

Rem. 1. The same idea may be expressed both in the active and passive form ; as, *puer librū legīt*, the boy reads the book ; or *liber a puero legitur*, the book is read by the boy. The object in the active becomes the subject in the passive, and the subject in the active is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*.

Rem. 2. As intransitive verbs have no object in the active, they have no personal passive form. See § 114, 4.

Rem. 3. The passive voice frequently represents the agent as acting upon himself ; as, *feror*, I carry myself, I go. This use of the passive is common with the poets.

PERSONS AND NUMBERS.

§ 97. Verbs have three persons, the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd; and two numbers, the singular and plural. These either correspond to, or indicate, the person and number of the subject.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, SUPINES.

§ 98. 1. To the verb belong the *participle*, or *adjective verb*; and the *gerund* and *supine*, or *noun verb*.

2. Transitive verbs have two participles in the active, viz.: the *present* and *future*; as, *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love; — and two in the passive, viz.: the *perfect* and *future*; as, *amatus*, loved, having been loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

3. The *gerund* is a verbal noun of the second declension, in the genitive, dative, and accusative, (the nominative being supplied by the infinitive); as, *modus operandi*, the manner of working.

4. The *supine* is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, in the accusative and ablative; as, *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to be loved, or to love.

CONJUGATION.

§ 99. 1. There are four conjugations, distinguished from each other by the ending of the infinitive present active.

The infinitive present active of the 1st conj. ends in *a-re*.

“ “ “ “ “ “ 2nd “ “ “ *e-re*.

“ “ “ “ “ “ 3rd “ “ “ *e-re*.

“ “ “ “ “ “ 4th “ “ “ *i-re*.

Exception. *Dare*, to give, has, *are* (a short.)

2. Every verb-form consists of two parts, the *stem* and *ending*.

3. The *present-stem*, or *general-stem*, is found in every part of the verb, and may always be obtained by striking off the ending of the infinitive-present active or passive.

4. Besides this general stem, there is also a *perfect-stem*, on which the perfect tenses in the active voice are formed; and a *supine-stem*, on which the supines, the future active participle, and perfect passive participle, are formed.

5. The perfect-stem is formed for the most part

In the first conj. by adding *-av* (long) to the present-stem.

“ “ second “ “ “ *-u* “ “ “

“ “ third “ “ “ *-s* “ “ “

“ “ fourth “ “ “ *-iv* (long) “ “ “

For other modes of formation see Appendix.

6. The supine-stem is generally formed

In the first conj. by adding *-at* (long) to the present-stem.

“ “ second “ “ “ *-it* (short) “ “ “

“ “ third “ “ “ *-t* “ “ “

“ “ fourth “ “ “ *-it* (long) “ “ “

For other modes of formation see Appendix VII.

ESSE, to be.

§ 100.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.

Pres. Inf.

Perf. Indic.

Fut. Part.

Sum,

es-se,

fu-i,

fu-tu-rus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Person { 1. sum, I am,
2. es, thou art,
3. est, he is;

su mus, we are,
es tis, ye are,
sunt, they are.

Imperfect.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. e ram, <i>I was,</i> | e ra mus, <i>we were,</i> |
| 2. e ras, <i>thou wast,</i> | e ra tis, <i>ye were,</i> |
| 3. e rat, <i>he was;</i> | e rant, <i>they were.</i> |

Future. *shall, or will.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. e ro, <i>I shall be,</i> | er i mus, <i>we shall be,</i> |
| 2. e ris, <i>thou wilt be,</i> | er i tis, <i>ye will be,</i> |
| 3. e rit, <i>he will be;</i> | e runt, <i>they will be.</i> |

Present-Perfect. *have been, or was.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. fu i, <i>I have been,</i> | fu i mus, <i>we have been,</i> |
| 2. fu is ti, <i>thou hast been,</i> | fu is tis, <i>ye have been,</i> |
| 3. fu it, <i>he has been;</i> | fu e runt or re, <i>they have been.</i> |

Past-Perfect.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. fu e ram, <i>I had been,</i> | fu e ra mus, <i>we had been,</i> |
| 2. fu e ras, <i>thou hadst been,</i> | fu e ra tis, <i>ye had been,</i> |
| 3. fu e rat, <i>he had been;</i> | fu e rant, <i>they had been.</i> |

Future-Perfect. *shall, or will have.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. fu e ro, <i>I shall have been,</i> | fu er i mus, <i>we shall have been,</i> |
| 2. fu e ris, <i>thou wilt have been,</i> | fu er i tis, <i>ye will have been,</i> |
| 3. fu e rit, <i>he will have been;</i> | fu e rint, <i>they will have been.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. sim, <i>I may be,</i> | si mus, <i>we may be,</i> |
| 2. sis, <i>thou mayst be,</i> | si tis, <i>ye may be,</i> |
| 3. sit, <i>he may be;</i> | sint, <i>they may be.</i> |

Imperfect. *might, would, or should.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. es sem, <i>I would be,</i> | es se mus, <i>we would be,</i> |
| 2. es ses, <i>thou wouldst be,</i> | es se tis, <i>ye would be,</i> |
| 3. es set, <i>he would be;</i> | es sent, <i>they would be.</i> |

Perfect.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. fu e rim, <i>I may have been,</i> | fu er i mus, <i>we may have been,</i> |
| 2. fu e ris, <i>thou mayst have been,</i> | fu er i tis, <i>ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. fu e rit, <i>he may have been;</i> | fu e rint, <i>they may have.</i> |

Past-perfect. *might, would, or should have.*

1. *fu is sem, I would have been, fu is se mus, we would have been,*
2. *fu is ses, thou wouldst have been, fu is se tis, ye would have been,*
3. *fu is set, he would have been; fu is sent, they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> 1. <i>es, be thou,</i> | <i>es te, be ye,</i> |
| <i>Fut.</i> 2. <i>es to, thou shalt be,</i> | <i>es to te, ye shall be,</i> |
| • 3. <i>es to, let him be;</i> | <i>sun to, let them be.</i> |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. es se, to be.

Perfect. fu is se, to have been.

Future. fu tu rus, (a, um) es se, or fo re, to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

fu tu rus, a, um, about to be.

§ 101. CONJUGATION OF VERBS.—ENDINGS.

The following table exhibits the endings of the active and passive voices in all the conjugations :

Rem. 1. On the present-stem are formed all the moods of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, (except the infinitive future, active and passive,) the gerund, present active participle, and future passive participle.

Rem. 2. On the perfect-stem are formed all the perfect-tenses in the active voice.

Rem. 3. On the supine stem are formed the supines; the future active, and perfect passive participles; the infinitive future, active and passive; and all the perfect tenses in the passive voice. These latter are compounded of the perfect passive participle and the verb *esse*.

TABLE OF ENDINGS—PRESENT-STEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.				SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
Persons.				Persons.				Persons.			
1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.	
1. o,	as,	at;		1. or,	aris	atur;		1. amur,	amini,	antur.	
2. eo,	es,	et;		2. eor,	eris	etur;		2. emur,	emini,	entur.	
3. o,	is,	it;		3. or,	eris	itur;		3. imur,	imini,	untur.	
4. io,	is,	it;		4. ior,	aris	itur;		4. imur,	imini,	iuntur.	

IMPERFECT.

1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.	
1. abam,	abas,	abat;		1. abar,	abaris	abatur;	
2. ebam,	ebas,	ebat;		2. ebar,	ebaris	ebatur;	
3. ebam,	ebas,	ebat;		3. ebar,	ebaris	ebatur;	
4. iebam,	iebas,	iebat;		4. iebar,	iebaris	iebatur;	

FUTURE.

1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.	
1. abo,	abis,	abit;		1. abor,	aberis	abitur;	
2. ebo,	ebis,	ebit;		2. ebor,	eberis	ebitur;	
3. aui,	es,	et;		3. ar,	eris	etur;	
4. iam,	ies,	iet;		4. iar,	ieris	ietur;	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.	
1. em,	es,	et;		1. er,	eris	etur;	
2. eam,	eam,	eat;		2. ear,	earis	earur;	
3. am,	as,	at;		3. ar,	aris	atur;	
4. iam,	ias,	iat;		4. iar,	iaris	iatur;	

IMPERFECT.

1. arem,	ares,	aret;	aremus,	aretis,	arent.	1. arot,	areis,	or	aremur,	arentur.
2. erom,	eres,	eret;	eremus,	eretis,	erent.	2. erot,	eris,	or	eremur,	erentur.
3. erom,	eres,	eret;	eremus,	eretis,	erent.	3. erot,	oris,	or	eremur,	erentur.
4. irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.	4. itret,	ireris,	or	iremur,	irentur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. a;	ate.	1. ato,	ato;	atote,	anto.	1. are,	amini.	ator,	(abamini,)	antor.
2. o;	ete.	2. eto,	eto;	etote,	ento.	2. ero,	emini.	etor,	(abimini,)	entor.
3. o;	ito.	3. ito,	ito;	itote,	unto.	3. ere,	imini.	itor,	(emini,)	untor.
4. i;	ito.	4. ito,	ito;	itote,	unto.	4. ire,	imini.	itor,	(iemini,)	iuntor.
1. are,	1. ans,	1. andi,	1. are,	1. are,	1. are,	1. andi,	1. amini.	1. ari,	1. andus,	1. antor.
2. ere,	2. ens,	2. ondi,	2. eto,	2. eto,	2. eto,	2. ondi,	2. emini.	2. eri,	2. endus,	2. entor.
3. ere,	3. ens,	3. ondi,	3. ito,	3. ito,	3. ito,	3. ondi,	3. imini.	3. i,	3. endus,	3. untor.
4. ire,	4. iolis.	4. iendi.	4. ito,	4. ito,	4. ito,	4. iendi.	4. imini.	4. tri.	4. fendus.	4. iuntor.

Terminations added to the Perfect and Supine Stems.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the perfect and supine stems, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

ACTIVE VOICE.—PERFECT STEM.

PASSIVE VOICE.—SUPINE STEM.

1. are,	ares,	aret;	aremus,	aretis,	arent.	1. arot,	areis,	or	aremur,	arentur.
2. erom,	eres,	eret;	eremus,	eretis,	erent.	2. erot,	eris,	or	eremur,	erentur.
3. erom,	eres,	eret;	eremus,	eretis,	erent.	3. erot,	oris,	or	eremur,	erentur.
4. irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.	4. itret,	ireris,	or	iremur,	irentur.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PASSIVE VOICE.—SUPINE STEM.

1. are,	ares,	aret;	aremus,	aretis,	arent.	1. arot,	areis,	or	aremur,	arentur.
2. erom,	eres,	eret;	eremus,	eretis,	erent.	2. erot,	eris,	or	eremur,	erentur.
3. erom,	eres,	eret;	eremus,	eretis,	erent.	3. erot,	oris,	or	eremur,	erentur.
4. irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.	4. itret,	ireris,	or	iremur,	irentur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PASSIVE VOICE.—SUPINE STEM.

1. are,	ares,	aret;	aremus,	aretis,	arent.	1. arot,	areis,	or	aremur,	arentur.
2. erom,	eres,	eret;	eremus,	eretis,	erent.	2. erot,	eris,	or	eremur,	erentur.
3. erom,	eres,	eret;	eremus,	eretis,	erent.	3. erot,	oris,	or	eremur,	erentur.
4. irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.	4. itret,	ireris,	or	iremur,	irentur.

SUPINE STEM. INF. Fut. -atus. SUP. -um, -u. PART. Perf. -u. INF. Fut. -um iri.

§ 102. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	<i>Ind. Perf.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
A mo,	a ma re,	a ma vi,	a ma tum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *love, do love, am loving.*

<i>Sing.</i> a mo,	<i>I love,</i>
a mas,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
a mat,	<i>he loves ;</i>
a ma mus,	<i>we love,</i>
a ma tis,	<i>ye love,</i>
a mant,	<i>they love.</i>

Imperfect. *was loving, loved, did love.*

<i>Sing.</i> a ma bam,	<i>I was loving,</i>
a ma bas,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
a ma bat,	<i>he was loving ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> am a ba mus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
am a ba tis,	<i>ye were loving,</i>
a ma bant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

Future. *shall, or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> a ma bo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
a ma bis,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
a ma bit,	<i>he will love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> a ma b i mus,	<i>we shall love,</i>
a ma b i tis,	<i>ye will love,</i>
a ma bunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

Present-Perfect. *loved, or have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i> a ma vi,	<i>I have loved,</i>
am a vis ti,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
a ma vit,	<i>he has loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> a mav i mus,	<i>we have loved,</i>
am a vis tis,	<i>ye have loved,</i>
am a ve runt or re,	<i>they have loved.</i>

Past-Perfect. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i> a mav e ram,	<i>I had loved.</i>
a mav e ras,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
a mav e rat,	<i>he had loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> a mav e ra mus,	<i>we had loved,</i>
a mav e ra tis,	<i>ye had loved,</i>
a mav e rant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

Future-Perfect. *shall, or will have.*

<i>Sing.</i> a mav e ro,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
a mav e ris,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
a mav e rit,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> am a ver i mus,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
am a ver i tis,	<i>ye will have loved,</i>
a mav e rint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may.*

<i>Sing.</i> a mem,	<i>I may love,</i>
a mes,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
a met,	<i>he may love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> a me mus,	<i>we may love,</i>
a me tis,	<i>ye may love,</i>
a ment,	<i>they may love.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> a ma rem,	<i>I would love,</i>
a ma res,	<i>thou wouldst love,</i>
a ma reŧ,	<i>he would love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> am a re mus,	<i>we would love,</i>
am a re tis,	<i>ye would love,</i>
a ma rent,	<i>they would love.</i>

Present-Perfect. *may, or can have.*

<i>Sing.</i> a mav e rim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
a mav e ris,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>
a mav e rit,	<i>he may have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> am a ver i mus,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
am a ver i tis,	<i>ye may have loved,</i>
a mav e rint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

Past-Perfect. *might, could, would, or should have*

<i>Sing.</i> am a vis sem,	<i>I would have loved,</i>
am a vis ses,	<i>thou wouldst have loved,</i>
am a vis set,	<i>he would have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> am a vis se mus,	<i>we would have loved,</i>
am a vis se tis,	<i>ye would have loved,</i>
am a vis sen,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> a ma,	<i>love thou ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> a ma te,	<i>love ye,</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> a ma to,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>
a ma to,	<i>he shall love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> am a to te,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
a man to,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> a ma re,	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i> am a vis se,	<i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> am a tu rus, (a, um) es se,	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Fut. perf.</i> am a tu rus fu is se,	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i> a mans,	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i> am a tu rus, a um,	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

<i>G.</i> a man di,	<i>of loving.</i>
<i>D.</i> a man do,	<i>for loving,</i>
<i>Ac.</i> a man dum,	<i>loving,</i>
<i>Ab.</i> a man do,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

a ma tum,	<i>to love.</i>
a ma tu,	<i>to love, to be loved.</i>

§ 103. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	<i>Infin. Perf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
<i>A mor,</i>	<i>a ma ri,</i>	<i>a ma tus.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *am.*

<i>Sing. a mor,</i>	<i>I am loved,</i>
<i>a ma ris or re,</i>	<i>thou art loved,</i>
<i>a ma tur,</i>	<i>he is loved ;</i>
<i>Plur. a ma mur,</i>	<i>we are loved,</i>
<i>a mam i ni,</i>	<i>ye are loved,</i>
<i>a man tur,</i>	<i>they are loved.</i>

Imperfect. *was.*

<i>Sing. a ma bar,</i>	<i>I was loved,</i>
<i>am a ba ris or re,</i>	<i>thou wast loved,</i>
<i>am a ba tur,</i>	<i>he was loved ;</i>
<i>Plur. am a ba mur,</i>	<i>we were loved,</i>
<i>am a bam i ni,</i>	<i>ye were loved,</i>
<i>am a ban tur,</i>	<i>they were loved.</i>

Future. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing. a ma bor,</i>	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
<i>a ma b e eris or re,</i>	<i>thou wilt be loved,</i>
<i>a ma b i tur,</i>	<i>he will be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur. a ma b i mur,</i>	<i>we shall be loved,</i>
<i>am a bim i ni,</i>	<i>ye will be loved,</i>
<i>am a bun tur.</i>	<i>they will be loved.</i>

Present-Perfect. *have been, or was.*

<i>Sing. a am tus sum or fu i,</i>	<i>I have been loved,</i>
<i>a ma tus es or fu is ti,</i>	<i>thou hast been loved,</i>
<i>a ma tus est or fu it,</i>	<i>he has been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur. a ma ti su mus or fu i mus,</i>	<i>we have been loved,</i>
<i>a ma ti es tis or fu is tis,</i>	<i>ye have been loved,</i>
<i>a ma ti sunt, fu e runt or re,</i>	<i>they have been loved.</i>

Past-Perfect. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a ma tus e ram or fu e ram,</i>	<i>I had been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma tus e ras or fu e ras,</i>	<i>thou hadst been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma tus e rat or fu e rat,</i>	<i>he had been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a ma ti e ra mus or fu e ra mus,</i>	<i>we had been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma ti e ra tis or fu e ra tis,</i>	<i>ye had been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma ti e rant or fu e rant,</i>	<i>they had been loved.</i>

Future-Perfect. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a ma tus e ro or fu e ro.</i>	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma tus e ris or fu e ris.</i>	<i>thou wilt have been loved.</i>
	<i>a ma tus e rit or fu e rit,</i>	<i>he will have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a ma ti er i mus or fu er i mus,</i>	<i>we shall have been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma ti er i tis or fu er i tis.</i>	<i>ye will have been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma ti e runt or fu e rint,</i>	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. ✕

Present. *may be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a mer,</i>	<i>I may be loved,</i>
	<i>a me ris or re,</i>	<i>thou mayst be loved,</i>
	<i>a me tur,</i>	<i>he may be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a me mur,</i>	<i>we may be loved,</i>
	<i>a mem i ni,</i>	<i>ye may be loved,</i>
	<i>a men tur,</i>	<i>they may be loved.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a ma rer,</i>	<i>I would be loved,</i>
	<i>am a re ris or re,</i>	<i>thou wouldst be loved,</i>
	<i>am a re tur,</i>	<i>he would be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>am a re mur,</i>	<i>we would be loved,</i>
	<i>am a rem i ni,</i>	<i>ye would be loved,</i>
	<i>am a ren tur,</i>	<i>they would be loved.</i>

Present-Perfect. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a ma tus sim or fu e rim,</i>	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma tus sis or fu e ris,</i>	<i>thou mayst have been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma tus sit or fu e rit,</i>	<i>he may have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a ma ti si mus or fu er i mus,</i>	<i>we may have been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma ti si tis or fu er i tis,</i>	<i>ye may have been loved,</i>
	<i>a ma ti sint or fu e rint,</i>	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

Past-Perfect. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> a ma tus es sem or fu is sem,	<i>I would have been loved,</i>
a ma tus es ses or fu is ses,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved.</i>
a ma tus es set or fu is set,	<i>he would have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> a ma ti es se mus or fu is se mus,	<i>we would have been loved,</i>
a ma ti es se tis or fu is se tis,	<i>ye would have been loved,</i>
a ma ti es sent or fu is sent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> a ma re,	<i>be thou loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> a mam i ni,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> a ma tor,	<i>thou shalt be loved,</i>
a ma tor,	<i>he shall be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> (am a bim i ni,	<i>ye shall be loved),</i>
a man tor,	<i>they shall be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> a ma ri,	<i>to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i> a mu tus es se or fu is se,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> a ma tum i ri,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i> a ma tus,	<i>loved, or having been loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> a man dus,	<i>to be loved.</i>

§ 104. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> mon ne o.	<i>Ind. Pres.</i> mo ne or.
<i>Inf. Pres.</i> mo ne re.	<i>Inf. Pres.</i> mo ne ri.
<i>Ind. Perf.</i> mon u i.	<i>Perf. Part.</i> mon i tus.
<i>Supine.</i> mon i tum.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>I advise.</i>	<i>I am advised.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> mo ne o,	<i>Sing.</i> mo ne or,
mo nes,	mo ne ris or re,
mo net;	mo ne tur;
<i>Plur.</i> mo ne mus,	<i>Plur.</i> mo ne mur,
mo ne tis,	mo nem i ni,
mo nent.	mo nen tur.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

I was advising.

- S. *mo ne bam,*
mo ne bas,
mo ne bat;
 P. *mon e ba mus,*
mon e ba tis,
mo ne bant.

I was advised.

- S. *mo ne bar,*
mon e ba ris or re,
mon e ba tur;
 P. *mon e ba mur,*
mon e bam i ni,
mon e ban tur.

Future.

I shall or will advise.

- S. *mo ne bo,*
mo ne bis,
mo ne bit;
 P. *mo neb i mus,*
mo neb i tis,
mo ne bunt.

I shall or will be advised.

- S. *mo ne bor,*
mo neb e ris or re,
mo neb i tur;
 P. *mo neb i mur,*
mon e bim i ni,
mon e bun tur.

Present-Perfect.

I advised or have advised.

- S. *mon u i,*
mon u is ti,
mon u it;
 P. *mo nu i mus,*
mon u is tis,
mon u e runt or re,

I was or have been advised.

- S. *mon i tus sum or fu i,*
mon i tus es or fu is ti,
mon i tus est or fu it;
 P. *mon i ti su mus or fu i mus,*
mon i ti es tis or fu is tis,
mon i ti sunt fu e runt or re.

Past-Perfect.

I had advised.

- S. *mo nu e ram,*
mo nu e ras,
mo nu e rat;
 P. *mon u e ra mus,*
mon u e ra tis,
mo nu e rant.

I had been advised.

- S. *mon i tus e ram or fu e ram,*
mon i tus e ras or fu e ras,
mon i tus e rat or fu e rat;
 P. *mon i ti e ra mus or fu e ra mus,*
mon i ti e ra tis or fu e ra tis,
mon i ti e rant or fu e rant.

Future-Perfect.

I shall have advised.

- S. *mo nu e ro,*
mo nu e ris,
mo nu e rit;
 P. *mon u er i mus,*
mon u er i tis,
mo nu e rint.

I shall have been advised.

- S. *mon i tus e ro or fu e ro,*
mon i tus e ris or fu e ris,
mon i tus e rit or fu e rit;
 P. *mon i ti er i mus or fu er i mus,*
mon i ti er i tis or fu er i tis,
mon i ti e runt or fu e rint.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may advise.

- S. *mo ne am,*
mo ne as,
mo ne at ;
 P. *mo ne a mus,*
mo ne a tis,
mo ne ant.

I may be advised.

- S. *mo ne ar,*
mo ne a ris or re,
mo ne a tur ;
 P. *mo ne a mur,*
mo ne am i ni,
mo ne an tur.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would or should advise.

- S. *mo ne rem,*
mo ne res,
mo ne ret ;
 P. *mon e re mus,*
mon e re tis,
mo ne rent.

I might, could, would or should be advised.

- S. *mo ne rer,*
mon e re ris or re,
mon e re tur ;
 P. *mon e re mur,*
mon e rem i ni,
mon e ren tur.

Present-Perfect.

I may have advised.

- S. *mo nu e rim,*
mo nu e ris,
mo nu e rit ;
 P. *mon u er i mus,*
mon u er i tis,
mo nu e rint.

I may have been advised.

- S. *mon i tus sim or fu e rim,*
mon i tus sis or fu e ris,
mon i tus sit or fu e rit ;
 P. *mon i ti si mus or fu er i mus,*
mon i ti si tis or fu er i tis,
mon i ti sint or fu e rint.

Past-Perfect.

I might, could, would, or should have advised.

- S. *mon u is sem,*
mon u is ses,
mon u is set ;
 P. *mon u is se mus,*
mon u is se tis,
mon u is sent.

I might, could, would, or should have been advised.

- S. *mon i tus es sem or fu is sem,*
mon i tus es ses or fu is ses,
mon i tus es set or fu is set ;
 P. *mon i ti es se mus or fu is se mus,*
mon i ti es se tis or fu is se tis,
mon i ti es sent or fu is sent.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. mo ne, advise thou;
P. mo ne te, advise ye.
Fut. S. mo ne to, thou shalt advise,
mo ne to, he shall advise;
P. mon e to te, ye shall advise,
mo nen to, they shall advise.

Pres. S. mo ne re, be thou advised;
P. mo nem i ni, be ye advised.
Fut. S. mo ne tor, thou shalt be advised,
mo ne tor, he shall be advised;
P. (mon e bim i ni, ye shall be advised,)
mo nen tor, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. mo ne re, to advise.
Perf. mon u is se, to have advised.
Fut. mon i tu rus es se, to be about to advise.
Fut. Perf. mon i tu rus fu is se, to have been about to advise.

Pres. mo ne ri, to be advised.
Perf. mon i tus es se or fu is se, to have been advised.
Fut. mon i tum i ri, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mo nens, advising.
Fut. mon i tu rus, about to advise.

Perf. mon i tus, advised.
Fut. mo nen dus, to be advised.

GERUND.

G. mo nen di, of advising.
D. mo nen do, etc.,
Ac. mo nen dum,
Ab. mo nen do.

SUPINE.

mon i tum, to advise. *mon i tu, to be advised, to advise.*

§ 105. THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Ind. Pres. re go.
Inf. Pres. reg e re.
Ind. Perf. rex i.
Supine. rec tum.

Ind. Pres. re gor
Inf. Pres. re gi.
Perf. Part. rec tus.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I rule.

Sing. *re go,*
re gis,
re git ;
 Plur. *reg i mus,*
reg i tis,
re gunt.

I am ruled.

Sing. *re gor,*
reg e ris or re,
reg i tur ;
 Plur. *reg i mur,*
re gim i ni,
re gun tur.

Imperfect.

I was ruling.

S. *re ge bam,*
re ge bas,
re ge bat ;
 P. *reg e ba mus,*
reg e ba tis,
re ge bant.

I was ruled.

S. *re ge bar,*
reg e ba ris or re,
reg e ba tur ;
 P. *reg e ba mur,*
reg e bam i ni,
reg e ban tur.

Future.

I shall or will rule.

S. *re gam,*
re ges,
re get ;
 P. *re ge mus,*
re ge tis,
re gent.

I shall or will be ruled.

S. *re gar,*
re ge ris or re,
re ge tur ;
 P. *re ge mur,*
re gem i ni,
re gen tur.

Present-Perfect.

I ruled or have ruled.

S. *rex i,*
rex is ti,
rex it ;
 P. *rex i mus,*
rex is tis,
rex e runt or re.

I was or have been ruled.

S. *rec tus sum or fu i,*
rec tus es or fu is ti,
rec tus est or fu it ;
 P. *rec ti su mus or fu i mus,*
rec ti es tis or fu is tis,
rec ti sunt, fu e runt or re.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

Past-Perfect.

*I had ruled.**I had been ruled.*

S. *rex e ram,*
rex e ras,
rex e rat ;

S. *rec tus e ram or fu e ram,*
rec tus e ras or fu e ras,
rec tus e rat or fu e rat ;

P. *rex e ra mus,*
rex e ra tis,
rex e rant.

P. *rec ti e ra mus or fu e ru mus,*
rec ti e ra tis or fu e ra tis,
rec ti e rant or fu e rant.

Future-Perfect.

*I shall have ruled.**I shall have been ruled.*

S. *rex e ro,*
rex e ris,
rex e rit ;

S. *rec tus e ro or fu e ro,*
tec tus e ris or fu e ris,
rec tus e rit or fu e rit ;

P. *rex er i mus,*
rex er i tis,
rex e rint,

P. *rec ti er i mus or fu er i mus,*
rec ti er i tis or fu er i tis,
rec ti e runt or fu e rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

*I may rule.**I may be ruled.*

S. *re gam,*
re gas,
re gat ;

S. *re gar,*
re ga ris or re,
re ga tur ;

P. *re ga mus,*
re ga tis,
re gant.

P. *re ga mur,*
re gam i ni,
re gan tur.

Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.**I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

S. *reg e rem,*
reg e res,
reg e ret ;

S. *reg e rer,*
reg e re ris or re,
reg e re tur ;

P. *reg e re mus,*
reg e re tis,
reg e rent.

P. *reg e re mur,*
reg e rem i ni,
reg e ren tur.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

Present-Perfect.

I may have ruled.

S. *rex e rim,*
rex e ris,
rex e rit;

P. *rex er i mus,*
rex er i tis,
rex e rint.

I may have been ruled.

S. *rec tus sim or fu e rim,*
rec tus sis or fu e ris,
rec tus sit or fu e rit;

P. *rec ti si mus or fu er i mus,*
rec ti si tis or fu er i tis,
'rec ti sint or fu e rint.

Past-Perfect.

I might, could, would, or should have ruled.

S. *rex is sem,*
rex is ses,
rex is set;

P. *rex is se mus,*
rex is se tis,
rex is sent.

I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.

S. *rec tus es sem or fu is sem,*
rec tus es ses or fu is ses,
rec tus es set or fu is set;

P. *rec ti es se mus or fu is se mus,*
rec ti es se tis or fu is se tis,
rec ti es sent or fu is sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. *re ge, rule thou,*P. *reg i te, rule ye.*Fut. S. *reg i to, thou shalt rule,*
reg i to, he shall rule;

P. *reg i to te, ye shall rule,*
re gun to, they shall rule.

Pres. S. *reg e re, be thou ruled,*P. *re gim i ni, be ye ruled.*Fut. S. *reg i tor, thou shalt be ruled,*
reg i tor, he shall be ruled;

P. *(re gem i ni, ye shall, etc.)*
re gun tor, they shall, etc.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. *reg e re, to rule.*Perf. *rex is se, to have ruled.*Fut. *rec tu rus es se, to be about*
*to rule.*Fut. Perf. *rec tu rus fu is se, to*
*have been about to rule.*Pres. *re gi, to be ruled.*Perf. *rec tus es se or fu is se, to*
*have been ruled.*Fut. *rec tum i ri, to be about to*
be ruled.

PARTICIPLES..

Pres. *re gens, ruling.*Fut. *rec tu rus, about to rule.*Perf. *rec tus, ruled.*Fut. *re gen dus, to be ruled.*

GERUND.

G. *re gen di, of ruling*D. *re gen do, etc.*Ac. *re gen dum,*Ab. *re gen do.*

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

SUPINE.

rec tum, *to rule.*rec tu, *to be ruled, to ;ule.*

§ 106. FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Ind. Pres. *au di o,*
 Inf. Pres. *au di re,*
 Ind. Perf. *au di vi,*
 Supine. *au di tum.*

Ind. Pres. *au di or.*
 Inf. Pres. *au di ri.*
 Perf. Part. *au di tus.*

INDICATIVE MOOD,

Present.

I hear.

S. *au di o,*
au di s,
au di t;

P. *au di mus,*
au di tis,
au di unt.

I am heard.

S. *au di or,*
au di ris or re,
au di tur;

P. *au di mur,*
au di m i ni,
au di un tur.

Imperfect.

I was hearing.

S. *au di e bam,*
au di e bas,
au di e bat;
 P. *au di e ba mus,*
au di e ba tis,
au di e bant.

I was heard.

S. *au di e bar,*
au di e ba ris or re,
au di e ba tur;

P. *au di e ba mur,*
au di e bam i ni,
au di e ban tur.

Future.

I shall or will hear.

S. *au di am,*
au di es,
au di et;
 P. *au di e mus,*
au di e tis,
au di ent.

I shall or will be heard.

S. *au di ar,*
au di e ris or re,
au di e tur;

P. *au di e mur,*
au di em i ni,
au di en tur.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

Present-Perfect.

I heard or have heard.

- S. au di vi,
 au di vis ti,
 au di vit ;
 P. au div i mus,
 au di vis tis,
 au di ve runt or re.

I have been or was heard.

- S. au di tus sum or fu i,
 au di tus es or fu is ti,
 au di tus est or fu it ;
 P. au di ti su mus or fu i mus,
 au di ti es tis or fu is tis,
 au di ti sunt, fu e runt or re.

Past-Perfect.

I had heard.

- S. au div e ram,
 au div e ras,
 au div e rat ;
 P. au div e ra mus,
 au div e ra tis,
 au div e rant.

I had been heard.

- S. au di tus e ram or fu e ram,
 au di tus e ras or fu e ras,
 au di tus e rat or fu e rat ;
 P. au di ti e ra mus or fu e ra mus,
 au di ti e ra tis or fu e ra tis,
 au di ti e rant or fu e rant.

Future-Perfect.

I shall have heard.

- S. au div e ro,
 au div e ris,
 au div erit ;
 P. au di ver i mus,
 au di ver i tis,
 au div e rint.

I shall have been heard.

- S. au di tus e ro or fu e ro,
 au di tus e ris or fu e ris,
 au di tus e rit or fu e rit ;
 P. au di ti er i mus or fu er i mus,
 au di ti er i tis or fu er i tis,
 au di ti e runt or fu e rint,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or can hear.

- S. au di am,
 au di as,
 au di at ;
 P. au di a mus,
 au di a tis,
 au di ant.

I may or can be heard.

- S. an di ar,
 au di a ris or re,
 au di a tur ;
 P. au di a mur,
 au di am i ni,
 au di an tur.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or should hear. *I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

S. au di rem,
au di res,
au di ret;

P. au di re mus,
au di re tis,
au di rent.

S. au di rer,
au di re ris or re,
au di re tur;

P. au di re mur,
au di rem i ni,
au di ren tur.

Present-Perfect.

I may have heard.

S. au di vis rim,
au di vis ris,
au di vis rit;

P. au di ver i mus,
au di ver i tis,
au di vis rint.

I may have been heard.

S. au di tus sim or fu e rim,
au di tus sis or fu e ris,
au di tus sit or fu e rit;

P. au di ti si mus or fu er i mus,
au di ti si tis or fu er i tis,
au di ti sint or fu e rint.

Past-Perfect.

I might, could, would, or should have heard. *I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

S. au di vis sem,
au di vis ses,
au di vis set;

P. au di vis se mus,
au di vis se tis,
au di vis sent.

S. au di tus es sem or fu is sem,
au di tus es ses or fu is ses,
au di tus es set or fu is set;

P. au di ti es se mus or fu is se mus,
au di ti es se tis or fu is se tis,
au di ti es sent or fu is sent,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. au di, hear thou;

P. au di te, hear ye.

Fut. S. au di to, thou shalt hear,
au di to, he shall hear;

P. au di to te, ye shall hear,
au di un to, they shall hear.

Pres. S. au di re, be thou heard;

P. au di m i ni, be ye heard.

Fut. S. au di tor, thou shalt be heard.

au di tor, he shall be heard;

P. (au di em i ni, ye shall be heard,)

au di un tor, they shall be heard.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. <i>au di re, to hear.</i>	Pres. <i>au di ri, to be heard.</i>
Perf. <i>au di vis se, to have heard.</i>	Perf. <i>au di tus es se or fu is se, to have been heard.</i>
Fut. <i>au di tu rus es se, to be about to hear.</i>	Fut. <i>au di tum i ri, to be about to be heard.</i>
Fut-P. <i>au di tu rus fu is se, to have been about to hear.</i>	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. <i>au di ens, hearing.</i>	Perf. <i>au di tus, heard.</i>
Fut. <i>au di tu rus, about to hear.</i>	Fut. <i>au di en dus, to be heard.</i>

GERUND.

G. <i>au di en di, of hearing.</i>
D. <i>au di en do, etc.</i>
Ac. <i>au di en dum,</i>
Ab. <i>au di en do.</i>

SUPINE.

<i>au di tum, to hear.</i>	<i>au di tu, to be heard, to hear.</i>
----------------------------	--

§ 107. VERB IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Some verbs of the third conjugation insert *i* before the ending in some of the tenses, as shown in the following paradigm of *cap-e-re*, *to take*.

ACTIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	<i>cap-</i>	<i>i-o.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>it.</i>	<i>imus.</i>	<i>itis.</i>	<i>i-unt.</i>
Imperf.	<i>cap i eb-</i>	<i>am.</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>at.</i>	<i>amus.</i>	<i>atis.</i>	<i>ant.</i>
Fut.	<i>cap i-</i>	<i>am.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>et.</i>	<i>emus.</i>	<i>etis.</i>	<i>ent.</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	<i>cap i-</i>	<i>am.</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>at.</i>	<i>amus.</i>	<i>atis.</i>	<i>ant.</i>
PASSIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	<i>cap-</i>	<i>i-or.</i>	<i>eris.</i>	<i>itur.</i>	<i>imur.</i>	<i>imini.</i>	<i>i untur.</i>
Imperf.	<i>cap i eb-</i>	<i>ar.</i>	<i>aris.</i>	<i>atur.</i>	<i>amur.</i>	<i>amini.</i>	<i>antur.</i>
Fut.	<i>cap i-</i>	<i>ar.</i>	<i>eris.</i>	<i>etur.</i>	<i>emur.</i>	<i>emini.</i>	<i>entur.</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	<i>cap i.</i>	<i>ar.</i>	<i>aris.</i>	<i>atur.*</i>	<i>amur.</i>	<i>amini.</i>	<i>antur.</i>
IMPERATIVE.							
3d Plur. Active, <i>cap i unto.</i>				3d Plur. Pass., <i>cap i untor.</i>			
PARTICIPLES.							
Pres. Active, <i>cap i ens.</i>				Fut. Pass., <i>cap i endus.</i>			
GERUND, <i>cap i end i, o, &c.</i>							

EXERCISE 33.

(Some verbs which insert *i*.)

Cap-ere, (*cep-capt-*) *to take*, (with its compounds).

Re-cip-ere, (*re-cep-,recept-*) *to take back*.

Recipere se, *to take oneself back, to retreat*.

Ac-cip-ere, (*ac-cep-,ac-cept-*) *to receive, take to oneself*.

Cup-ere, (*cu-piv-cup-it-*) *to desire*.

Fac-ere, (*fec-fact-*) *to do, to make*.

Con-fic-ere, (*con-fec-,confect-*) *to finish*.

Rap-ere, (*rap-u-,rapt-*) *to seize, carry off*.

Di-rip-ere, (*di-rip-u-,di-rept-*) *to plunder*.

Rem. 1. The imperative present active 2d singular of *facio* is *fac*, and the passive is supplied by the irregular verb *fi*, (§ 111, 7). The compounds which change *a* into *i* have the regular passive; as, *conficior*, *confici*, *confectus*:

but those which retain the *a* have the irregular passive, as, *patefacio*, pass, *patefio*, *pateferi*, *patefactus*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Germani animalia (§ 39) quæ bellō ceperant diis mac-
tabant. Nostri in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos
(§ 82, 1,) in fugam dederunt. Helvetii per Sequanorum
fines iter faciebant. Hostes, qui per provinciam iter ten-
taverant, in fines suos se receperunt. Cæsar ab Helvetiis
obsides et arma acceperat. Imperator aurum quod a rege
acceperat, militibus dedit. Milites prælium facere cupiv-
erunt. Cæsar decem diebus pontem confecit. Romani
virgines Sabinorum rapuerunt. Hostes atroces totam urbem
diripient.

Translate into Latin.

The enemy will retreat from the mountain to the river.
The king will lay-waste the country (*agros*) which he has
conquered, with fire and sword. Our horsemen had made
an attack upon the enemy's footmen. The forces of the
enemy, that were making a journey through our province,
plundered many villages. The lieutenant, with five legions
which he had received from Cæsar, hastened into the bound-
aries of the Æduans. The consul will not finish the bridge
in six days. The general desires to make an end of the
war.

For peculiarities of tense formation and conjugation, and composition of verbs,
see Appendix.

§ 108. EXERCISE 44. THE PASSIVE CON- STRUCTION.

I. The same idea may be expressed both in the active
and passive form; as, *Helvetii legatos mittunt*, the Hel-

vetians send ambassadors; or, *Legati ab Helvetiis mittuntur*, Ambassadors are sent by the Helvetians.

2. The *object* in the active becomes the *subject* in the passive; and the *subject* in the active is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*. (ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT.)

Rem. 1. If the ablative expresses, not the agent, or *doer* of the action, but only the *cause*, *means*, *instrument*, the preposition will not be used. As, *stimulus bove in concitat*, the goad urges on the ox; passive, *bos stimulo concitatur*, the ox is urged on with the goad.

Rem. 2. As intransitive verbs have no object in the active, they are not used personally in the passive.

3. *Rule of Syntax.* Verbs which in the active take another case in addition to the object-accusative, in the passive retain that other case; as, *magister puero librum dat*; passive, *liber puero a magistro datur*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Regina ab ancillis amatur. Magister bonus ab omnibus pueris amabitur. Tuæ salutis causa (§ 29, 1) moreris. Pater a filio suo amatus est. Templum de marmore (§ 40) ab imperatore ædificatum est. Leo qui in silva a servis visus est, multos homines laniaverat. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, Helvetii una ex parte flumine Rheno, altissimo atque latissimo, continentur. Legiones quæ in provincia conscriptæ sunt, a Cæsare ex hibernis educuntur. Quidam ex militibus magnitudine periculi perterriti sunt. Castra tribus diebus (§ 66, 2) a consule movebitur. Improbi omnes a deo punientur. Hæc a nobis audita sunt.

Translate into Latin.

(Change any of the foregoing exercises from active to passive construction.)

DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 109. 1. Deponent verbs are such as have a passive form with an active meaning.

They are called *deponent*, (laying aside,) because they *lay aside* their active form and passive meaning.

2. They are inflected throughout like passive verbs, and have also the gerund, participles, and supine of the active voice. The perfect and future passive participles, the infinitive-future passive, and the latter supine, have also a passive meaning.

PARADIGM.

Mir-or, mir-ari, mir-at-us, to admire.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
PRES.	mir or, <i>I admire.</i>	-er.	-are.	-ari.
IMPERF.	mir abar, <i>I was admiring.</i>	-arer.		
FUT.	mir abor, <i>I shall admire.</i>		ator.	mir at { -urus esse, -um iri.
PRES. PERF.	mir at us sum or fui, <i>I have admired.</i>	-us sim or fuerim.		-us esse or fuisse.
PAST PERF.	mir at tus eram or fueram, <i>I had admired.</i>	-us essem or fuissem.		
FUT. PERF.	mir at us ero or fuero, <i>I shall have admired.</i>			miraturus fuisse.

PARTICIPLES, { mir-ans, *admiring.*
mir-at-us, *having admired.*
miraturus, *about to admire.*
mir-andus, *to be admired.*

GERUND, mir-andi, *admiring.*
SUPINES, { mir-at-um, *to admire.*
mir-at-u, *to be admired.*

§ 110.

EXERCISE 45.

Mor-ari, *to delay*.
 Con-ari, *to attempt*.
 Popul-ari, *to pillage, plunder*.
 Hort-ari, *to exhort*.
 Imit-ari, *to imitate*.
 Tu-eri, (tu-it or tut-) *to protect*.
 Confit-eri, (confess-) *to confess*.
 Sequ-i, (secut-) *to follow*.
 Ulcise-i, (ult-) *to avenge*.
 Pat-i, (pat-i-or, pass-) *to endure*. *to suffer*,
permit.
 Frumentarius, a, um, *of corn*.
 Res frumentaria, *provisions*.

Congredi, (concred-i-or, congress-) *to meet*;
in a hostile sense, to contend.
 Ment-iri, *to lie*.
 Met-iri, (mens-) *to measure*.
 Publicus, -a, -um, *public*.
 Privatus, -a, -um, *private*.
 Mors, mort-is, *death*.
 Supplicium, i, *punishment*.
 Peccatum, i, *fault, sin*.
 Amor, amor-is, *love*.
 Scelus, sceler-is, *crime*.
 Causa, (abl.) *for the sake of*.
 Pauci, æ, a, *few*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Cæsar in hoc oppido paucos dies (§ 66, 2,) rei frumentariæ causa morabatur. Flumina, quæ recentibus imbribus aucta sunt (see *augere*), multos dies consulem morabuntur. Helvetii in Æduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Hostes per provinciam nostram iter facere conati erant. Imperator fortis milites hortatus est. Liberi non semper virtutem parentium imitantur. Qui suos liberos non tuetur (§ 87, 7) homo est turpissimus. Turpe est mentiri. Nonne scelera tua confessus es? Equites nostri hostes ad flumen secuti sunt. Hic latro gravissimum supplicium patietur. Cum Cicerone sæpe in urbe congressus sum. Hac in re Cæsar publicas ac privatas injurias ultus est.

Translate into Latin.

A wise man always confesses his faults. Davus confessed his love for (*use gen.*) the maid-servant. The brave son will avenge his father's death. Our skirmishers delayed the journey of the enemy many hours. The prudent consul will not suffer the enemy to lead their forces through the most fertile part of Gaul. To lie is the basest of all things. The thief had confessed all his crimes. The general on the sixth day measured (out) corn to the soldiers.

It is easier to imitate vice than virtue. The Æduans, having contended with Ariovistus, king of the Germans, were conquered. Our men will attempt to follow the enemy through the forest.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 111. 1. Irregular verbs do not use, in some of their parts formed from the present-stem, the endings of either of the four conjugations.

2. They are, *esse, to be*; *velle, to be willing*; *ferre, to bear*; *edere or esse, to eat*; *fieri, to be made, to become*; *ire, to go*; *quære, to be able*; and their compounds.

3. *Vol-o, vel-le, vol-u-i, to wish, to be willing.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	<i>volo, vis, vult;</i>	<i>vel-im, vel-is, vel-it;</i>
	<i>vol-umus, vultis, vol-unt.</i>	<i>vel-imus, vel-itis, vel-int.</i>
IMPERF.	<i>vol-ebam, vol-ebas, &c.</i>	<i>vel-lem, vel-les, vel-let;</i>
		<i>vel-lemus, vel-letis, vel-lent.</i>
FUT.	<i>vol-am, vol-es, &c.</i>	
PRES. PERF.	<i>vol-u-i, isti, it, &c.</i>	<i>vol-u-erim, eris, erit, &c.</i>
PAST PERF.	<i>vol-u-eram, eras, &c.</i>	<i>vol-u-issem, isses, &c.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>vol-u-ero, eris, &c.</i>	
INFINITIVE.	{ PRES. <i>vel-le,</i> PERF. <i>vol-u-isse.</i>	PARTICIPLE PRES. <i>vol-ens.</i>

4. *Nolo* is compounded of *ne* or *non*, and *volo*.

Nol-o, nol-le, nol-u-i, to be unwilling.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	<i>Nol-o, non-vis, non-vult;</i>	<i>nol-im, nol-is, nol-it,</i>
	<i>nol-umus, non-vultis, nol-unt.</i>	<i>nol-imus, nol-itis, nol-int.</i>
IMPERF.	<i>nol-ebam, ebas, &c.</i>	<i>nol-lem, nol-les, nol-let,</i>
		<i>nol-lemus, nol-letis, nol-lent.</i>
FUT.	<i>nol-am, es, et, &c.</i>	
PRES. PERF.	<i>nol-u-i, isti, it, &c.</i>	<i>nol-u-erim, eris, &c.</i>
PT. PERF.	<i>nol-u-eram, eras, &c.</i>	<i>nol-u-issem, isses, &c.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>nol-u-ero, eris, &c.</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES.	2. <i>nol-i,</i>	2. <i>nol-ite,</i>		
FUT.	2. <i>nol-ito,</i> 3. <i>nol-ito,</i>	2. <i>nol-itote,</i>	PRES. <i>nol-le,</i>	PRES. <i>nol-ens.</i>
		3. <i>nol-unto.</i>	PERF. <i>nol-u-isse.</i>	

5. *Malo* is compounded of *magis*, more, and *velo*.
malo, *mal-le*, *mal-u-i*, to prefer, to be more willing.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	<i>mal o</i> , <i>ma vis</i> , <i>ma vult</i> . <i>mal unus</i> , <i>ma vultis</i> , <i>mal unt</i> .	<i>mal im</i> , <i>mal is</i> , <i>mal it</i> . <i>mal imus</i> , <i>mal itis</i> , <i>mal int</i> .
IMPERF.	<i>mal eam</i> , <i>-ebas</i> , &c.	<i>mal lem</i> , <i>mal les</i> , <i>mal let</i> . <i>mal lemus</i> , <i>mal letis</i> , <i>mal lent</i> .
FUT.	<i>mal am</i> , <i>-es</i> , <i>-et</i> , &c.	
PRES. PERF.	<i>mal u i</i> , <i>-isti</i> , <i>-it</i> , &c.	<i>mal u erim</i> , <i>-eris</i> , <i>-erit</i> , &c.
PAST PERF.	<i>mal u eram</i> , <i>-eras</i> , &c.	<i>mal u issem</i> , <i>-isses</i> , &c.
FUT. PERF.	<i>mal u ero</i> , <i>-eris</i> , &c.	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *malle*.PERF. *mal-u-isse*.

6. *Fer-o* is originally a verb of the third conjugation, which became irregular by syncopation; as, *fers* for *fer-is*; *fer-re* for *fer-e-re*, &c. The perfect and supine-stems are taken from the obsolete *tul-o*, (whence *tollo*,) and *tla-o*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Fer-o, *fer-re*, *tul-i*, *lat-um*, to carry.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPEATIVE.
Pres.	<i>fer o</i> , <i>fers</i> , <i>fert</i> , <i>fer imus</i> , <i>-tis</i> , <i>-unt</i> .	<i>fer am</i> , <i>-as</i> , &c.	2. <i>fer</i> . 2. <i>fer te</i> .
Imperf.	<i>fer eam</i> , <i>-ebas</i> , &c.	<i>fer rem</i> , <i>-res</i> , <i>-ret</i> . <i>fer remus</i> , <i>-retis</i> , <i>-rert</i>	
Fut.	<i>fer am</i> , <i>-es</i> , &c.		2. <i>fer to</i> , 3. <i>to</i> , 2. <i>-tote</i> ;
Pres. Perf.	<i>tul i</i> , <i>-isti</i> , &c.	<i>tul-erim</i> , <i>-eris</i> , &c.	3. <i>-unto</i> .
Past Perf.	<i>tul eram</i> , <i>-eras</i> , &c.	<i>tul issem</i> , <i>-isses</i> , &c.	
Fut. Perf.	<i>tul ero</i> , <i>-eris</i> , &c.		

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	GER.	SUPINE.
Pres.	<i>fer re</i> ,	<i>fer ens</i> ,	<i>fer endi</i> .	
Fut.	<i>lat urus esse</i> .	<i>lat urus</i> .		{ <i>lat um</i> ,
Perf.	<i>tul isse</i> .			{ <i>lat u</i> .

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fer-or, fer-ri, lat-us, *to be carried.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	fer or, ris or re, tur, fer'imur, &c.	fer ar, -aris, &c.	2. fer re. 2. fer inipi.
<i>Imperf.</i>	fer ebar, -ebaris, &c.	fer rer. -reris or rere, retur. fer remur, -remini, -rontur.	
<i>Fut.</i>	fer ar, -eris, &c.		2. fer tor, 3. fer tor. 2. (fer emini) 3. fer untor.
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	lat us sum, &c.	lat us sim, &c.	
<i>Past Perf.</i>	lat us eram, &c.	lat us essem, &c.	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	lat us ero, &c.		

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
<i>Pres.</i>	fer ri.	
<i>Fut.</i>	lat um iri.	fer endus.
<i>Perf.</i>	lat us esse or fuisse.	latus.

7. FI-o is used as the passive of *facio*. It is originally an intransitive verb of the 4th conjugation, using only those parts formed from the present-stem. It differs from other verbs of the 4th conjugation only in not absorbing *e* in the infinitive pres. and subj. imperf.

Fi-o, fi-eri, fact-us, *to be done, to be made, to become.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	fi-o, fi-s, fi-t. fi-mus, fi-tis, fi-unt.	fi am, as, &c.	fi. fi-te.
<i>Imperf.</i>	fi ebam, -ebas, &c.	fi erem, -eres, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i>	fi am, -es, &c.		
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	fact us sum, &c.	fact us sim, &c.	
<i>Past Perf.</i>	fact us eram, &c.	fact us essem, &c.	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	fact us ero, &c.		
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Pres.</i>	fi eri.		
<i>Fut.</i>	fact um iri.	fac i endus.	
<i>Perf.</i>	fact us esse or fuisse.	fact us.	

8. Ed-ere, *to eat*, is a regular verb of the third conjugation; but in addition to the regular tense forms, it has some forms similar to the corresponding tense forms of *esse*, *to be*, viz.:

INDICATIVE-PRES.		SUBJUNCTIVE-IMPERF.	
<i>S.</i>	ed o, ed is, ed it, or es, or est.	ed erem, ed eres, ed eret, or essem, or esses, or esset.	
<i>P.</i>	ed imus, ed itis, ed unt, or estis.	ed eremus, ed eretis, ed erent, or essemus, or essetis, or essent.	
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE-PRES.	
<i>Pres. S.</i>	ed e, or es.	<i>P.</i>	ed ite, or este.
			ed ere, or esse.
			PASSIVE.
<i>Fut. S.</i>	ed ito, or esto.	<i>P.</i>	ed-itotè, or estote, edunto.
		<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	ed itur, or estur.
		<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	ed eretur, or essetur.

9. *Ire*, to go, in most of its parts has the endings of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, ire, ivi, itum, to go.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	eo, is, it, imus, itis, eunt.	e am, -as, -at, e amus, &c.	i. ite.
<i>Imperf.</i>	ibam, ibas, ibat, ibamus, &c.	irem, ires, iret, iremus, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i>	ibo, ibis, ibit, ibimus, &c.		ito, ito. itote, eunto.
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	iv i, -isti, -it, iv imus, &c.	iv erim, -eris, -erit, iv erimus, &c.	
<i>Past Perf.</i>	iv eram, -eras, -erat, iv eramus, &c.	iv issem, -isses, -isset, iv issemus, &c.	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	iv eroris. &c.		
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	GERUND.
<i>Pres.</i>	ire.	iens (<i>gen.</i> euntis.)	e undi,
<i>Fut.</i>	it urus esse.	it urus.	e undo, &c.
<i>Perf.</i>	iv isse.	SUPINE. itum, itu.	

10. *Quire*, to be able, and *nequire*, to be unable, are inflected like *ire*, but they have no imperative or gerund, and their participles are rarely used. They have some passive forms.

11. For the conjugation of *esse*, see § 100.

Like *esse* are conjugated its compounds, except *prosum* and *possum*.

12. *Prosum*, inserts a *d*, to relieve the pronunciation, wherever the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

Ind. Pres. *pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est, &c.*

“ *Imp.* *prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat, &c.*

13. *Possum* is compounded of *pot*, (stem of *potis*) *able*, and *sum*, *t* before *s* passing into *s*. The *potis* is sometimes written separately, and is then usually indeclinable.

Possum, posse, potu i, I can I am able.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	<i>pos sum, pot es, pot est, pos sumus, pot estis, pos sunt.</i>
Imperf.	<i>pot eram, pot eras, pot erat, pot eramus, &c.</i>
Fut.	<i>pot ero, pot eris, pot erit, pot erimus, -eritis, -erunt.</i>
Perf.	<i>potu i, -isti, -it, potu imus, &c.</i>
Past Perf.	<i>potu eram, eras, erat, potu eramus, &c.</i>
Fut. Perf.	<i>potu ero, -eris, -erit, potu erimus, &c.</i>

<i>pos sim, pos sis, pos sit, pos simus, pos sitis, pos sint. pos sem, pos ses, pos set, pos semus, pos setis, pos sent.</i>
--

potu crim, -eris, -erit, &c.

potu issem, -isses, isset, &c.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *posse.* Perf. *potu isse.*

The participial form *potens*, is used only as an adjective.

§ 112.

EXERCISE 46.

Pueri per silvam densam ibant. Imperatores clari captivos veneno necare nolunt. Ædui crudelitatem Ariovisti, Germanorum regis, ferre non potuerunt. Consul urbem defendere non poterit. Cæsar hieme opus conficere conabitur. Princeps per amicos potens fiebat. Cæsar, cum iis legionibus quas ex hibernis eduxerat, in Galliam ire contendit (hastened.) In hac civitate sunt tria millia (§ 64, 6) hominum (§ 58, 3) qui arma ferre possunt. Imperator a militibus rex (§ 67, 3) factus est. Nemo uno die sapiens fieri potest. Non quisvis orator præstantissimus fieri potest.

Poeta nascitur, non fit. Superbia nobilitatis a plebe ferri non potest.

Translate into Latin.

Who can bear the cruelty of such a king? Can any one (*numquis*) bear the insolence (*insolentia*) of this slave? Who is willing to be slain by a robber? We are unwilling to hold the farmer's bull by the horns. The citizens are unwilling to give their gold to that fellow (§ 83, 2.). Who is unwilling to become rich and powerful? Some of the citizens will be unwilling to bear arms. The prudent leader will not go into the enemy's country (*finis*). Cicero was made consul by the best of the citizens. This boy will become a distinguished poet in a few years. Who can suffer so great a punishment?

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 113. 1. Defective verbs are such as want some of their parts.

2. There are many verbs which are not used in all the tenses. The following list contains such as are most defective:

Odi, <i>I hate.</i>	Fari, <i>to speak.</i>	Cedo, <i>tell, or give me.</i>
Cœpi, <i>I have begun.</i>	Quæso, <i>I beseech.</i>	Confit, <i>it is done.</i>
Memini, <i>I remember.</i>	Ave, { <i>hail.</i>	Desit, <i>it is wanting.</i>
Aio, { <i>I say.</i>	Salvè, {	Infit, <i>he begins.</i>
Inquam, {	Apagè, <i>begone.</i>	Ovat, <i>he rejoices.</i>

Rem. 1. *Odi*, *cœpi*, and *memini* are used for the most part, in the perfect tenses, and hence are sometimes called *preteritive* verbs.

(The pupil will make paradigms by adding the endings of the perfect tenses to the stems *od-*, *cœp-*, and *memin-*.)

Rem. 2. *Odi* has also the participles *os-us*, and *os-urus*, (both active in sense,) and the deponent form *os-us sum*.

Rem. 3. *Cæpi* has also *cæptus* and *cæpturus*.

Rem. 4. *Memini* has the imperative forms *memento*, *mementote*.

Rem. 5. The tenses of *odi* and *memini*, though perfect in form, express incomplete action; thus, *oderam*, I hated; *odero*, I shall hate; *memini*, I have kept in mind, therefore I remember; *memineram*, I remembered. The perfects *novi* and *consuevi* have a similar meaning; thus, *nosco*, I find out, *novi*, I have found out, *I know*; *consuesco*, I accustom myself; *consuevi*, I am accustomed.

3. *Ind. Pres.* ai-o*, ais, ait, —, —, ai-unt.*

Ind. Imperf. ai-ebam, ai-ebas, &c.

Subj. Pres. — ai-as, ai-at, —, —, ai-ant.

Imper. Pres. ai *Part.* ai-ens.

4. *Ind. Pres.* inquam, inquis, inquit, inquitumus, &c.

Ind. Imperf. —, —, inquiebat or inquitbat, —, —, inquit-ebant.

Ind. Futur. inquit-es, inquit-et. —, —, —.

Ind. Pres. Perf. —, inquit-is-ti, inquit, —, —, —.

Sub. Pres. —, inquit-as, inquit-at, —, inquit-atis, inquit-ant.

Imper. —, inquit, inquitito.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	IMPER.	PARTICIPLES.
5. <i>Pres.</i> —, —, fatur.	_____	fare,	fantis, &c. without nom.
<i>Fut.</i> fabor, —, fabitur.	_____	INFIN.	fatus, fandus;
<i>Pres-Perf.</i> fatus sum, &c.	fatus sim, &c.	fari.	GERUND, fandi, &c.
<i>Past-Perf.</i> fatus eram, &c.	fatus essem, &c.		SUPINE, fatu.

Some other forms are used in the compounds, though all of them are defective.

6. *Ind. Pres.* Quæso, —, quæsit, quæsumus, —, —.

Inf. Pres. Quæs-ere.

7. *Imper.* av-e, av-eto, av-ete. *Inf.* av-ere.

8. *Imper.* salv-e, salv-ete, salv-eto.

Inf. salv-ere. *Ind. Fut.* salv-ebis.

9. *Imper.* apage; an old form, used as an interjection.

10. *Imper.* 2d. sing. cedo; pl. cete, contracted for cedite.

11. *Ind. Pres.* confit. *Fut.* confiet.

Subj. Pres. confi-at. *Imperf.* confi-eret. *Inf. Pres.* con-fieri.

12. *Ind. Pres.* defit, de-fiunt. *Fut.* de-fiet.

Subj. Pres. de-fiat. *Inf. Pres.* de-fi-eri.

13. *Ind. Pres.* in-fit, in-fiunt.

14. *Ind. Pres.* ov-at. *Subj. Pres.* ov-et. *Imperf.* ov-aret.

*i between two vowels is pronounced like y; a-ye, a-yunt, a-yebam.

15. To these may be added,

forem, fores, foret, —, —, forent, same as essem.

¶ *Inf. fore, same as futururus esse.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 114. 1. Verbs used only in the third person, and not admitting of a *personal* subject, are called *Impersonal*.

2. An infinitive, or a sentence used as a noun, is usually the subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice. In English the pronoun *it* usually stands before the verb, as, *Caium scribere delectat, it delights Caius to write.*

3. The various tenses of impersonal verbs are formed by adding the endings of the third person singular to the proper tense stem.

ENDINGS.

1ST CONJ. 2D CONJ. 3D CONJ. 4TH CONJ.

	<i>Inf. Præs. are.</i>		<i>Inf. Præs. ere.</i>		<i>Inf. Præs. ere.</i>		<i>Inf. Præs. ire.</i>	
	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.
Pres.	-at.	-et.	-et.	-eat.	-it.	-at.	-it.	-iat.
Imp.	-abat.	-aret.	-ebat.	-eret.	-ebat.	-eret.	-iebat.	-iret.
Fut.	abit.		-ebit.		-et.		-iet.	

Ind. Præs. Perf. -it; Past Perf. -erat; Fut. Perf. -erit

Subj. " " -erit; " " -isset. Inf. Perf. -isse.

(The pupil will add these endings to the stems :

- 1st. conj. juv-, [*perf. juv-*] of juv-at, *it pleases, delights.*
 2nd. " dec-, [*perf. dec-u-*] of dec-et, *it becomes.*
 3rd. " conting-, [*perf. contig-*] of conting-it, *it happens.*
 4th. " even-, [*perf. even-*] of evenit, *it turns out, happens.)*

4. Many verbs, not strictly impersonal, are used impersonally; as, *delectat, it delights.*

5. Most *intransitive*, and many *transitive* verbs are used impersonally in the passive voice, the agent being either omitted, or put in the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as, *Helvetii fortiter pugnaverunt*; pass., *ab Helvetiis fortiter pugnatum est*, the Helvetians fought bravely, or it was fought bravely by the Helvetians.

§ 115.

EXERCISE 47.

Pugn-are, *to fight*.

Consul-ere, (consulu-, consult-,) *to consult*.

Ven-ire, (ven-, vent-,) *to come*.

Ire, (§ 111, 9,) *to go*.

Vesper-, -er-i, *evening*.

Calamitas, -at-is, *disaster*.

Acri-ter, (adv.) *actively, fiercely*.

Ab utrisque, *by both parties*.

Utrinque, (adv.) *on both sides*.

Diu, (adv.) *a long time*.

In-ferre, (intul-, illat-,) *to bring upon, inflict*. See § 111, 6.

Rem. Impersonal verbs which are *transitive* in meaning, have a direct object in the accusative.

Translate into English and analyze.

Liberos decet parentes suos amare. Regem non decet leges civitatis violare. Bella magna gerere Romanos delectabat. Diu et acriter ab utrisque pugnatum* est. Ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum* erat. Eodem die quo (§ 167) in fines Sequanorum ventum est,* principes Galliae ad eum convenerunt. A consulibus de republica consultum est.* Cantum avium audire poetam juvat. Te non decet nobis bellum inferre. Delectat-ne te maximas (§ 72, 5,) calamitates reipublicae intulisse?

Translate into Latin.

It becomes masters to give food to their servants. It becomes no one (*nemo*) to do an injury. It delights this wicked chief to burn prisoners with fire. It was fought fiercely by both parties from the fourth hour till (*to*) sunset. The noble chief will consult (*express it impersonally*)

* 114, 5.

concerning the safety of the commonwealth. It does not become a judge to receive a bribe (*pecuniam*). This wicked centurion has brought a great disaster upon the army.

PARTICLES.

§ 116. Those parts of speech which are not inflected, are called *particles*. They are *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

ADVERBS.

§117. 1. An adverb is a word used to limit the meaning of a verb, adjective, or another adverb. Some adverbs also limit nouns.

2. In respect to form adverbs are *primitive* or *derivative*.

3. In respect to meaning adverbs may be divided into several classes; as,

TEMPORAL, denoting time; as, *hodie*, to-day; *cras*, to-morrow.

LOCAL, denoting place; as, *ibi*, there; *inde*, thence.

MODAL, denoting manner; as, *bene*, well; *male*, badly.

NEGATIVE; as, *non*, not; *ne-quidem*, not even.

4. Some adverbs are also correlative, and such are derived from pronouns.

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROG.	DEFINITE.
{ <i>ibi</i> , <i>there</i> .	{ <i>ubi</i> , <i>where</i> .	<i>ubi</i> , <i>where?</i>	{ <i>alicubi</i> , <i>somewhere</i> .
{ <i>ibidem</i> , <i>just there</i> .	{ <i>ubicunque</i> , <i>wherever</i> .		{ <i>ubique</i> , <i>everywhere</i> .
{ <i>inde</i> , <i>thence</i> .	{ <i>unde</i> , <i>whence</i> .	<i>unde?</i>	{ <i>ubivis</i> , <i>wherever you please</i> .
{ <i>indec.</i>	{ <i>undecumque</i> .		{ <i>alicunde</i> ,
			{ <i>undique</i> ,
			{ <i>undevis</i> .
{ <i>eo</i> , <i>to this place</i> .	{ <i>quo</i> , <i>whither</i> .	<i>quod?</i>	{ <i>aliquo</i> ,
{ <i>eodem</i> .	{ <i>quoquo</i> .		{ <i>quovis</i> ,
	{ <i>quocumque</i> .		{ <i>quolibet</i> .
<i>tum</i> , <i>then</i> .	<i>cum</i> or <i>quum</i> , <i>when</i> .	<i>quando?</i>	{ <i>aliquando</i> ,
	{ <i>quando</i> , <i>when</i> .		{ <i>quandolibet</i> .
	{ <i>quandoque</i> .		
	{ <i>quandocumque</i> .		

5. Derivative adverbs are formed for the most part from adjectives and participles by adding *-e* to the stem if the primitive be of the second declension; and *-iter*, (sometimes *-ter*) if the primitive be of the third declension; as, *liber*, free;—adv. *liber-e*, freely; *brevi*, short; *breviter*, shortly.

6. Some adverbs are derived from nouns by adding *-tus* or *-tim* to the stem with a connecting vowel; as, *cæl-i-tus* (*cæl-um*) from heaven; *greg-a-tim*, (*grex*) in flocks.

7. Cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns are used as adverbs; as, *noctu*, by night; *multum*, much; *multo*, by much; *eo*, (old accusative, for *eon*,) to that place.

EXERCISE 48.

§ 118. 1. *Rule of Syntax*. Intransitive verbs, though they do not admit of a direct object, may have a remote object in the dative.

2. *Rule of Syntax*. The dative expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage anything is, or is done. (Dative of ADVANTAGE or DISADVANTAGE.)

3. *Rule of Position*. The adverb usually precedes the word it limits; but *fere* usually stands between the adjective and noun; as, *omnes fere homines*, almost all men.

NOTE. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin.

Vocabulary.

Fort-iter. [fort-is,] *bravely.*

Celer-iter. [celer,] *swiftly.*

Beat-e. [beat-us,] *happily.*

Ben-e, [bon-us,] *well.*

Fere. *almost.*

Greg-atim, [grex,] *in flocks.*

Paul-atim, [paul-us,] *by degrees.*

Facil-e, [facil-is,] *easily.*

Sæpe, *frequently.*

Ne—quidem, [the word which it limits
always placed between,] *not even.*

Audac-ter, [audax,] *boldly.*

Gener-atim, [genus,] *by tribes.*

Repente, [repens,] *suddenly.*

Acced-ere, [access- access-] *to come up.*

Viv-ere, [vix- viet-] *to live.*

Constitu-ere, [constitu- constitut-] *to establish, to post.*

Curr-ere, [cucurr- curs-] *to run.*

Per-fring-ere, [freg- fract-] *to break through.*

Phalanx, phalang-is, *phalanx.*

Par-ere, [paru- parit-] *intr., to obey.*

Indulg-ere, [induls- indult-] *intr. to indulge*

Noc-ere, [nocu- nocit-] *intr., to hurt.*

Præcip-ere, [præcipu-us,] *especially.*

Cred-ere, [credid- credit-] *intr., to believe.*

Pro-curr-ere, [-cucurr- & -curr-, curs-] *to run forward.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Nostri totum diem fortiter pugnauerant. Hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt. Qui bene vivit (§87.7,) beate vivit. Omnia fere animalia gregatim currunt. Imperator paulatim exercitum in unum locum conducebat. Nostri facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Filium decet patri suo parere. Galli cum Germanis sæpe contendebant. Ne Cæsar quidem hanc civitatem vincere potest. Milites ad muros oppidi audacter accesserunt. Tum Germani copias suas generatim constituerunt. Cæsar huic legioni precipue indulserat. Quis nostrum (§58.3,) isti (§83.2,) credit? Num (§80.3,) bonum delectat aliis nocere?

Translate into Latin.

To live well is to live happily. Wicked men always injure (*nocere*) themselves. Our men ran forward suddenly and swiftly, and easily routed the enemy's footmen. The cavalry of the Thracians came up boldly to the very (*ipse*) gates of the city. I will not believe even the consul himself. The prudent general was unwilling to lead his army through the by-paths of the forest. This boy can easily swim across a very deep river. The enemy will not attempt to break through our line-of-battle.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 119. Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. The comparative is like the neuter comparative of the adjective; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *us* into *e*; as, *facile, facilius, facillime; celeriter, celerius, celerissime*.

Rem. 1. The superlative of the adverb sometimes ends in *o* or *um*; as, *meritissimo, primum*.

Rem. 2. If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, that of the adverb is so likewise; as, *bene, melius, optime; male, pejus, pessime; parum, minus, minime; multum, plus, plurimum; prius, primo or primum; ocus, ocissime; deterius, deterrime; potius, potissime or potissimum; merito, meritissimo; satis, satius. Magis, maxime*, has no positive; and *nuper, nuperrime*, has no comparative.

Rem. 3. Notice also the following: *prope, propius, proxime; diu, diutius, diutissime; saepe, sæpius, sæpissime; secus, secius*.

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 120. Prepositions express the relation between a noun or pronoun and some other word.

1. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative:

ad, to, towards, at.
adversus, } against,
adversum, } towards.
apud, at, with.
circa, } around,
circum, } around.
ciriter, about, near.
cis, } on this side,
citra, } on this side.
contra, against.
erga, towards.

extra, without, beyond.
infra, under, beneath.
inter, between, among.
intra, within.
juxta, next to.
ob, for, on account of.
penes, in the power of.
per, through.
pone, behind.

post, after, since.
præter, past, besides.
prope, near.
propter, on account of.
secundum, after, next to, according to.
supra, above.
trans, over, beyond.
ultra, beyond.

2. Twelve prepositions are followed by the ablative.

a, } from, after, by.	coram, in presence of.	palam, in presence of.
ab, }	cum, with.	præ, before, in comparison.
abs, }	de, down from, after, concerning.	with.
absque, but for.	e, } out of.	pro, before, for, instead of
clam, without the knowledge of.	ex, }	sine, without.
		tenus, up to.

3. Four prepositions are followed by the accusative, when *motion to a place* is implied; the ablative, when *rest in a place* is implied:

in, in, on; into, upon.
sub, under, near.

super, over, above.
subter, under, beneath.

Rem. 1. *Clam* is sometimes followed by the accusative.

Rem. 2. *Tenus* is placed after its case; and *cum* is annexed to the ablative of the substantive personal and relative pronouns.

Rem. 3. *A* and *e* are used only before consonants; *ab* and *ex*, before vowels and consonants.

The pupil will learn the various other meanings of the prepositions from observation.

§ 21.

EXERCISE 49.

*Bene, [adv.], well.
*Male, [adv.], badly, unfortunately.
*Parum, [adv.], little.
*Magis, [adv.], more.
*Longe, [adv.], far.
*Prope, [adv.], near.
Placere [placui, placit.] to please.
Displicere, [placui, placit.] to displease.
Dubitatio, -on-is, doubt.
Ullus, a, um, [§ 56.] any.

Neque, (conj.) and—not, neither.
Fugere, (-io, fug-, fugit-) to flee.
Comme-are, to go back and forth.
Desistere, (destit-, destit-) to cease.
Ab-esse, (§ 111, 11,) to be away, to be distant.
Cultus, -us, civilization.
Humanitas, -tat-is, -is, refinement.
Conjicere, [-io, conjec-, conjecit-] to hurl.
Telum, i, a dart.
Consilium, i, wisdom, prudence.

Translate into English and analyze.

Omnium qui in Gallia habitant, fortissimi sunt Belgæ. A cultu atque humanitate provinciæ longissime absunt. Ad eos mercatores minime sæpe commeant. Non minus fortes fuerunt Galli quam Romani. Horas (§ 153) sex acriter utrimque pugnatum erat (§ 114, 5), neque hostes

* See § 119.

nostrorum impetum diutius sustinere potuerunt. Equites Ariovisti propius accesserunt, ac lapides tela-que in nostrós coniecerunt. Ariovistus magis consilio quam virtute Eduos vicit.

Translate into Latin.

Without any doubt virtue is a more excellent thing (*præstantius*) than gold. This song displeases me (dative, § 118, 1) more than that (one) pleases me. The Belgians were farther away than the Æduans from the civilization and refinement of the Roman province. Through the whole night the enemy did not cease to flee. The boys came up nearer, and boldly hurled stones and darts upon the fierce wild boar. Which of us can fight without arms? Orgetorix was far the noblest and richest (man) among (*apud*) the Helvetians.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§ 122. Most prepositions are used as prefixes, in composition with other words. The following are called *inseparable* prepositions, because they are never found alone :

ambi, or amb, (ambo) around, about.	re, or red, again, back.
di, or dis, asunder.	se, apart, aside.
con,* together.	ve, not.

EXERCISE 50.

Hand, [adv.], not. Generally used with adverbs.	Jub-cre, [juss-, juss-,] to order.
Inter se, among themselves, with one another, from one another.	Con-ven-ire, [-ven-, -vent-,] to come together.
Gallicus, a, um, Gallic.	Con-duc-ere, [con-dux-, -duct-,] to lead together.
Philosophus, i, philosopher.	Dit-ferre, [dis-tul-, di-lat-,] to defer.
Reliquus, a, um, remaining.	Dis-sent-ire, [dissent-, dissens-,] to disagree.
Belgæ reliqui, the rest of the Belgians.	• differ in opinion.
Aer, aer-is, the air.	Con-jung-ere, [conjunct-, conjunct-,] to join.
Cælum, i, [pl. i or a.] heaven.	Con-jur-are, to swear together, conspire.
	Se-ced-ere, [secess-, secess-,] to secede.
	Se-cern-ere, [secrev-, secret-,] to separate.

* Always written cum, when standing alone.

Translate into English and analyze.

Magister hunc puerum hand minus quam filium suum amat. Cæsar omnes Galliæ principes ad se convenire (§ 85, 2) jussit. Germani non multum (§ 66, 2) a Gallica consuetudine differunt. Exercitus unum in locum a legato paulatim conducebatur. Omnes Belgæ in armis sunt, Germanique, qui eis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his conjunxerunt. Remi contra populum Romanum cum Belgis reliquis non conjuraverant. Aer cælum a terris secernit. Philosophi de natura deorum inter se semper dissenserunt.

Translate into Latin.

The general ordered the first line (*aciés*) to retreat to (*in*) the mountain. The common people frequently seceded from the nobility. The shepherds had separated the sheep from the kids. The Remians differed in opinion from the rest of the Belgians. These wicked citizens are conspiring against the republic. The Germans will not easily break through our line. The enemy's forces are not far from the town.

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 123. Conjunctions connect words and sentences. They are commonly divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE, which connect things that are to be considered together—(*and*); they are, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *etiam*, *quoque*, *item*, and *itidem*.

Rem. 1. *Et* connects things which are independent of each other, and of equal importance; as, *M. Pisone et M. Mesala consulibus*. *Et—et* is to be translated *both—and*; as, *et rex et regina*, *both the king and the queen*. It sometimes means *also*.

Rem. 2. *Que* (enclitic) introduces a mere appendage, the two con-

stituting but one idea, and is rather adjunctive than copulative; as, *gladiis pilisque—offensive armor.*

Rem. 3. *Atque*, (used before vowels or consonants,) contracted into *ac* (used before consonants only,) is compounded of *ad* and *que*, and means *and in addition*: it usually introduces something of greater importance; as, *in hostes impetum fecit atque eos fugavit*,—and routed them too. *Cognostine hos versus? Ac memoriter.* “—and that too by heart.” This peculiar force is often lost in *ac*, and it is used alternately with *et*; it is preferred in subdivisions, the main propositions being connected by *et*. *Difficile est tantam causam et diligentia consequi, et memoria complecti, et oratione expromere et voce ac viribus sustinere.*

Rem. 4. *Næque* or *nec*, and not, compounded of *ne* and *que*, when repeated, is translated neither—nor. *Et non* is used instead when only one word, and not a whole sentence, is to be negated; as *pator et non molesto fero*. *Et non* is frequently used also when *et* precedes. *Nec non, neque non*, the two negatives destroying each other, is equivalent to *et*; but is used, in classical prose, only to connect sentences, and the two words are separated.

Rem. 5. *Etiam* (*et-jam*), also, even, has a wider meaning than *quoque*, and adds a new circumstance, while *quoque* is used when a thing of a similar kind is added.

Rem. 6. The copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted in animated discourse. *Copias suas in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit*. This omission is called *asyndeton* (not-tied-together.)

2. **DISJUNCTIVE**, which connect things that are to be considered separately, (*either, or*); they are *aut, vel, ve, sive, seu*, and the interrogative particle *an*.

Rem. 7. *Aut*, either, or, expresses an essential difference in things, and ordinarily implies that one thing excludes another; as, *aut vivit aut mortuus est*, he is *either* living or dead. *Aut* and *ve* serve to continue a negation, where in English we use *nor*; as, *Verres non Honori aut Virtuti vota debebat*.

Rem. 8. *Vel*, on the other hand, (akin to *velle*,) indicates a difference of expression merely, and is used where either of two or more

things may be taken indifferently. *Conjunctio tectorum oppidum vel urbs appellatur*,—a town, or city (whichever you please.) *Vel imperatore, vel milite me utimini*. When one of the alternatives is omitted, *vel* often has the sense of *even*. *Volo ut opperiare sex dies modo. Vel sex menses opperibor*, “I wish you to wait six days only.”—“I will wait *even* six months,” i. e. six days or six months, if you choose. *Ve* is merely *vel* apocopated.

Rem. 9. *Sive, seu, or if, whether, or*, is strictly either conditional or interrogative, and when used as a simple disjunctive always implies a doubt, at least in the earlier writers. Thus, *Cæsar, B. G. Sive casu, sive deorum immortalium providentia. Sive timore perterriti, sive spe salutis inducti*; (“perhaps by one, perhaps by the other,—I do not know by which.”)

3. **ADVERSATIVE**, which express opposition of thought, (*but*); they are *sed, autem, verum, vero, at* and its compounds, *tamen* and its compounds, and *ceterum*.

Rem. 10. *Sed* denotes strong and direct opposition. *Vera dico, sed nequidquam, quoniam non vis credere. Non bestia, sed homo*.

Rem. 11. *Autem* adds something that is different, without setting aside what precedes; (*on the contrary, however, on the other hand, but*.) *Gyges a nullo videbatur; ipse autem omnia videbat*. Frequently it simply marks a transition, or adds a more important circumstance, (*moreover, furthermore*).

Rem. 12. *Verum*, (*as to the truth, in fact, but*), is nearly the same in meaning as *sed*. It is strengthened by *enim, vero, enimvero*; (*but indeed, but in fact, but assuredly*.)

Rem. 13. *Vero*, (*in truth, assuredly, but, however*), does not express as strong opposition as *verum*, just as *autem* is weaker than *sed*. *Ubi per exploratores Cæsar certior factus est tres jam copiarum partes Helvetius id flumen transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse*.—“That the fourth part, *however*, &c.”

Rem. 14. *At* does not, like *sed*, alter or set aside what precedes, but expresses a contrast, often a strong one. *Brevis a natura nobis vita data est, at memoria bene redditæ vitæ sempiterna*. It frequently follows *si* in the sense of *at least*: *etsi non sapientissimus at amicis-*

simus. It frequently introduces an objection, and *enim* is then often added to assign a reason for the objection: "at *sumus*," *inquunt*, "*civitatis principes*."

Rem. 15. *Atqui* admits what precedes, but opposes something else to it. *Magnum narras, vix credibile: atqui sic habet*;—"yet such is the fact." It is used in hypothetical syllogisms, when a thing is assumed which had before been left undecided. *Quodsi virtutes sunt pares inter se, pari etiam vitia esse necesse est: atqui pares esse virtutes facile potest perspicui*.

Rem. 16. *Ceterum*, literally, "as to the rest," is frequently used in the sense of *sed*.

4. CAUSAL, which express a cause or reason (*for, because*); they are, *nam, namque, enim, etenim, quia, quod, quoniam, quippe, quam, quando, quando-quidem, siquidem*.

Rem. 17. *Nam, namque, enim, and etenim*, "for," are rather corroborative or confirmatory than causal conjunctions; i. e. they adduce a proof rather than state a cause.

Nam shows the grounds of a preceding assertion: so also *enim*, except that the assertion must frequently be supplied by the mind. *Enim* is originally only a corroborative adverb, *truly, certainly, to-be-sure, indeed*. In *namque* and *etenim*, *que* and *et* repeat the preceding assertion, while *nam* and *enim* introduce the proof.

Rem. 18. *Quod* (acc. sing. neut. of *qui*) means originally *with respect to what, in what respect, in that*; and hence its causal meaning, *in as much as, because*. *Quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionem vergit, maturæ sunt hiemes*. It is very often preceded by *propterea, hoc, ob hanc causam*, and similar causal expressions.

Rem. 19. *Quod* is very often used merely to connect a sentence with that which precedes, and may be translated "and" or "but," especially with *si, nisi, &c.* In such cases it is a relative pronoun, accusative of limitation, (§ 155.) *Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet. Quod si furore et amentia impulsus bellum intulisset*.

Rem. 20. *Quia* (acc. pl. neut. of *qui*) has the same origin as *quod*, but is purely causal (*because*), and never has the sense of *that*, or *in that*, like *quod*. When contrasted with *quod*, it expresses a real mo-

tive or reason, while *quod* expresses merely an alleged or pretended reason: (*non quod* —, *sed quia*.)

Rem. 21. *Quoniam*, (*quum—jam*,) introduces a well-known reason, *since then, since as everybody knows*.

Rem. 22. *Quippe* is originally a corroborative adverb, (*indeed*,) and hence derives its causal meaning. It is frequently united with relative words to express a subjective reason.

Rem. 23. In *quum*, *quando*, *quandoquidem*, the causal idea is derived from that of time; (compare the English *since*.) *Siquidem* is conditional originally, (though the antepenult has become short.)

Antiquissimum e doctis genus est poetarum, *siquidem* (if indeed, as every one admits,—since,) *Homerus fuit et Hesiodus ante Romam conditam*.

5. **CONCLUSIVE**, which express a conclusion or inference, (*therefore*); they are, *ergo*, *eo*, *ideo*, *idcirco*, *igitur*, *itaque*, *proinde*, *propterea*, and the relative words *quapropter*, *quare*, *quamobrem*, *quocirca*, *unde*.

Rem. 24. *Ergo* and *igitur* express a logical consequence. (*therefore*,) while *itaque* expresses a natural consequence, (*and so*.) *Ergo* and *eo* are causal ablatives, and all the other conclusives may be considered adverbial expressions of cause or result, limiting the predicate.

6. **FINAL**, which express purpose or result,—end, (*that, in order that*); they are, *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quominus*, *neve*, *neu*.

7. **CONDITIONAL**, which express a condition (*if, unless*); they are, *si*, *sin*, *nisi*, or *ni*, *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*.

8. **CONCESSIVE**, which express something granted (*although*); they are, *etsi*, *quanquam*, *tametsi*, *tamenstsi*, *etiamsi*, *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibet*; *ut* and *quum*, in the sense of *although*.

9. TEMPORAL, expressing time, (*when, as soon as, after, before*); they are, *quum, ut, ubi, postquam, posteaquam, antequam, priusquam, quando, simulac, simul, dum, donec, quoad*.

10. COMPARATIVE, expressing comparison (*than, as*); they are, *quam, sicut, velut, prout, tanquam, quasi, utsi, acsi*, with *ac* and *atque*, in the sense of *as* or *than*.

Rem 25. The following conjunctions stand always at the beginning of a sentence, viz.: *et, etenim, ac, at, atque, atqui, neque, nec, aut, vel, sive, sin, sed, nam, verum*, and the relatives *quare, quocirca, quomobrem*.

Rem 26. *Enim, autem*, and *vero* are placed after the first word, or the second, if the first two belong together; rarely after three or more words.

Rem 27. The other conjunctions usually stand at the beginning, unless some word or expression is especially emphatic, and is therefore placed first in the sentence.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ 124. Interjections are used to express strong or sudden emotion; as, *Væ nobis!* Woe to us!

SYNTAX.

§ 125. 1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A sentence is a thought expressed in words; as, *snow melts*.

3. Every sentence consists of

(a.) A *predicate*; i. e. that which is *declared*;

(b.) A *subject*; i. e. that of which the declaration is made.

4. The predicate is a verb alone, (as *melts*, in the above

example,) or the verb *esse*, *to be*, with a noun, adjective, or participle; as, *nix gelida est*, snow is cold.

5. The subject is a noun, or some word or phrase used as a noun, and may be known by asking the question *who?* or *what?* with the predicate; as, *John runs*. (*Who runs? John.*) *To play is pleasant*. (*What is pleasant? To play.*)

6. The subject and predicate may stand alone, or each may have words or sentences limiting its meaning. Thus, *Prima luce, quum mons a Tito Labieno teneretur, idem Considius qui cum exploratoribus præmissus erat, equo admisso, ad Cæsarem, accurrit*. *At daylight, when the mountain was held by Titus Labienus, the same Considius who had been sent forward with the scouts, runs to Cæsar with his horse at full speed.*

Here the leading thought is *Considius accurrit*, *Considius runs*. The subject is limited by the adjective *idem*, and the adjective sentence, *qui—præmissus erat*. The predicate is limited by *prima luce*, designating the point of time when Considius ran; by *quum mons teneretur*, farther specifying the time or circumstances of the running; by *equo admisso*, participial sentence, expressing the manner of the running,—an adverbial limitation; and by *ad Cæsarem*, the point to which the running was directed.

7. A sentence consisting of a single subject, and a single predicate, is commonly called a *simple* sentence; and one which consists of *two or more* simple sentences combined, is commonly called a *compound* sentence.

AGREEMENT.

§ 126. RULE I. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

Rem. 1. (1.) If the subject consists of more than one, the verb is

plural; as, *Furor iraque mentem praecipitant*, Fury and rage hurry on my mind. Hence,

• (a.) A collective noun *may* have a plural verb.

(b.) A noun connected to an ablative with *cum* often has a plural verb; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus postremam aciem invadunt*, Bocchus and the footmen attack the rear.

(c. A plural verb is sometimes used with *uterque* and *quisque*.

(2.) But the verb often agrees with the nearest nominative, especially when the nouns denote things without life; as, *Mens, enim, et ratio, et consilium in senibus est*, For mind, and skill, and wisdom are in old men.

(3.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

APPOSITION.

§ 127. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in *apposition* with it.

RULE II. Nouns in apposition agree in case; as, *Jugurtha rex*, Jugurtha the king.

Rem. 1. A noun in apposition often expresses character, purpose, time, cause, &c.; as, *Cicero praetor legem Manilianam suavit, consul conjurationem, Catalinae oppressit*; Cicero, when praetor (or, as praetor) advocated the Manilian law, when consul, &c.

Rem. 2. The personal pronoun is often omitted before a noun in apposition with it; as, *Consul dixi*, I, the consul, have said.

Rem. 3. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is put in the plural; as, *Jugurtha et Bocchus, reges*, Jugurtha and Bocchus, kings.

Rem. 4. The ablative is used in apposition with the name of a town in the genitive; (see Rule XXXI. Exc.) as, *Corinthis, Achaiae urbe*, at Corinth, city of Achaia.

Rem. 5. A noun may be in apposition with a sentence; as, *Cogitet oratorem institui,—rem arduam*; Let him reflect that an orator is training,—a difficult thing.

Rem. 6. Expressions denoting the *parts* are often placed in apposition with a noun denoting the *whole*,—*Partitive apposition*,—as, *Onerariæ, pars maxima ad Ægimurum*,—*aliæ adversus urbem ipsam delatæ sunt*; the transports were carried, the greatest part to Ægimurum,—others, opposite the city itself. *Quisque* in partitive apposition with a noun is in the nominative; as, *Multis sibi quisque imperium pcentibus*, While many were seeking power, each for himself.

Rem. 7. A proper name with *nomen* or *cognomen* may be, (a.) in the same case: as, *Nomen Arcturus mihi est*, I have the name Arcturus;—(b.) in the genitive; as, *Nomen Arcturi*, &c.;—(c.) by attraction, in the dative, if the verb is followed by a dative; as, *Nomen Arcturo mihi est*, I have the name Arcturus.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. An adjective may limit the subject; as, *puella pulchra saltat*, the beautiful girl dances;—or it may form part of the predicate; as, *puella pulchra est*, the girl is beautiful. In either case

RULE III. Adjective words agree with the nouns to which they refer, in gender, number, and case.

Rem. 1. An adjective belonging to two or three nouns is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective is of that gender; as, *Lupus et agnus siti compulsi*. A wolf and a lamb compelled by thirst. When the nouns are of different genders. If

(a.) they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as, *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*, My father and mother are dead.

(b.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; *Ira et avaritia imperio potentiora erant*, Rage and avarice were stronger than government.

(c.) If names of living things and things without life are combined, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of the living being. *Numidæ atque signa militaria obscurati sunt*, The Numidians and their military standards were concealed. (Here the idea of *persons* is uppermost.) *Inimica sunt libera civitas et rex*, A free state and a king are hostile things.

Rem. 2. The adjective, however, often agrees with the nearest noun.

Rem. 3. An adjective word, (especially in the predicate,) often agrees with the *sense* of the noun rather than its form, (*constructio ad synesin*.) As, *Pars in flumen acti sunt*, Part were driven into the river.

Rem. 4. An adjective word in the predicate, instead of agreeing with the subject, often agrees

(a.) With a noun in apposition with the subject, (especially the words *urbs, oppidum*); as, *Corinthis, lumen Græciæ, extinctum est*, Corinth, the light of Greece, was destroyed, [put out.]

(b.) With a predicate noun; as, *Gens universa Veneti appellati*, The whole race were called *Veneti*.

Rem. 5. An adjective without a noun is often used as a noun or adverb.

Rem. 6. In general expressions an adjective in the predicate is often neuter; as, *Lupus triste est stabulis*, The wolf is a sad thing to the folds.

Rem. 7. A possessive pronoun, being equivalent to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, may have an adjective word in the genitive agreeing with it; as, *mea ipsius causa*, for my own sake;—or a noun in the genitive in apposition with it; as, *tuus, viri fortis, gladius*.

Rem. 8. The adjectives *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, intimus, infimus, imus, summus, supremus, reliquus*, and *cetera*, express the first part, middle part, &c.; as, *summus mons*, the top of the mountain.

Rem. 9. An adjective often agrees with the subject, but limits the predicate; as, *Pronus cecidit*, he fell headlong.

RELATIVES.

§ 129. RULE IV. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case depends upon the construction of the relative sentence. As,

Ego qui scribo,

I who write.

Vos qui scribitis,

You who write.

Puella quam vidi,

The girl whom I saw.

Rem. 1. The antecedent is so called because it usually goes before the relative sentence. But it also stands,

(a) In the relative sentence especially when this latter is emphatic; *In quem primum egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur*, The place upon which they first disembarked is called Troy!

(b) Both in the principal and relative sentence; as *Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent*.

Rem. 2. The antecedent, especially when indefinite, is often omitted; as, *Qui bene vivit, beate vivit*.

Rem. 3. ATTRACTION. The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent; as, *raptim quibus, quisque poterat clatis*. The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; as, *urbem quam statuo vestra est*.

Rem. 4. The relative often agrees with a noun in apposition with the antecedent; as, *flumen Rhenus, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit*.

Rem. 5. A relative or demonstrative usually agrees with a predicate noun after the verb *esse* or a verb of naming, esteeming, &c., instead of agreeing with the antecedent; as, *Theba, quod Bæotiae caput est. Animal quem vocamus hominem*.

But if the predicate noun is a foreign word, the relative agrees with the antecedent; as, *genus hominum quod Helotes vocatur*.

Rem. 6. A numeral, comparative, or superlative, which in English limits the antecedent, is usually placed in the relative sentence; as, *nocte quam in terris ultimam egit*, on the last night which he spent on earth. Other adjectives have sometimes a similar position.

Rem. 7. The relative often agrees with the sense of the antecedent, instead of its form, [*Constructio ad synesin*]; as, *Cæsar equitatum præmittit qui videant*.

Rem. 8. An explanatory noun is often introduced into the relative sentence; as, *ante comitia, quod tempus haud longe aberat*.

Rem. 9. *Qui* at the beginning of a sentence is often translated like a demonstrative; as, *Quibus rebus cognitis*, these things being found out. Here also observe the idiomatic expression, *quæ est temperantia*, or *qua es temperantia* [ablative of quality], instead of *pro tua temper-*

antia; as, *tu, quæ est temperantia, jam vales, you, such is your temperance, are already well.*

Rem. 10. The adverbial is often used for the adjectival relative; as, *locus unde venit, the place from which he came.*

THE CASES. NOMINATIVE.

§ 130. 1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, and is called the *subject nominative*.

● 2. A noun in the predicate denoting the same thing as the subject, after a verb expressing an incomplete idea, is in the nominative, and is called the *predicate nominative*; as, *Caius et Lucius fratres fuerunt.*

3. A predicate nominative is used with verbs denoting, *to be, to become, to appear, to be named, to be called, to be esteemed, &c.*

Rem. 1. The verb sometimes agrees with the predicate nominative; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love.*

Rem. 2. If the subject is in the accusative, the predicate noun must be in the accusative also; as, *dicit Cæsarem esse regem, he says that Cæsar is a king.*

Rem. 3. When the subject of the infinitive is omitted, a predicate noun or adjective is often put in the dative, if a dative precedes; as *nemini medio esse licet, no man may be neutral.*

THE GENITIVE.

§ 131. The genitive case expresses the precise limit within which the meaning of a word is to be taken.

Thus, in the expression *amor gloriæ*, the genitive, *gloriæ*, expresses the limit within which the meaning of *amor* is restricted.

RULE V. The genitive is used to limit the meaning of nouns, and also of some adjectives, verbs, and adverbs.

Rem. 1. The genitive is said to be *subjective* when it expresses that which does something, or to which something pertains or belongs; as, *Ciceronis orationes*, Cicero's orations. It is *objective* when it expresses the object to which an action or feeling is directed; as, *amor gloriæ*, the love of glory.

Rem. 2. A noun may be limited both by a subjective and objective genitive; as, *Cæsaris amor gloriæ*, Cæsar's love of glory.

Rem. 3. Instead of an objective genitive a preposition with its case is often used to avoid ambiguity; as, *amor in rempublicam*, or *erga rempublicam*, love towards the state.

Rem. 4. The genitive of a substantive pronoun is usually objective; as, *cura mei*, care for me;—while possessive adjectives and pronouns usually express subjective relations; as, *cura mea*, my care; *causa regia*, the king's cause. But the latter are sometimes objective; as, *mea injuria*, injury done to me; *metus hostilis*, fear of the enemy.

§ 132. RULE VI. *Genitive of Quality.* The genitive, limited by an adjective agreeing with it, is used to express the quality of a thing; as,

Vir magnæ virtutis, A man of great valor.

The ablative is used in the same way.

Rem. 1. This genitive may limit a noun, or form part of the predicate, like an adjective; as, *Maximi animi fuit*, He was very brave.

§ 133. RULE VII. *Genitive of Property.* The genitive, the limited noun being omitted, is used with the verb *esse* to denote that to which something belongs, or to which something is peculiar; as,

Hæc domus Marci est, This house is Mark's [house.]

Pauperis est numerare pecus, { It is characteristic of a poor man to count his flock.

Rem. 1. Instead of the genitives *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, &c., the neuter possessives *meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, &c., are used; as, *tuum est videre quid agatur*, it is your business to see what is going on. A possessive ad-

jective may be used in the same way; as, *humanum est errare*, it is human to err, i. e. characteristic of man.

§ 134. RULE VIII. *Partitive Genitive*. With words expressing a part, the genitive is used to denote the whole; as,

Unus militum, One of the soldiers.

This genitive is used with nouns expressing a part; with adjectives, especially comparatives, superlatives and numerals; with many pronouns, and with adverbs of time, place, and quantity.

Rem. 1. The partitive word, if an adjective, usually agrees in gender with the genitive; but adjectives of quantity are used as nouns in the neuter; as, *quid novi?* what news? *Tantum auri*, so much gold.

Rem. 2. Instead of a genitive, the prepositions *ex*, *de*, and sometimes *in*, *inter*, are used; as, *quidam ex militibus*, *inter omnes fortissimus*.

§ 135. RULE IX. *Objective Genitive with Adjectives and Verbs*. The genitive is used to express the object to which an action or feeling is directed with

(a.) Adjectives expressing *desire, experience, knowledge, capacity, participation, fulness, memory, care, certainty, fear, guilt*, and their contraries; as,

Avidus laudis, Desirous of praise.

Here also belong participial adjectives in *ns*; *amans pecuniæ*.

(b.) Verbs of remembering, reminding and forgetting; *recordor, memini, reminiscor, obliviscor, moneo*, and its compounds; as,

Memini beneficii tui [=memor sum, &c.] *I remember your kindness.*

Te officii moneo [=memorem facio,] *I remind you of your duty.*

The thing remembered or forgotten is also put in the accusative.

(c.) Verbs expressing pity, &c.—*misereor*, *miseresco*, and the impersonals *miseret*, *pœnitēt*, *pudet*, *piget*, *tædet*.
As,

Miseresco infeliciū, I pity the unfortunate.

Pœnitēt me peccatī, I repent of my sin.

Rem. 1. With these impersonals the *person* feeling is expressed by the accusative.

Rem. 2. The cause or object of the feeling may be expressed by an infinitive or a sentence; as, *pœnitēt me peccavisse* or *quod peccavi*, I repent of having sinned.

(d.) Verbs of plenty or want (sometimes); as,

Eget [=egens est] argenti, He is in need of silver.

(e.) The impersonals *refert* and *interest*; as,

Reipublicæ interest, It is of importance to the state.

Rem. 3. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the forms *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, [abl. sing. fem.] are used with *refert* and *interest*; as,

Non tua interest, It is not your business.

Rem. 4. The thing with reference to which anything is important may be expressed by the acc. with *ad*; the degree of importance, by the genitives *magni*, *parvi*, &c., [see Rule XI,] or by an adverb; while the subject may be an infinitive, a neuter pronoun, or a noun-clause. As,

Hoc ad laudem civitatis magni interest, This is of great importance to the glory of the state.

Rem. 5. *Smilis* and its compounds, especially with the names of living beings, take a genitive, [see § 142, *Rem.* 3] As,

Smilis patris, Like his father.

§ 136. RULE X. *Genitive of Crime.* With verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, &c., the genitive expresses the crime or offence charged. As,

Servum furti accusat, He accuses the slave of theft.

Rem. 1. With some of these verbs the ablative with or without *de*, is used to express the crime; as, *aliquam de vi accusare*, to accuse one of violence.

Rem. 2. With *damno* and *condemno* the penalty is expressed by the genitive, but oftener by the ablative, especially when it consists of money or land; as, *damnatur capitis, or capite*, he is condemned to death. *Tertia parte agri damnatur*, He is fined a third of his land.

§ 137. RULE XI. *Genitive of Price.* The genitive is used to express the price or value of a thing indefinitely; as,

Magni æstimabat pecuniam, He esteemed money highly.

In this manner are used the genitive of adjectives, and the genitives *assis, flocci, &c.*; also *pensi* and *hujus*.

Rem. 1. To this rule may be referred the expression *æqui* or *boni facio* or *consulo*, I take in good part, I am satisfied with.

Rem. 2. With *æstimo*, and verbs of buying and selling, the ablatives *magno, permagno, plurimo, parvo, minimo*, and *nililo*, are often used.

For the genitive of place, see § 166. Exc.

For the genitive with *opus* and *usus*, see § 160. *Rem. 1.*

§ 138.

EXERCISE 51.

Vocabulary.

Solus, a, um, (§56), only, alone.

Peccatum, i, sin, fault.

Philosophus, i, philosopher.

Ultimus, a, um, (§14, 1), last.

Imperium, i, power, command.

Casus, us, chance.

Arx, arc-is, citadel.

Dulcis, e, sweet.

Decorus, a, um, o honorable.

Patria, æ, country.

Turbidus, a, um, muddy, troubled.

Amicitia, æ, friendship.

Oxus, i, *Oxus*, (river.)

Cingetorix, *Cingetorig-is*, *Cingetorix*.

Prudentia, æ, prudence.

Hannibal, -bal-is, *Hannibal*.

Odium, i, hatred.

Auctoritas, -tat-is, authority.

Adolescent, -cent-is, young man.

Corrig-ere, (*rex*, rect-) to correct.

A-mitt-ere, (*mis*, miss-) to lose.

Agere, (*eg*, act-) to lead, to drive; of time, to spend.

Mor-iri, mortuus, (§109), to die. (*Inf.*

Pres. mori, part. fut. act. *moriturnus*.

Sin-ere, (*siv*, sit-) to place.

Viv-ere, (*vix*, vict-) to live.

Appell-are, to call.

Perduc-ere, (*-dux*, duct-) to extend.

Influ-ere, (*-flux*, -flux-) to flow into.

Carcer, *carcer-is*, prison.

Tullianum, i, *Tullian*, (a dungeon built by

King *Servius Tullius*.)

Re-ver-ere, *rever-itas*, to respect.

Spectat-us, a, um, (*spect-are*), approval.

Fortitudo, -in-is, courage.

Fides, ei, faith, promise.

Castigare, to chastise.

EXAMPLES.

Stulti est,	It is <i>characteristic</i> of a fool.
Adolescentis est,	It is <i>the duty</i> of a young man.
Meum est,	It is <i>my duty</i> .
Tua ipsius [R. III, rem. 7] causa,	For <i>your own sake</i> .
Cujusvis hominis est,	It is <i>every man's duty</i> .
Nocte quam ultimam (§129), egit,	On the <i>last</i> night which he spent.

Translate into English and analyze.

Solius (R. III, rem. 7); meum peccatum corrigi non potest. Philosophus, nocte quam ultimam (§129, rem. 6), in terris egit, amicos omnes convocavit. Helvetii oppidum quod optimum habebant amiserant. Catonis pater et mater mortui §128, rem. 1, (1),) sunt. Regna, imperia, honores, divitiæ, in Dei manibus sita sunt. Filius Alexandri cum matre in arcem missi (§126, rem. 1; (1) b;) erant. Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori. Amicitia bonum (§128, rem. 6,) est. Ad flumen Oxum perventum est (§114, 5,) qui (§129, rem. 4) turbidus semper est. Ad locum in carcere quod (§129, rem. 5) Tullianum vocatur perventum est. Animal qui (§129, rem. 5) homo vocatur, sine legibus beatus esse non potest. Cingetorix, qui a senatu rex atque amicus appellatus erat, summæ auctoritatis

§ 132. rem. 1,) apud Gallos fuit. Hannibalis odium erga Romanos (§131, rem. 3) atrocissimum fuit. Cæsar a lacu Lemanno ad flumen Rhenum, fossam quindecim pedum (§132, R. VI) perduxit. Adolescentis est parentes suos amare ac revereri. Cujusvis hominis est virum spectatæ fortitudinis revereri. Stulti est de se ipso predicare. Non meum est nuncios ad consulem mittere. Domini est pigros servos castigare.

Translate into Latin.

Your father corrects your faults for *your own sake*. On

the last day which the consul spent in the winter-quarters, he called together the centurions of the seventh legion. It is the general's duty to conquer the enemies of the republic. On the next (*postero*) day they reached (it was come to) the river Rhone, which flows into our sea. Rome, which is the capital (*head*) of Italy, was taken by the Gauls. Is not a friend a good *thing*? Fabius was a man of the greatest prudence. A general of the greatest valor does not always lead his army to victory. It is the *duty* of children to respect their parents, and of parents, to love their own children and correct their (*corum*) faults.

EXERCISE 52.

Vocabulary.

Avārus, a, um, <i>covetous.</i>	Pœnit-et, [pœnitū-] <i>it repents.</i>
Avidus, a, um, <i>eager, desirous.</i>	Pad-et, [pudā-] <i>it shames.</i>
Verax, (ferac-is,) <i>productive.</i>	Pig-et, [pigu-it, or pig-itum est,] <i>it troubles, disgusts.</i>
Amans, (amant-is,) <i>fond.</i>	Tæd-et, [tæduit, tæsum est, and pertasum est,] <i>it wearies.</i>
Expers, (expert-is,) <i>destitute.</i>	Vend-ere, [vendid- vendit,] <i>to sell.</i>
Imperitus, a, um, <i>ignorant.</i>	Em-ere, [em- empt-] <i>to buy.</i>
Memor, (memor-is,) <i>mindful.</i>	Mon-ere, [monn- monit-] <i>to warn.</i>
Inmemor, (or-is,) <i>unmindful.</i>	Ad-mon-ere, <i>to remind.</i>
Insuetus, a, um, <i>unaccustomed.</i>	Memini [§113. Rem. 1, 4, 5,] <i>I remember.</i>
Impotens, (-ent-is,) <i>unable to control.</i>	Refert, [re-talit,] <i>it concerns, it is the business of.</i>
Propositum, i, <i>purpose.</i>	Inter-est, [-fuit,] <i>it is of importance.</i>
Consciūs, a, um, <i>conscious.</i>	Accus-are, <i>to accuse.</i>
Veritas, [-tat-is,] <i>truth.</i>	Ab-solv-ere, [-solv- solut-] <i>to acquit.</i>
Tantus-dem, a-dem, un-dem, <i>just so much.</i>	Condemn-are, <i>to condemn.</i>
Proditio, [-on-is,] <i>treachery.</i>	Estim-are, <i>to esteem, value.</i>
Ingestas, [-tat-is,] <i>poverty.</i>	Fac-ere, [fec- fact-] <i>to make, to value.</i>
Cupiditas, [-tatis,] <i>desire, lust.</i>	Oblivisc-i, [oblitus,] <i>to forget.</i>
Officium, i, <i>duty.</i>	Opprim-ere, [-press- -press-] <i>to suppress.</i>
Floccus, i, <i>lock of wool, [something of small value.]</i>	
Miser-et, [miseru-] <i>it pities.</i>	

EXAMPLES.

- [a.] *Patiens laborem,* *Enduring labor.—Participle.*
 [b.] *Patiens laboris,* *Capable of enduring labor.—Participial.*
- [a.] *The participle expresses a single action at the time spoken of:*
 [b.] *The participial expresses capability at any time.*

Miseret me tui,	<i>I pity you. [It pities me of you.]</i>
Me regis miseruit,	<i>I pitied the king.</i>
Pœnitel puerum stultitiæ,	<i>The boy repents of his folly.</i>
Pudet me sceleris,	<i>I am ashamed of my wickedness.</i>
Piget te vitæ,	<i>You are disgusted with life.</i>
Capitis or rei capitalis accusare,	<i>To accuse of a capital crime.</i>
Capitis, or capite, condemnare,	<i>To condemn to death.</i>
Flocci non facit,	<i>He cares not a straw—a rush, &c.</i>
Mea refert,	<i>It is my business.</i>
Quanti hoc facis?	<i>How much do you value this?</i>

Translate into English and analyze.

In hoc oratore plus eloquentiæ (§ 134, *Rem.* 1) est quam fortitudinis. Regis frater avidus est gloriæ,* patiens laboris,* sed impotens iræ,* veritatis* expers, rerum* imperitus, atque multorum scelerum* conscius. Quanti quisque se ipse (§ 84; [b.]) facit, tanti fit ab amicis. Mercatores non tanti-dem vendunt, quanti emerunt. Fures veritatem non flocci faciunt. Boni omnes virtutem magni æstimant. Quanti istos equos emisti? Hunc latronem sceleris† sui neque pudet, neque pœnitet. Me civitatis morum† tædet pigetque. Civis qui rei capitalis (§ 136) accusatus est, tertia parte (§ 136, *Rem.* 2) agri condemnatus est. Pueros stultitiæ pœnitebit. Catilina alium (one man) egestatis††, alium (another) cupiditatis†† admonebat. Tua ipsius causa te officii moneo. Ciceronis (§ 135, Rule IX. [c.]) magni (§ 135, *Rem.* 3) interest conjurationem Catilinæ opprimere. Non mea sed regis refert fures latronesque punire.

Translate into Latin.

The general is desirous of money, but more desirous of praise. The farmer's fields are very productive of corn

* § 135, Rule IX. [a.] † § 137, Rule XI. ‡ § 135, Rule IX, [c.] †† § 135, Rule IX, [b.]

The consul is fond of war and tenacious (*tenax*) of his purpose, but ignorant of business (*rerum*) and destitute of truth. Lucius remembers a kindness *and* (*neque*) does *not* forget an injury. The soldiers who were accused of treachery have been condemned to death. Those who (§ 129, *Rem.* 2) are unaccustomed to navigation* fear the sea. The king cares not a straw for the laws of the state. It is of great importance to us to lead the army into the enemy's country (*fines*.) For how much did you sell your horse? For the same (*tantidem*) for which (*for how much*) I bought (him.) Do you remember the speech of the excellent orator? The scouts had not warned the general of the danger. The tribune has been acquitted of treachery. Do you pity me?

THE DATIVE.

§ 140. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which, or *with reference to which*, anything is, or is done.

§ 141. RULE XII. *Dative of Remote Object.* The remote object of a verb is in the dative; as,

Servus domino medicinam parat. The slave prepares medicine for his master.

~~is~~ The remote object of a verb is the thing towards which its action *tends*, without necessarily *reaching* it.

NOTE.—This dative is used with most verbs, especially with verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *pro*, *sub*, *super*.

Rem. 1. Transitive verbs have also a ~~dative~~ ^{direct} object in the accusative.

* Rule XI.^o[a.]

§ 142. RULE XIII. *Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.* The dative expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage anything is, or is done.

As,

Servus domino fidus, A servant faithful to his master.

NOTE.—This dative is used with adjectives expressing goodness, usefulness, fitness, &c.; also with verbs meaning to favor, please, trust, obey, threaten, be angry, and their contraries. These verbs are equivalent to *esse* with an adjective; as, *Irasci inimicis, = iratus esse inimicis, to be angry with one's enemies.*

Rem. 1. The verbs *juvo, delecto, lædo, offendo*, are transitive, and have a direct object in the accusative. *Fido* and *confido* are often followed by the ablative.

Rem. 2. Many adjectives take an accusative with a preposition, instead of a dative; as, *servus in dominum fidelis; locus ad insidias aptus.*

Rem. 3. The dative expresses the person or thing to, or with reference to which, anything is clear, equal, like, unlike, near. *Dative of Reference.*

Rem. 4. *Propior* and *proximus*, like *prope*, are sometimes followed by the accusative.

§ 143. RULE XIV. *Dative of Possession.* The dative is used with *esse* to express the person who has, or possesses something, the thing possessed being the subject. As,

Est mihi liber, [a book is to me.] I have a book.

Rem. 1. The possessor is expressed by the dative when the idea of possession is chiefly referred to; as, *Cæsari domus est*, Cæsar has a house;—by the genitive, when the possessor, or thing possessed, is referred to, rather than the fact of possession; as, *Hæc domus Cæsaris est, illa Ciceronis*, This house is Cæsar's, that one is Cicero's.

§ 144. RULE XV. *Dative of Purpose or End.* The dative is used with *esse*, and verbs of *giving, coming, sending, imputing*, and some others, to express the purpose of the action ; as,

Hæc mihi curæ sunt, { *These things are for a care to me,*
 { *or I have these things for a care.*

These verbs may have a personal object in the dative, and, if transitive, a direct object in the accusative. As, *Collegæ venit auxilio,* *He came for an aid to his colleague,* (i. e. to his colleague's assistance.) *Mihi librum dono dedit,* *He gave me the book for a gift.*

Rem. 1. The verbs most commonly using a double dative are, *esse, fieri, dare, ducere, habere, mittere, relinquere, tribuere, venire, vertere.*

Rem. 2. The purpose may be expressed by a predicate nominative, or an apposition, [see 127, Rem. 1] ; as, *Mihi comes Lucius est,* *I have Lucius for a companion.* *Coronam Jovi donum mittunt,* *They send a crown to Jupiter, as a present.*

§ 145. RULE XVI. *Dative to the Agent.* With the gerundine in *dus* the dative expresses the agent or doer ; as,

Adhibenda est nobis diligentia, *Diligence must be used by us.*

Rem. 1. The poets sometimes use this dative with any of the passive forms ; as, *neque cernitur ulli,* *nor is he seen by any one.*

Rem. 2. Instead of the dative, the ablative with *a* or *ab* is sometimes, though rarely, used with the gerundine.

§ 146. *Dativus Ethicus.* The dative of the personal pronouns is used sometimes to express strong feeling, and can scarcely be rendered into English ; as, *An ille mihi liber cui mulier imperat ?* *Is he free whom a woman rules ?*

Rem. 1. Here may be noticed the use of the participles *volens*, *cupiens*, &c., with a dative, in imitation of the Greek: as, *Neque plebi militia volenti [esse] putabatur*, Neither was the war thought to be agreeable to the common people; [literally, to the common people wishing it.]

§ 147. The dative is sometimes used almost like a genitive, but always with the idea of advantage, disadvantage, or reference. As, *Cui corpus porrigitur*, (compare the English) His body is stretched out for him.

§ 148.

EXERCISE 53.

Vocabulary.

(1.) *Similis*, e, *like*.
Proximus, a, um, *nearest, next*.
Aptus, a, um, *fit, suitable*.
Aquus, a, um, *just*.
Blandus, a, um, *flattering*.
Utilis, e, *useful*.
Carus, a, um, *dear*.
Ingratus, a, um, *disagreeable*.
Facilis, e, *easy*.
Per-facilis, e, *very easy*.
Noxius, a, um, *hurtful*.
Ignotus, a, um, *unknown*.
Impedimentum, i, *hindrance*.
Dedecus -or-is, *disgrace*.
Usus, us, *use, advantage*.
Impietas, tat-is, *undutifulness*.
Numantinus, i, *Numantian*.

Vehementer, [adv.] *extremely*.
Commodum, i, *convenience*.
Fav-ere, [fav-, faut-,] *to favor*.
Stare, [stet-, stat-,] *to stand*.
Parcere, [pepere- and pars-, parcit- and para-,] *to spare*.
Inquam, [2 113, 4] *I say*. [Used only after one or more words of a quotation.]
Prod-esse, [profu-,] *to do good*.
Præficere, [-fec-, -fect-,] *to put over*.
Circum-dare, [ded-, dat-,] *to give around* to surround.
Circum-fundere, [fud-, fus-,] *to pour around*. to surround.
Male-dicere, [dix-, dict-,] *to be abusive*.
Præter-ire [-iv-or-i-, -it-,] *to pass by*.
Innocentia, æ, *innocence, integrity*.

EXAMPLES.

[2.] *Audiens dicto*, *Obedient*, [attentive to the word.]
Mihi magno est dolori, *It is [for] a great grief to me*.
Hibernis Labienum præfecit, *He put Labienus over the winter-quarters*.
Regibus manus sunt longæ, *Kings have long arms (hands.)*
Dii omnibus colendi sunt, *The gods ought to be worshipped by all*.
Urbem muros abl. circumdare, }
Urbi murum circumdare, } *To surround the city with a wall*.
Terras mari [abl.] circumfundere, }
Terris (dat.) mare circumfundere, } *To surround the land with sea*.
Aptus insidiis, or ad insidias, *Suitable for ambush*.
Similis patris, *Like his father*, (in character.)
Similis patri, *Like his father*, (outwardly.)

Translate into English and analyze.

Helvetii proximi Germanis (§ 141, *Rem.* 3) incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Loca proxima (§142, *Rem.* 4) Carthaginem Numidia appellatur (§ 130, *Rem.* 1.) In loco insidiis (R. XIII.) apto, duas legiones collocavit. Nonne lupus est cani similis? Ferrum hominibus (R. XIII.) utilius est quam aurum. Jugurtha nostris vehementer carus, Numantinis maximo terrori (R. XI.) fuit. Cuivis facile est amicis suis (R. XIII.)* favere. Ventus noxium (§ 128, *Rem.* 6) est arboribus. Legatus cohortes duas castris (R. XII.) praesidis (R. XV.) reliquit, milites imperatori (R. XIII.) audientes dicto non erunt. Milites non mulieribus, non infantibus (R. XIII.) pepercerunt. Nemini licet sui commodi causa alteri (R. XIII.) nocere. Caesar legionibus, quas in provincia conscripserat, Labienum praefecit. Deus toti orbi terrarum mare circumfudit. Caesar oppidum vallo fossaque circumdedit. Gravia onera equitibus (R. XIV. or R. XIII.) magno sunt impedimento. Innocentiae (R. XIV.) saepe plus periculi est quam honoris. Haec mihi (R. XIV.) praetereunda non sunt. Haedus in domus tecto stans, lupo praetereunti maledixit. Cui lupus, "Non tu," inquit, "sed locus mihi (§ 142) maledicit."

Translate into Latin.

The number of the enemy was unknown to the general. The undutifulness of children is a great grief to (their) parents. The thick woods were a very great advantage (XVI.) to our skirmishers. It is sweet and honorable to do good to the commonwealth. Children are not always like their parents. It was very easy for our men to cross

* The letters refer to the rule of Syntax; the Arabic figures, to the remarks.

the river. The consul's speech was very disagreeable to the Gauls. The snares of the enemy have been (for) a very great hindrance to our cavalry. God ought to be worshipped by all men. The causes of this rebellion ought not to be passed over by me. It is the greatest disgrace (XV.) to a soldier to leave his place in battle. The Roman people gave to the king for a gift the fields which he had conquered. Nature had surrounded the town with a broad and deep river. It is lawful for no man to lead an army against his country. Be kind and just to all, but flattering to none.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 149. The accusative case marks the *direct object* of an action, i. e. the thing actually reached by the action; also the limit of space or time which an action or motion reaches.

§ 150. RULE XVII. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Rem. 1. An intransitive verb, though it does not require an object to complete its meaning, may be limited by accusative of *similar*, or *kindred* signification. (*Cognate Accusative.*) As, *currere cursum*, to run a race; *vivere vitam*, to live a life.

Rem. 2. When the cognate noun is obsolete, a noun, or noun-sentence, equivalent to it in meaning, may be used. (*Equivalent Accusative.*) As, *proficisci magnum iter*, to go a great journey.

Rem. 3. The cognate or equivalent noun is often omitted, and in its stead a neuter adjective is used, limiting the cognate notion understood. (*Elliptical Accusative.*) As,

multum ambulat, he walks much; *he does much talking*. This accusative is used as an adverb.

Rem. 4. A cognate, equivalent, or elliptical accusative may be used with a passive verb; as, *doceor doctrinam*, I am taught teaching, science; *doceor grammaticam*, I am taught grammar; *nimum doctus*, taught too much, too learned.

Rem. 5. Many verbs which are transitive in English, in Latin represent an action only as done *with reference to* the object, and hence have a dative: (see §142, *Rem. 3.*)

§ 151. RULE XVIII. (a.) Verbs meaning to *ask* and *teach*, with *celare*, to conceal, take two accusatives—one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*; as,

Rogo te nummos, I ask you for money.

Docuit me musicam, He taught me music.

(The thing asked or taught is an equivalent accusative.)

(b.) *Second Accusative.* Verbs meaning to *name* or *call*, *choose*, *appoint*, *make*, *esteem* or *reckon*, take besides the direct object, a second accusative; as,

Urbem vocavit Romam, He called the city Rome.

Me consulem fecistis, You have made me consul.

Rem. 1. With verbs of asking, the *person* is often put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, *de*, *ex*, instead of the accusative, as, *Hæc a te posco*, I demand these things of you. *Exigo*, *peto*, *postulo*, *quæro*, *scitor*, *sciscitor*, never have an accusative of the person; as, *Pacem a Cæsare petunt*.

§ 152. RULE XIX. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative. See §120, 1.

☞ As a general rule, prepositions expressing *motion to* a place, take the accusative.

Rem. 1. Many intransitive verbs, when compounded with a preposition, become transitive; as, *transire flumen*; *succedere tecta*.

Rem. 2. A preposition in composition often has an object in the

accusative; as, *Equitatum pontem transducit*, He leads the cavalry over the bridge. *Equitatus pontem transducitur*, The cavalry are led-over the bridge.

Rem. 3. The preposition is often repeated; as, *Equitatum trans pontem transducit*.

§ 153. RULE XX. *Accusative of time and space.* Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative, sometimes by the ablative; as,

Tres horas mansit, He remained three hours.
Fossa duos pedes lata, A ditch two feet wide.

NOTE. The limit of time within which anything occurs is expressed by the ablative; *uno anno*, within one year.

§ 154. RULE XXI. *Accusative of place Whither.* The names of towns and small islands are put in the accusative to express the point which a motion reaches; As,

Romam venit, He came to Rome.

Rem. 1. *Domus* and *rus* are construed in the same way. As, *domum rediit*, He returned home.

Rem. 2. A preposition is generally used when the name of a town is limited by an adjective or an apposition—*urbs*, *oppidum*, &c. As, *Demaratus se contulit Tarquinius ad urbem Etruriae*,—to Tarquinii, a town of Etruria. *Ad doctas Athenas proficisci*.

Rem. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted in prose, often in poetry, before the name of any place to which motion is directed. *Deveniunt speluncam*.

§ 155. As the accusative expresses the limit actually reached by an action or motion, so also it expresses the limit to which the truth of a proposition extends. Thus, *membra nudus est*, He is naked—not entirely, but only as to his limbs. Hence,

RULE XXII. The accusative is sometimes used to express a special limitation. (*Acc. of limitation.*). As,

Nudus membra, Naked as to his limbs.

Rem. 1. This is a Greek construction, and is rarely used in prose.

Rem. 2. The poets often use an accusative with a passive verb in the sense of the Greek middle; as, *Priamus inutile ferrum cingitur. Priam girds himself with (puts on,) the useless sword.*

§ 156. **RULE XXIII.** The accusative expresses the object of a feeling, with or without an interjection, As,

Heu me miserum! Ah wretched me!

For the accusative with { *propror and proximus, see §142, Rem. 4.*
miseret, &c., see §135, Rem. 1.
 the infinitive, see §188.

§ 157.

EXERCISE 54.

Vocabulary.

Antiochus, i, *Antiochus.*

Antiochia, æ, *Antioch.*

Ancus Martius, i, *Ancus Martius, fourth king of Rome.*

Mercurius, i, *Mercury.*

Inventor, -or-is, *inventor.*

Antigonus, i, *Antigonus.*

Quotidie, *daily.*

Jucundus, a, um, *delightful.*

Servitus, -ut-is, *slavery.*

Regulus, i, *Regulus.*

Juventus, -ut-is, *youth.*

Musica, æ, *music.*

Grammatica, æ, *grammar.*

Fides, ium, (fem.) *strings, a lute.*

Socrates, is, *Socrates.*

Timidus, a, um, *cowardly.*

Certus, a, um, *certain.*

Stadium, i, *zeal, desire, pl. study.*

Vastitas, -at-is, *devastation.*

Arbitr-ari, *to think, deem.*

Hab-ere, *to have, to consider.*

Cel-arc, *to conceal.*

Flagit-are, *to ask for, to demand earnestly.*

Serv-ire, *to be a slave, to serve.*

Trans-duc-ere, [dux-, duct-) *to lead over.*

Trans-jic-ere, [jec-, ject-) *to throw over, to ship over.*

Red-ire, (§111, 9,) (redi-, redit-) *to return,*

Dis-ced-ere, (cess-, cess-) *to depart.*

Pon-ere, (posu-, posit-) *to place.*

Sequ-i, (secut-us,) *to follow.*

Per-sequ-i, *to follow perseveringly, to pursue.*

Doc-ere, (docu-, doct-) *to teach.*

E-doc-ere, *to teach thoroughly.*

Nasc-i, natus, *to be born.*

Illic-ere, (illex-, illect-) *to allure, to decoy.*

Redd-ere, (reddid-, reddit-) *to render.*

Sol-ere, solitus, *to be accustomed.*

Proficisci, profectus, *to set out, to go.*

Posc-ere, (poposc- —,) *to ask for, demand.*

EXAMPLES.

Iter omnes celat,	He conceals his journey from all.
Regem pacem porcunt,	They ask the king for peace.
Unius diei iter,	One day's journey.
Annos (§152) quindecim natus,	Fifteen years old. (Born fifteen years.)
A vita discedere,	To depart from life, to die.
A millibus passuum duobus castra posuit,	} He pitched his camp two miles off.
Millia passuum duo (acc.)	
or, millibus passuum duobus (abl.),	} ab urbe, two miles from the city.
Me fidibus docuit,	
Cæsarem certiore (§151, b) faciunt,	He taught me to play on the lyre, (with the strings. Abl. of instrument.)
	They inform Cæsar, (make more certain.)

Translate into English and analyze.

Urbem, ex Antiochi patris (§127, Rule,) nomine Antiochiam (R. XVIII, b) vocavit. Ancum Martium populus regem (R. XVIII, b) creavit. Veteres Romani Mercurium omnium inventorem (R. XVIII, b) artium habebant. Antigonus iter exercitus omnes celat. Quotidie Cæsar Æduos frumentum flagitabat. Num timidus vitam jucundam (§150, Rem. 1) vivere potest? Qui (§129, Rem. 2) auri servus est, turpissimam servitutem (§150, Rem. 1) servit. Ariovistus maximas Germanorum copias Rhenum (§152, Rem. 2) transjecerat, neque multorum dierum (§132, Rule) iter (R. XX) a Cæsaris castris abfuit. Quis regem fidibus docuit? Alexander mensem (R. XX) unum, annos (R. XX) tres et triginta (§63) natus, a vita discessit. Jam vicessimum (§63) annum (R. XX) Italiæ vastitatem patimur. Regulus Carthaginem (R. XXI) rediit. Consul in Africam profectus, Carthaginem venit. Consul ab oppido, millia (R. XX) passuum (§134) duo castra posuerat. Catilina juventutem quam illexerat mala facinora (XVIII, a) edocebat. Socrates totius mundi se in-

colam (XVIII) et civem arbitrabatur. Exploratores de hostium adventu consulem certiores faciunt. Juvenes (§33, *Rem.* 8, *Exc*) Romani Athenas (XXI) studiorum causa proficisci solebant.

Translate into Latin.

Labienus followed Cæsar into Gaul; Marius returned home. Our cavalry pursued the enemy ten miles. Cæsar set out from the winter-quarters to Rome. The place and time often render cowards brave. Lust makes (renders) men blind. Which of the teachers (masters) taught the boys grammar and music? My brother taught me to play on the lute. The general led all his forces across the bridge in one night. My brother is twenty years old. Cæsar asked the senate for an army. The robbers demanded money from Caius. Are you going to Rome for-the-sake-of study? Cæsar was distant ten days' journey from the camp of Ariovistus. It is characteristic of a good general to throw his forces over a river quickly. A boy twelve years old used to inform the enemy of the approach of our forces. The Germans will pitch their camp ten miles off.

VOCATIVE.

§ 158. The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative.

ABLATIVE.

§ 159. RULE XXIV. *Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, Instrument.* The ablative expresses the cause, manner, means, and instrument; as,

Cæcus avaritia,

Hoc modo fecit,

Aquila alis volat,

Captivum gladio occidit.

Blinded by avarice.

He did it in this manner.

The eagle flies with his wings.

He kills the captive with a sword.

Rem. 1. The *causal ablative* is used mostly with intransitive and passive verbs, and with adjectives.

Rem. 2. The *cause*, especially with transitive verbs, is often expressed by *ob* or *propter*, with the accusative.

Rem. 3. Akin to the causal ablative is the ablative of *source* with participles expressing origin; as, *natus dea*, born of a goddess.

Rem. 4. The *manner* is expressed by the ablative of words meaning manner,—*modus, mos, ratio, ritus*;—or by the ablative of other words with *cum*; as, *cum voluptate te audio*. When an adjective is added to the noun, *cum* is usually omitted; as, *æquo animo calamitates ferre*, to bear calamities with patience.


Rem. 5. When the *means* or *instrument* is a person, *per* with the accusative must be used; as, *Per te liberatus sum*, I was freed through you.

Rem. 6. To this rule may be referred the ablative with the deponents *utor*, I employ myself with, I use; *fructor*, I delight myself with, I enjoy; *fungor*, I busy myself with, I perform; *potior*, (*potis*,) I make myself powerful with, I take possession of; *vescor*, I feed myself with, I eat.

NOTE. *Potior* sometimes takes a genitive, (*I make myself master of*).

§ 160. RULE XXV. The ablative expresses the *material* or *supply*. As,

Germania fluminibus abundat, Germany abounds in rivers.

 This ablative is used with verbs and adjectives of *plenty* or *want*, *filling* or *emptying*, *depriving*, &c; also with *opus est*, there is need.

Rem. 1. With *opus* and *usus* the genitive is sometimes used, and rarely the accusative. *Opus* is either subject of *est*, or an indeclinable adjective in the predicate. *Duce nobis opus est*, or *Dux nobis opus est*. The latter construction is used with neuter pronouns and adjectives; as, *Quid nobis opus est?*

Rem. 2. The genitive is also used with expressions of *plenty* or *wants*. See § 135, Rule IX, d.

§ 161. RULE XXVI. *Ablative of Limitation.*—Nouns, adjectives, and verbs are limited by the ablative showing *in what respect* their meaning is taken; as,

Oppidum nomine Bibrax,
Æger pedibus,

A town, Bibrax by name.
Lame in his feet.

§ 162. RULE XXVII. *Ablative of Price.* The price or value of a thing, if stated definitely, is expressed by the ablative; as,

Patriam auro vendidit, *He sold his country for gold.*

Rem. 1. The price or value, if indefinitely stated, is expressed by the genitive. See § 137.

Rem. 2. To this rule may be referred the ablative with *dignus*, *indignus*, &c.

§ 163. RULE XXVIII. *Ablative of Separation.*—That from which anything is *freed, removed or separated*, is expressed by the ablative; as,

Patriam hostibus liberavit, *He freed his country from enemies.*

Rem. 1. A preposition, (*ab, de, ex,*) is often used with this ablative.

Rem. 2. The preposition is rarely used with names of towns denoting the *place from which* motion proceeds, or with the ablatives *domo, humo, rure* and *ryri*. *Roma discessit.* *Domo exire,* to go out from home.

Rem. 3. Verbs of *taking away* have sometimes, instead of an ablative, a dative of advantage or disadvantage; as, *Nec mihi te eripient,* *Nor shall they take you from me.*

§ 164. RULE XXIX. *Ablative of Quality.* The ablative limited by an adjective, is used to express the quality of a thing; as,

Serpens ingenti magnitudine,

A serpent of huge size.

Rem. 1. This ablative may form part of the predicate, like an adjective; as, *Agésilæus statura fuit humili,* *Agésilæus was of low stature.*

Rem. 2. A genitive may supply the place of the adjective; as,

Est bos cervi figura, There is an ox of the shape of a stag; (a stag-shaped ox.)

§ 165. RULE XXX. *Ablative of Comparison.* The ablative is used with the comparative degree when *quam* is omitted, to express that with which something is compared; as,

Mons est arbore altior, A mountain is higher than a tree.

Rem. 1. The complement of a comparative may be connected by the conjunction *quam*, either in the same case, or in the nominative, subject of *est*, *fuit*, &c., understood. As, *Fortiorem vidi neminem quam, Marium* or *quam, Marius (est.)*

Rem. 2. When the thing compared is the subject,* the ablative is generally used; as, *saxum auro durius est*; also when the thing compared is the object, the ablative, especially of pronouns, is used; as, *Hoc nihil gratius facere potes.*

But with a comparative in any other case than the nominative or accusative, the ablative is very rarely used. *Quam* is used with all cases.


Rem. 3. The complement of a comparative is often omitted altogether, and the comparative is then translated by *too*, or *rather* with the positive. *Equites paulo longius processerant, The horsemen had advanced a little too far.*

Rem. 4. *Plus*, *minus*, and *amplius* are often prefixed to expressions of number, magnitude, &c., without effect upon the construction; as, *Non amplius horas sex mansit, He staid not more than six hours.* These words may be considered adverbs, or indeclinable nouns.

Longius, and the adjectives *major* and *minor* are sometimes used in the same way; thus, *puer annorum decem, a boy of ten years*; *puer minor annorum decem, a boy of less than ten years.*

§ 166. RULE XXXI. *Ablative of Place Where.* The ablative, usually with the preposition *in*, expresses the place where; as, .

Castris, or in castris mansit, He remained in the camp.
Alexander Babylone mortuus est, Alexander died at Babylon.

 The preposition is rarely used with names of towns.

Exc. The name of a town denoting the place where, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is in the genitive; as,

*Habitat Romæ,
Mileti mortuus est,*

*He lives at Rome.
He died at Miletus.*

Rem. 1. The genitives *domi*, *humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, also express the place where; as, *domi militiæque*. at home and in service. The genitive of names of islands and countries is sometimes used in the same way.

§ 167. RULE XXXII. *Ablative of Time When.* The point of time at which anything occurs is expressed by the ablative; as,

Tertia hora,

At the third hour.

Rem. 1. The limit of time within which anything is done, is expressed by the ablative. See § 153, note.

Rem. 2. The time before or after an event is expressed, (a.) by *ante* or *post* with a numeral; (b.) by *antequam* or *postquam*; (c.) the time after an event, by the relative or *quum*.

(a.) After ten years, or Ten years after.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{post decem annos,} \\ \textit{decem post annos,} \\ \textit{post decimum annum,} \\ \textit{decimum post annum,} \\ \textit{decem annis post,} \\ \textit{decem post annis,} \\ \textit{decimo anno post,} \\ \textit{decimo post anno.} \end{array} \right.$	(b.) Ten years after he had come.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{post decem annos,} \\ \textit{d. post annos,} \\ \textit{post decimum an-} \\ \textit{d. post annum,} \\ \textit{decem annis post,} \\ \textit{d. post annis,} \\ \textit{decimo an. post,} \\ \textit{d. post anno.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right\} \textit{quam} \\ \textit{venerat}$
--	---	---	--	---

When *ante* or *post* stands last an accusative specifying the event is often added,

decimo anno ante conjunctionem.

(c.) *Octo diebus quibus occisus est,* Eight days after he was killed.
Quatriduo quo occisus est, In four days after he was killed.

§ 168. RULE XXXIII. *Ablative of Excess or Defect.* The ablative is used to show how much one thing exceeds or falls short of another; as,

Multis partibus major, Many times larger.

Dimidio minor, Less by half.

§ 169. RULE XXXIV. *Ablative with prepositions.*

Twelve prepositions are followed by the ablative. See § 120.

For the ablative of duration of time and extent of space, see §163.

For the ablative absolute, see §186.

§ 170.

EXERCISE 55.

Vocabulary.

Fretus, a, um, *trusting*.
 Concordia, a, *agreement*.
 Discordia, a, *disagreement*.
 Plerumque, (adv.) *for the most part*.
 Meror, -or-is, *grief*.
 Incredibilis, e, *incredible*.
 Morsus, us, *biting*.
 Anxius, a, um, *anxious*.
 Natus, us, *birth*.
 Secundus, a, um, *favorable*.
 Tumultus, us, *tumult*.
 Cadaver, -er-is, (§38, Ex. 2.) *corpse*.
 Sensus, us, *feeling, sense*.
 Talentum, i, *talent*.
 As, assis, [m.] *a farthing, a small coin*.
 Religio, -on-is, *religion*.
 Invadere, [-vas-, vas-] *to attack*.
 Neptunus, i, *Neptune, [God of the sea.]*

Confid-ere, [confisus,] *to trust*.
 Cresc-ere, [crev-, cret-] *to grow*.
 Dilab-i, [dilapsus,] *to fall to pieces*.
 Inter-ire, [§111, 9] *interi-, interit-, to perish*.
 Loqu-i, [locutus,] *to speak*.
 Ut-i, [usus,] *to use*.
 Fru-i, [fructus,] *to enjoy*.
 Vesc-i, [—,] *to feed upon, to eat*.
 Confic-ere, [-io, fec-, fect-,] *to finish*.
 Tut-ari, *to protect*.
 In-duc-ere, [dux-, duct-,] *to lead on*.
 Impl-ere, [-plev-, -plet-,] *to fill*.
 spoli-are, *to rob, deprive*.
 Nud-are, *to strip*.
 Prohib-ere, *to keep off, to prevent*.
 Expell-ere, (expul-, expuls-) *to drive out*.
 Inter-dic-ere, (dix-, dict-,) *to forbid*.
 Mut-are, *to change, to exchange*.

EXAMPLES.

Pae mœrore, *On account of grief. A preventing cause.*
 Major natu, *Greater by birth, older, elder.*
 Re, (abl. of res,) *In fact.*
 Dux nobis (XIII) opus est, *A leader is necessary for us.*
 Duce nobis (XIV) opus est, *We have need of a leader.*
 Maturato (part. perf. pass.)
 opus est, *There is need of haste.*
 Cives agris (§160) spoliare, *To deprive the citizens of their land.*
 Equus mihi (§142, Rem. 3) *The horse cost me a talent. (Stood to me at*
 talento stetit, *a talent.*
 Deni in diem assibus (§162) *For or at ten farthings a day.*
 Asse (§162) carum, *Dear at an as.*
 Aqua (§163) aliquem inter-
 dicere, *To cut one off from water.*
 Ali cui (§141 or §142) aquam
 interdiceret, *To forbid water to one.*
 Ali cui (§142) aqua et igni
 (§163) interdiceret, *To cut one off from fire and water, to banish.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Hostes numero (R. XXIV, Rem. 1) freti in nostros impetum fecere. Dux hostium natura (xxiv, Rem. 1) loci confidebat. Decimæ legioni Cæsar maxime confidebat. Concordia (xxiv) res parvæ crescunt; discordia maximæ dilabuntur. Multi oppidanorum fame et siti interierunt. Numidæ plerumque lacte et carne (§159, Rem. 6) vescuntur. Hannibal victoria (§159, Rem. 6) frui quam uti maluit. Catilina, cupiditate regni inductus, conjurationem fecit. Sapientis (§133) est æquo animo dolorem ferre. Cornibus (xxiv). tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones se tutantur. Pater tuus nomine (§161) magis quam imperio (§161) rex fuit. Fratrum maximus natu fuit Orgetorix. Milites urbem tumultu (xxv) implebunt. Neptunus ventis (xxv) secundis vela implevit. Auctoritate tua (xxv) nobis (xiv) opus est. Quantum argenti tibi (xiii) opus est? Quanti (xi) iste equus tibi stetit? Talento, (xxvii). Hæc victoria nobis multo sanguine stetit. Denis (§63) in diem assibus anima et corpus militis æstimantur. Quod (§129, Rem. 2) non opus est asse carum est. Divites eives Romani uxores liberosque militum agris (§163) expellebant. Regulus Carthagine (§163, profectus, Romam (xxi) pervenit. Sacerdotes Balbo (xiii) aqua (xxviii) et igni interdixerant. Consul Roma (xxviii) discessit.

Translate into Latin.

The Britons live mostly on milk and flesh. The general, trusting in the nature of the place, kept his forces in camp. Very many poor (men) have died of hunger and thirst. I cannot speak for (on account of) grief. The townsmen besought Cæsar with many tears. Orgetorix, the richest and most noble of the Helvetians, led on by the

desire of reigning (*regni*), made a conspiracy of the nobility. The soldiers finished the journey with incredible swiftness. Cicero wrote all his speeches with the greatest care and diligence. The Belgians attacked the camp with great shouting. It is the duty (*vii.*) of a young man to respect his elders. Bocchus was king in name, but not in fact. The sailors had loaded the ships with gold. Thou hast deprived the citizens of (their) land; thou hast stripped the temples of (their) silver and gold; thou hast filled the city with blood and corpses; for these things (*ob has res*) I cut thee off from water and fire. We have need of haste. How much gold have we need of? This base fellow will exchange faith and religion for money. Lycurgus forbade the use of gold to his people. The Æduans were not able to keep off the Helvetians from their country.

§ 171.

EXERCISE 56.

Vocabulary.

Statura, æ, stature, height. (Of a man.)	Dic-ere, [dix-, diet-,] to say, to call.
Humilis, -e, (§72, 2.) low.	Duc-ere, [dux-, duct-,] to lead, to deem.
Exiguus, a, um, small, short.	Cup-ere, -io, [cupiv-, capit-,] to desire
Potestas, (tat-is,) power.	Doctus, a, um, learned.
Perpetuus, a, um, continual.	Amplus, a, um, large, much.
Tyrannus, i, king, despot.	Dinidium, i, half.
Genus, (gener-is,) race, family.	Infinitus, a, um, boundless.
Spelunca, æ, cave.	Altitudo, -in-is, depth, height.
Pravus, a, um, depraved.	Exist-ere, [-stit-, -stit-,] to stand out.
Figura, æ, shape, figure.	Paulus, a, um, little. [Usually in neut.]
Anterior, (§72, 4.) lower, of less value, inferior.	Deflagr-are, to burn down, to be consumed.
Posterior, (§72, 4.) later, of less account.	Diana, æ, Diana.
Præcipuus, a, um, special.	Ephesius, a, um, Ephesian.
Varro, -on-is, Varro.	Punicus, a, um, Carthaginian.
Hibernia, æ, Ireland.	Scipio, -on-is, Scipio.
Antequam, [conj.] before.	Africanus, a, um, African. [A surname of Scipio.]
Postquam, [conj.] after.	Britannia, æ, Britain.

EXAMPLES.

Proelium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium, } A battle more fierce than in proportion to the numbers of combatants; or than would have been expected from &c.

Quo (§168) longior dies, eo (§168) nox brevior, } The longer the day, the shorter the night.

Translate into English.

Agesilaus statura (§164, *Rem.* 1) fuit humili, corpore exiguo. Qui (§129, *Rem.* 2) potestate (§164, *Rem.* 1) est perpetua, tyrannus (§130, 2) habetur et dicitur. Lucius Catilina, nobili genere (§159, *Rem.* 3) natus, fuit magna vi (§164, *Rem.* 1) et (*both*) animi et corporis, sed ingenio malo pravoque. Est bos cervi (§164, *Rem.* 2) figura, cujus a media (§128, *Rem.* 8) fronte unum cornu exsistit. Sapientis (§133) est humana omnia virtute (XXX) inferiora ducere. Bello Punico (XXXII) quo (XXX) nullum majus Romani gessere, Scipio Africanus præcipuam gloriam tulit. Hæc verba sunt Varronis, quam fuit Claudius doctioris (§127). Eo die non amplius (§165, *Rem.* 4) tria millia hominum occisi sunt (§128, *Rem.* 3). Gallorum copiarum non longius millia (§153) passuum octo ab castris aberant. Tribus annis (§167, *Rem.* 2, (a),) post bellum civile populus Syphacem regem creavit. Homines quo (XXXIII) plura habent, eo (XXXIII) cupiunt ampliora. Varro Antiochiæ (XXXI, *Exc.*) vixit. Cicero studiorum causa multos annos Athenis habitavit. Qua nocte natus est Alexander, eadem templum Dianæ Ephesiæ deflagavit.

Translate into Latin.

It is the duty of a general to deem his own safety of less account than the common safety. Near the city is a cave of boundless depth. This soldier is of low stature and lame in his feet. I have seen no more beautiful (woman) than Tullia. On that day Cæsar advanced (*procedere*) not more than six miles. The burden was too heavy for his strength. More men were killed than *would have been expected* from the number of combatants. Three days after Cæsar reached the camp, ambassadors were sent by the

Germans The consul was blind for many years before (*antequam*) you were born. The king of the Thracians dwelt many years at Rome. Ireland is less by half than Britain. Cicero was much more eloquent than Crassus. The farther the enemy retreated, the more swiftly did our men pursue. Our horsemen pursued the enemy a little too far.

THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

For change from active to passive construction see § 108.

§ 172. RULE XXXV. Verbs which in the active take another case in addition to the object-accusative, in the passive retain that other case; as,

Liber puero datur, *A book is given to the boy.*
Arbores foliis nudantur, *The trees are stripped of leaves.*

Rem. 1. A second accusative in the active, (except with verbs of teaching and some verbs of asking,) becomes a predicate nominative in the passive. *Urbem vocavit Romam; Urbs Roma vocatur.*

Rem. 2. As intransitive verbs have no direct object in the active, they are not used *personally* in the passive, except with a cognate nominative. (*Cursus curritur.*) When they are used impersonally, the remote object is of course retained. *Mihi a te persuadetur,* I am persuaded by you.

SYNTAX OF THE INDEFINITE VERB.

The *finite* verb consists of the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods; the *indefinite* verb, of the infinitive, participles, gerund, and supine.

INFINITIVE.

§ 173. RULE XXXVI. The infinitive is often used as a neuter noun in the nominative or accusative, and may be the subject of a verb; as,

Gratum est tecum ambulare, *It is pleasant to walk with you.*

§ 174. RULE XXXVII. *Complementary Infinitive*.—The infinitive is used as a *complement* (*filling up*) with certain verbs and adjectives expressing an incomplete idea; as,
Parat bellum gerere, He is preparing to wage war.

Rem. 1. The infinitive with adjectives is rare in prose, the gerund being generally used. *Cupidus moriendi*, rather than *cupidus morire*.

Rem. 2. A *purpose* is not expressed in Latin prose by the infinitive. Thus, *I came to see*, must be translated *veni ut viderem*, not *veni videre*, though this construction is sometimes used by the poets.

Rem. 3. An infinitive expressing an incomplete idea (§130, 3) has the same case after it as before it, if both nouns refer to the same thing; as, *volo esse rex. Nemini medio esse licet. Mihi esse poetæ dii non concessere*, The gods have not permitted me to be a poet. *Pudet me victum discedere*, I am ashamed to come off conquered.

Rem. 4. The accusative with the infinitive (§188) is sometimes used with *licet*, and the predicate noun must then be in the accusative; as, *nimini (se) medium esse licet*.

§ 175. RULE XXXVIII. *Historical Infinitive*. In animated narration the infinitive is often used like a past indicative; as,

Consul in Africam festinare, The consul hastened to Africa.

For the accusative with the infinitive, see §188.

For the construction of participles, see §185.

GERUND, & GERUNDIVE OR PARTICIPLE IN *DUS*.

§ 176. RULE XXXIX. The gerund is a verbal noun in the oblique cases, (the nominative being supplied by the infinitive,) and is construed with the same cases as the verb from which it is derived.

Studium patrem videndi, The desire of seeing my father.

Parcendo victis, By sparing the conquered.

§ 177. RULE XL. Instead of a transitive gerund the gerundive is frequently used; the object-noun being put

into the case of the gerund, and the gerundive agreeing with it in gender, number, and case; as,

Consilium scribendi epistolam,
Consilium epistolæ scribendæ, } *The design of writing a letter.*

Rem. 1. A transitive gerund with an object accusative is not used in the dative or accusative, but the gerundive is used instead; as, *Charta utilis est scribendis epistolis*, or *ad scribendas epistolas*; (not *scribendo epistolas*). So also when the gerund would be the object of a preposition the gerundive is used instead; as, *In victorē laudando*, (not *victorem*), *In praising the conqueror.*

Rem. 2. The gerund is preferred when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun; as, *Studium aliquid faciendi*, *The desire of doing something.*

Rem. 3. The genitive singular of the gerund is sometimes used instead of the genitive plural of the gerundive, with a noun in the genitive plural; *Facultas agrorum latronibus suis condonandi*, *The opportunity of presenting our fields to his ruffians.* So also in the expression, *sui purgandi causa*, for the purpose of excusing themselves; though *sui* may better be regarded the gen. sing. neuter of the possessive, like *nostri* and *vestri*.

Rem. 4. The verbs *utor*, *frutor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and sometimes *meor*, use the gerundive like transitive verbs.

§ 178. RULE XLI. The neuter gerundive is used impersonally with the tenses of *esse*, to express the necessity or duty of doing an action; as,

Scribendum est mihi, *I must write.* (*It must be written by me.*)

Rem. 1. The object of the action is sometimes expressed; as, *nobis ratione utendum est*, *We must use reason.*

But with transitive verbs the personal construction is almost always used; as, *Epistola mihi scribenda est*, *I must write a letter.*

(This use of the gerundive is sometimes called the second Periphrastic Conjugation.)

Rem. 2. The agent is expressed by the dative (§ 145), rarely by the ablative with *a* or *ab*.

SUPINE.

§ 179. RULE XLII. (a.) The supine in *um* (acc.) is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion, and is construed with the same cases as its verb; as,

Venio te rogatum, *I come to ask you.*

(b.) The supine in *u* is used with adjectives as an ablative of limitation (§ 161). As,

Facile factu, *Easy to be done, (with respect to the doing.)*

§ 180

EXERCISE 57.

Vocabulary.


Spatium, *i, opportunity, time.*
 Defessus, *a, um, wearied.*
 Negligens, (*-ent-is*), *careless.*
 Cur-are, *to attend to.*
 Arar, or Araris, *is, (§ 233, Rem. 1.) The*
Saone, a river of Gaul.
 Præd-ari, *to plunder.*
 Frument-ari, *to forage.*
 Honestè, (*adv.*) *honorably.*
 Herminius, *i, Herminius.*
 Verutum, *i, javelin.*
 Eloquentia, *æ, eloquence.*
 Magnanimus, *a, um, magnanimous.*
 Etas, *-tat-is, age, life.*
 Satis, (*noun, adj., or adv.*) *enough.*
 Conserv-are, *to save, preserve.*
 Purg-are, *to cleanse, excuse.*
 Simul, (*adv.*) *at the same time.*
 Propon-ere, (*posu-, posit-*), *to set up.*

Cupidus, *a, um, desirous.*
 Vexillum, *i, flag, standard.*
 Ag-ere, (*eg-, act-*), *to do.*
 Ex-ced-ere, (*cess-, cess-*), *to go out, retire.*
 De-lig-ere, (*leg-, lect-*), *to choose.*
 Di-rip-ere, (*ripu-, rept-*), *to pillage.*
 Adhib-ere, *to apply, to use.*
 Re-scind-ere. (*scid-, sciss-*) *to cut down.*
 Disc-ere, (*didic-, —*), *to learn.*
 Quer-i, questus, *to complain of.*
 Re-pet-ere, (*petiv-, petit-*), *to ask back.*
 Per-cut-ere, (*-io, cuss-, cuss-*), *to strike, kill.*
 Hort-ari, *to exhort.*
 Pro-fug-ere, [*-io, fug-, fugit-*], *to flee.*
 Pro-puls-are, *to repel.*
 Collig-ere, [*leg-, lect-*], *to collect.*
 Cogit-are, *to think.*
 De-sil-ire, [*silu-, sult-*], *to leap down.*
 Arcess-ere, [*-iv-, -it-*], *to send for.*

EXAMPLES.

Neque,—neque,	Neither,—nor.
Spatium excedendi,	Time for retiring.
Consilium capere,	To form a design.
Pontem in flumine faciendum	} To have a bridge built over a river, (to
curare,	
Mihi (§ 145) proficiscendam	} attend to the building a bridge, &c.)
est (§ 178,)	
Mihi proficiscendum erat,	I had to set out.
Cæsari (§ 145) omnia agenda,	Cæsar had to do all things.
Sui (§ 177, Rem. 3) purgandi	} For the purpose of excusing himself,
causa,	
	herself, themselves.

Translate into Latin.

 The verb *esse* is often omitted with participles.

The Gauls had formed the design of *attacking the town*. Time for *retiring* from (*out of*) the fight was not given to the wearied. The hope of *plundering* had recalled the farmers from their fields. The general gave the city to his soldiers *to be plundered*. The chiefs of the State came to Cæsar *for the purpose of excusing themselves*. The king's daughters had fled from home (XXVIII) *for the purpose of saving themselves*. The Gauls send ambassadors to Rome *to complain-of* (*supine*) injuries, and *to seek* redress. A short life is long enough *to accomplish* all these things. Cæsar *had to do* all things at one time; the flag *had to be set up*, the soldiers *recalled* from the work; (those) who had advanced a little too far, *sent for*; the line *had to be drawn up*; the soldiers *exhorted*; the signal *given*. The soldiers *had* at the same time both *to leap-down* from the ships, and *to fight* with the enemy. We learn by teaching. We live by eating. The Helvetians were desirous of *carrying on* war. We must lead the army over the river. We must *respect* our elders, *favor* our friends, *obey* the laws. We *must love* (§178, *Rem.* 2) our parents and *worship* God. The enemy's ships cannot be hurt (§172, *Rem.* 2) by our sailors.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

§ 181. 1. Sentences are either principal or dependent. A principal sentence makes complete sense when standing alone; a dependent sentence does not make complete sense when alone, but must be connected with another sentence.

2. Dependent or subordinate sentences are of ten kinds, viz. :

- [1] *Participial sentences*, i. e. those whose predicate is a *participle*.
- [2] *Infinitive sentences*, i. e. those whose predicate is an *infinitive*.
- [3] *Causal sentences*, introduced by the *causal* conjunctions *quod*, *quia*, &c.
- [4] *Final sentences*, introduced by a *final* conjunction.
- [5] *Conditional sentences*, introduced by a *conditional* conjunction.
- [6] *Concessive sentences*, introduced by a *concessive* conjunction.
- [7] *Comparative sentences*, introduced by a *comparative* conjunction.
- [8] *Temporal sentences*, introduced by a *temporal* conjunction.
- [9] *Relative sentences*, introduced by a *relative* pronoun.
- [10] *Interrogative sentences*, introduced by an *interrogative* word.

3. Every dependent sentence is either a noun, adjective, or adverb, limiting either the subject or predicate of the *principal* sentence on which it depends (*hangs down*).

4. Sentences of the same rank, whether principal or dependent, may be connected by conjunctions, and are then said to be *coordinate* with each other. Coordination is of five kinds, viz. :

- [1] *Copulative*, e. g. His father has abandoned him, *and* his friends have deserted him.
- [2] *Disjunctive* ; e. g. Either his father has abandoned him, *or* his friends have deserted him.
- [3] *Adversative* ; e. g. His father has abandoned him, *but* his friends will not.
- [4] *Causal* ; [introduced by *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *etenim*,] e. g. His friends will desert him, *for* his father has abandoned him.
- [5] *Conclusive* ; e. g. His father has abandoned him, *therefore* his friends will desert him.

THE MOODS.

§182. RULE XLIII. The indicative is used both in principal and dependent sentences when a fact is stated.

§183. RULE XLIV. The subjunctive is used when a thing is stated, not as a *fact*, but simply as *conceived in the mind*;

[a] In a softened assertion; as, *Hoc confirmaverim*, I think I can assert this.

[b] In a question implying doubt, or expecting a negative answer; as, *Quid faciamus!* What shall we do!

(c) To express a supposed case; as, *Forsitan aliquis dixerit*, Perhaps some one will say.

(d) To express a command or prohibition; as, *Ne hoc feceris*, Do not do this.

Rem. The subjunctive is always used to express a command or exhortation in the first person, the imperative having no first person; as, *eamus*, let us go.

TENSES.

§184. The tenses are either primary or historical.

Primary,	{	PRESENT.	FUTURES.	PRES. PERFECT.
		Amat, <i>He loves.</i>	Amabit, <i>He will love.</i>	Amavit, <i>He has loved.</i>
Historical,	{	IMPERFECT.	PAST PERFECT.	AORIST PERFECT.
		Amabat, <i>He was loving.</i>	Amaverat, <i>He had loved.</i>	Amavit, <i>He loved.</i>

RULE XLV. *Succession of Tenses.* If there be a primary tense in the principal sentence, there must be a primary in the dependent sentence; if there be an his-

torical tense in the principal, there must be an historical in the dependent.

PRINCIPAL. DEPENDENT.

Venio ut videam, *I come, that I may see.*

Veniam ut videam, *I will come, that I may see.*

Veni ut videam, *I have come that I may see.*

Veniebam ut viderem, *I was coming that I might see.*

Veni ut viderem, *I came that I might see.*

PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

§185. 1. The participle is used to abridge discourse, and may stand in the place of a *causal, final, conditional, concessive, relative, or temporal* sentence, or a principal sentence connected by *et* with what follows.

2. (a) The participle may agree with the subject or object of the principal sentence, (*participial conjunctive construction*); as, *Aristides patria pulsus Lacedæmonem fugit*, *Aristides* when driven from his country fled to Sparta:—(b) Or, it may stand with a noun or pronoun in the ablative, without grammatical connection with any word in the principal sentence; as, *His rebus constitutis consul discessit*, These things being determined upon, the consul departed. (*Ablative Absolute.*)

3. Here may be noted some peculiarities in the use of the participles.

(a.) The participle in *rus* is used with the verb *esse* to represent the agent as *about to perform, or intending to perform* an action. *Locuturus fuit*, He was on the point of speaking. (This is sometimes called the *First Periphrastic Conjugation*.)

(b.) The participle in *rus*, especially with verbs of motion, is sometimes used to express a *purpose*. *Ad Jovem Ammonem pergīt consul-turus de origine sua*, He goes to Jupiter Ammon to consult about his origin.

(c.) The perfect passive participle is often used like a verbal noun in -io or -us; as, *Ab urbe condita*, *From the building of the city.* *Post prælium factum*, *After the fighting of the battle.*

§ 186. RULE XLVI. (*Ablative Absolute*). A noun and participle whose case depends upon no other word, are put in the ablative called *absolute*, to express the time, cause, condition, or circumstances of an action.

Pythagoras, *Tarquinio regnante*, *Pythagoras came to Italy in the reign of Tarquin*, (*Tarquin reigning*).

Rem. 1. Two nouns, or a noun and adjective, are often used in the ablative absolute without a participle.

Natura duce, *Under the guidance of nature*, (*nature being guide.*)
Manlio consule, *In the consulship of Manlius*, (*Manlius being consul.*)

Rem. 2. This construction is used only when the subject of the participial sentence is different from that of the principal sentence. (A few instances of this construction with a personal pronoun are exceptions.)

§ 187. EXERCISE 58.

Vocabulary.

Repentinus, a, um, *sudden.*

Tempestas, -tat-is, *time.*

Ultior, [274, 1] *further.*

Dyonysius, i, *Dyonysius.*

Syracusæ, arum, *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

Pollicitatio, on-is, *promise.*

Err-are, to err, *to wander.*

De-sper-are, *to despair.*

Atheniensis, is, *an Athenian.*

Messala, æ, *Messala.*

Piso, on-is, *Piso.*

Persa, æ, *a Persian.*

Arrip-ere, [-io, ripu-, rept-,] *to snatch up.*

Nancisc-i, [nactus,] *to obtain.*

Progred-i, [ior, progressus,] *to go forward.*

Cohort-ari, *to encourage, exhort.*

Cond-ere, [condid-, condit-,] *to build, found.*

Com-mitt-ere, [mis-, miss-,] *to commence.*

Del-ere, [delev-, delet-,] *to destroy.*

Aggred-i, [-ior, aggressus,] *to go to, attack.*

Ver-eri, [veritus,] *to fear.*

Ad-duc-ere, [dux-, duct-,] *to lead on.*

Ex sententia, *according to one's notion, satisfactorily.*

EXAMPLE.

Cæsar, *having called a council ordered*, *Cæsar*, *consilio convocato*, *jussit.*

Translate into English.

Nostri, *repentina re perturbati* (§ 185, 2, a) *arma arripunt.* *Barbari*, *multitudine navium perterriti* (§ 185, 2, a)

a litore discesserant. Nactus idoneam ad navigandum (§142, *Rem.* 2) tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia (§167) equites in ulteriorem portum progredi jussit. His rebus ex sententia confectis (§186), imperator, milites cohortatus, praelium commisit. Viginti annis (§167. *Rem.* 2) ante Catonem natum (§185, 3, c) pater meus vita (§163) discessit. Anno (§167) quadragesimo (§63) primo ab urbe condita (§185, 3, c) Numa rex (§130, 2) creatus est. Haud multis annis post Carthaginem deletam (§185, 3, c), Jugurtha natus est. Dionysius tyrannus, Syracusis (§163) expulsus, Corinthi (§166, *Exc.*) pueros docebat. Legatus signum militibus non dedit cupientibus. Natura duce (§186, *Rem.* 1) nunquam errabimus. His rebus constitutis (§186) legati regem de rebus suis desperantem, multis pollicitationibus aggrediuntur (§95, *Rem.* 2). Hac re statim per speculatores (§159, *Rem.* 5) cognita, Cæsar, insidias veritus, exercitum castris (§166) continuit. Alexander in Asiam contendit regnum Persarum occupaturus (§185, 3, b): Cæsar in Italiam profecturus (§185, 3, a) principes civitatum ad se convocat. Consul collem occupaturus est. Athenienses legatos miserunt oraculum consulturos (§185, 3, b), Marco Messala et Marco Pisone consulibus (§186, *Rem.* 1) Orgetorix, cupidine regni adductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit.

Translate into Latin.

Who will err under the guidance of nature? Who, pray, will not err under your guidance? In the consulship of Manlius the Gauls sent ambassadors to Rome. These things having been determined upon, the line of battle having been drawn up, the signal having been given, our men commenced battle. Both parties fought (§114, 5) bravely. The consul, fearing the enemy's cavalry, kept his forces in.

camp (*for*) three days. Two years before the destruction of Carthage the Numidians sent ambassadors to Rome to the senate. The general is going to attack the enemy at sunset. In the reign of Tarquin the proud, many noble citizens were murdered at Rome. The general having called together his lieutenants, ordered them to commence the battle. The Athenians, having consulted the oracle, returned home. Adherbal, (*when*) expelled from Numidia, fled to Rome. These things having been satisfactorily arranged, Cæsar set out to (*in*) Britain.

INFINITIVE SENTENCES.

§188. RULE XLVII. After expressions of *saying, thinking, &c.*, (*verba sentiendi et dicendi*), and certain impersonal expressions, dependent sentences introduced in English by *that*, are expressed in Latin by the accusative with the infinitive; as,

Dicit me scribere, *He says that I write.*

Rem. 1. The infinitive expresses an action as present, past or future, with reference, not to the present time, but to the time of the leading verb.


- | | | |
|-----|--------------------------------|--|
| [a] | Dicit, <i>he says</i> | } me scribere, } me scripsisse, } me scripturum esse, }
that I write, or } that I have written. } that I will write. |
| | Dicet, <i>he will say</i> | |
| | Dixit, <i>he has said</i> | |
| [b] | Dicebat, <i>he was saying</i> | } me scribere, } me scripsisse, } me scripturum esse, }
that I wrote, or } that I had } that I would write. |
| | Dixit, <i>he said</i> | |
| | Dixerat, <i>he had said</i> | |
| [a] | Dicit, &c., | } epistolam scribi, } ep. scriptam esse, } ep. scriptum iri. }
that the letter is be- } that the letter has } that the letter will
ing written.* } been written. } be written. |
| | | |
| | | |
| [b] | Dixit, <i>he said, &c.</i> | } epistolam scribi, } ep. scriptam esse, } ep. scriptum iri. }
that the letter was } that the letter had } that the letter
being written. } been written. } would be written. |
| | | |
| | | |

Hence, after a primary tense (a) the infinitive is translated like the indicative of the same tense, i. e. an inf. present, like an indica-

* A doubtful expression, which, however, has been engrafted upon the language

tive present, &c. ; after an historical tense (b) the inf. present is translated like the indicative imperfect ; the inf. perfect, like the indicative past perfect ; the inf. future like the subjunctive imperfect (*should or would*) ; and the inf. future-perfect (*fuisse scriptum*), like the subjunctive past perfect (*should have, would have*).

Rem. 2 The accusative with the inf. fut. passive is properly the object of the supine, the inf. pres. passive *iri* being used impersonally ; *dicat epistolam scriptum iri*, he says that it is gone to write the letter ; i. e. that some one is going to write it, and hence, that it will be written.

 *Rem. 3.* An infinitive sentence is always a noun-sentence, the object of a verb of saying or thinking, the subject of an impersonal verb, or in apposition with another noun.

§189.

EXERCISE 59.

Vocabulary.

Negare, to deny.

Jugum, i, yoke.

Biennium, i, two years.

Victor, or-is, conqueror.

Prod-itor, or-is, traitor.

Cog-ere, [coeg-, coact-] to compel.

Res familiaris, property.

Familiaris, e, pertaining to the family.

Compar-are, to acquire.

Facultas, tat-is, means, opportunity.

Larg-iri, to bribe.

Neglig-ere, [neglex-, neglect-,] to neglect.

Consid-ere, [sed-, sess-,] to encamp.

Constat, constitit, it is evident.

Animad-vert-ere, [vert-, vers-,] to perceive.

Nosc-ere, [nov-, not-,] to find out, to know.

Conjic-ere, [-io, jec-, ject-,] to hurl.

Pollic-eri, pollicitus, to promise.

Sper-are, to hope.

Renunti-are, to bring back word.

Pell-ere, [pepul-, puls-,] to beat, drive.

Min-ari, to threaten.

Confirm-are, to declare, assert.

Redd-ere, [reddid-, reddit-,] to give back, to return.

Opprim-ere, (oppress-, oppress-,) to oppress.

EXAMPLES.

Sub monte, At the foot of the mountain.

(a.) Cæsari nunciatur, Word is brought, it is announced, to Cæsar.

(b.) Rex se negotium confecturum pollicetur, } The king promises to finish the business.

(c.) Latrones se regem occisuros esse minabantur, } The robbers threatened to slay the king.

(d.) Imperator se regem futurum sperabat, } The general hoped to be king.

(e.) Memoria (§ 166) tenere, To remember.

(f.) Cæsar negat se posse, } Cæsar says that he cannot, (denies that he can.)

- (g.) Turpe est regem mentiri, } *It is base for a king to lie, (that a king lie.)*
 (h.) Constat inter omnes, } *All are aware, (it is evident among all.)*
 (i.) Dicitur Jugurtham regem esse, } *It is said that Jugurtha is king. (Impersonal construction.)*
 Jugurtha dicitur rex esse, } *Jugurtha is said to be king. (Personal construction.)*

Translate into English.

Exploratores dicunt oppidum ab hostibus teneri. Caius fratrem suum magno in periculo esse animadvertit. Cæsari (§ 141) notum est Dumnorigem Helvetiis (§ 142) favere. Reginae nunciabo te venisse. Galba ab exploratoribus certior factus est Gallos omnes discessisse. Cæsari nuntiatum est Gallos propius accedere ac lapides telaque in nostros conjicere. Nuncius pollicetur se negotium ex sententia confecturum esse. Principes seperabant se totius Galliae (§ 159, note) potiri posse. Equites renuntiaverunt oppidum expugnatum esse. Cæsar memoria tenebat Lucium Cassium consulem occisum (esse), exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum esse. Cæsar negavit se Helvetiis iter per provinciam dare posse. Ad eas res conficiendas (§ 177) Helvetii biennium sibi (§ 142) satis esse duxerunt. Æquum est victorem parcere victis (§ 142). Non sine causa dictum est divitias alas habere. Constat inter omnes neminem sine virtute beatum (§ 174, Rem. 3) esse posse.

Translate into Latin.

The cruel chief threatened to slay (§ 189, Exc.) the women and children. Ariovistus declared that he would not return the hostages. Cæsar said that he was not leading the army against his country. This base traitor will say that he has *not* announced our plans to the enemy. Who can assert that he has never violated the laws of God? Dumnorix asserted that he was about to seize the kingdom.

All were aware that the robbers had slain the merchant. It is not just *for a rich man to oppress* the poor. It is said that in Africa men eat human flesh. The Belgians are said to be the bravest of all the Gauls. Word had been brought to Cæsar that the enemy had moved his camp, and had encamped at the foot of the mountain. Cæsar had said (*dicere*) that he would not neglect the injuries of the Æduans. The chief thought that he would compel the nobility by force. The consul hopes by these things to increase (§ 189, Ex. d) his property, and to acquire means for (*ad*) bribing.

CAUSAL SENTENCES.

§ 190. Dependent causal sentences are introduced by all the causal conjunctions except *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *etenim*, which introduce principal sentences.

RULE XLVIII. The subjunctive is used in causal sentences when a statement is made, not as a fact, but as the assertion or opinion of some one else ; as,

Socrates accusatus est quod } *Socrates was brought to trial, because (as*
corrumperet juventutem, } *men said) he corrupted the youth.*

Rem. 1. A verb of saying or thinking is sometimes expressed, and the subjunctive still retained by a species of attraction. What would have been the predicate of the causal sentence becomes the accusative with the infinitive. *Iratu*s est Caius quod diceret *leges esse violatas*, instead of *iratus est Caius quod leges essent violatæ*, Caius was angry, *because* (as he alleged) the laws *had been violated*.

Rem. 2. Dependent causal sentences are nouns, usually limiting the predicate like a causal ablative. The causal conjunctions *quod*, *quia*, &c., are relative words.

§ 191.

EXERCISE 60.

*Vocabulary.*Liscus, i, *Liscus*.Graviter, *severely*.Accus-are, *to censure, accuse, to cull to account*.Quod, (conj.) *because*.Tam, (adv.) *so*.Necessarius, a, um, *necessary, critical*.Propinquus, a, um, *near*.Sublev-are, *to relieve*.Harudes, um, *the Hurulians*.Quia, *because*. (expressing a motive.)Quoniam, (quum—jam,) *since, because*,
(as every body knows.)Unde, (rel. adv.) *whence, from which*.Presens, ent-is, *present*.Incus-are, *to blame, find fault with*.Popul-ari, *to lay waste*.Imped-ire, *to hinder*.Religio, on-is, *religion, a row*.Superstitio, on-is, *superstition*.Intro-duc-ere, [dux-, duct-] *to introduce*.Concilium, i, *council*.Corrump-ere, [rup-, rupt-] *to corrupt*.Re-prehend-ere, [prehend-, prehens-,] *to rebuke*.Vac-are, *to be unoccupied*.Partim, [adv. §31, Rem. 2] *partly*.Consul-ere, [sult-, sult-,] *to consult*.Præter modum, *unduly, beyond measure*.Jact-are, *to discuss, to toss about*.Ratio, on-is, *plan, reason*.

EXAMPLES.

Res ita se habet,

*This is the case, (the thing thus has itself.)*Multis presentibus (§ 186,) *In the presence of many.*Civitati consulere, *To consult for, look to, the state.**Translate into English.*

Cæsar, principibus convocatis, Divitiacum et Liscum graviter accusat quod tam necessario tempore (§167), tam propinquis hostibus (§186, Rem. 1), ab iis non sublevetur; multo (§168) etiam gravius, quod ab iis sit destitutus queritur. Æduli legatos miserunt questum (XLII, [a]) quod Harudes agros eorum popularentur. Socrates necatus est, non quod juventutem corrumpere et novas superstitiones introduceret, sed quia Athenienses de sceleribus reprehendebat. Id ea ratione Cæsar fecit; quod nolebat eum locum unde (§ 129, Rem. 10) Helvetii discesserant vacare (§ 188). Dumnorix se in Gallia relinqui (§ 188) volebat, partim quod insuetus navigandi (IX, [a]) mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediretur. Cæsar, concilio convocato, centuriones omnium ordinum (§ 132) vehementer incusavit quod de rebus minime ad eos pertinentibus sen-

tentiam dixissent. Quoniam civitati [§ 142] consulere non possum, mihi consulam. Quoniam res ita se habet, in urbem redeamus [§ 184, *Rem*].

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar cut down the bridge which he had had built [see §180, examples] over the Rhine, because he was unwilling for the Germans to follow him into Gaul. Was not Aristides banished from his country, because [*as men thought*] he was unduly just? The Æduans complained that [*because*] Ariovistus had [*as he alleged*] led a great army of Germans across the Rhine. Cæsar, because he was unwilling [*a fact*] for these things to be discussed in the presence of the ambassadors, quickly dismissed the council. The consul said that since he could not consult for the state, he would look to his own safety. You desire to slay me, not because [*as you allege*] I have violated the laws of the commonwealth, but because I have rebuked you severely for your crimes. The shepherd blamed his son strongly, because he had neglected to shear the sheep. Since this is the case, let us set out. Liscus said that since such was the case, he would speak a few things.

FINAL SENTENCES.

§192. Final sentences express a *purpose* or *result*, (the end to which an action tends,) and are introduced by the final conjunctions *ut, ne, quo, quin, quominus*.

§193. RULE XLIX. The predicate of a final sentence is in the subjunctive; as,

Veni ut videam, I have come to see.

NOTE.—As a purpose has reference to the future, and is not a fact, but something conceived in the mind, it should obviously be ex-

pressed by the subjunctive. A result is a *purpose accomplished*, and was regarded by the Latins, not so much in the character of a fact, as of what was intended to follow, or would naturally be expected to follow, in the circumstances, and is therefore indeterminate; hence the use of the subjunctive.

Rem. 1. *Ut* or *uti* expresses either a purpose or a result.

Veni ut videam, I have come to see, (that I may see.)
Eo impetu milites ierunt ut } The soldiers went with such violence that
hostes se fugæ mandarent, } the enemy took to flight.

Rem. 2. [a.] *Ne* always expresses a purpose, [*that—not, lest.*]

Te obsecro ne hoc facias, I beseech you not to do this.

A negative result must be expressed by *ut—non*.

[b.] With verbs of fearing *ne* is translated *that*, and *ut*, *that—not*, the final sentence being constructed with reference to the *contrary purpose* or *hope* implied in the verb of fearing. *Timeo ne moriatur, I am afraid that he will die.* [*It is my purpose that he shall not.*] *Timeo ut moriatur, I am afraid that he will not die.* [*It is my purpose that he shall.*]

Ne—non is sometimes used for emphasis, especially after a negative; as, *Non vereor ne tua virtus opinioni hominum non respondeat*, I am not afraid that your valor will not answer the expectation of men.

Rem. 3. *Quo, that*, is generally used in preference to *ut*, when a comparative enters the sentence.

Cæsar pontem fecit quo facilius flumen transiret.

Rem. 4. *Quin, but that, but that—not*, [= *qui non* or *ut—non*,] is used with negative expressions and expressions of doubt.

Nemo est quin putet, There is one who does not think.

Nemo tam imperus est quin putet, No one is so foolish as not to think.

Rem. 5. Quominus, that—not, is generally used with expressions of hindering in preference to ne.

Nihil Caio obstat quominus scribat, Nothing hinders Caius from writing

Quin is sometimes used if a negative precedes.

Rem. 6. Ut is often omitted after volo and verbs of permitting, asking, advising, commanding, reminding.

Ne is is often omitted after cave.

Rem. 7. A final sentence is usually a noun, though a result may be an adverb limiting sic, ita, tam, tantus, &c. Ut in the sense of as is always a relative word.

§ 194. EXERCISE 61. (*Ut, Ne, Quo.*)

Vocabulary.

Commutatio, on-is, *change.*

Alacritas, tat-is, *cheerfulness.*

Morti-fer, a, um, *mortal, deadly.*

Pristinus, a, um, *former.*

Communicatio, on-is, *communication.*

Neu, or neve, [cop. fin. conj.] *and that not, nor, [after a final sentence.]*

Motus, us, *movement, insurrection.*

Adduc-ere, [dux-, duct-,] *to lead to or against, to bring.*

Colloqui, locutus, *to confer, converse.*

Ex equis or equo, *on horseback.*

Pac-are, *to subdue.*

Item, [conj.] *likewise.*

Subito, (adv.) *suddenly.*

Una, (adv.) *together.*

Continens, ent-is, *continent.*

Imper-are, (intr.) *to order.*

Præ-cip-ere, (io, cep-, cept-,) *to instruct, enjoin upon.*

Edic-ere, [dix-, dict-,] *to issue an edict.*

In-stitu-ere, (stitu-, stitut-,) *to instruct, teach.*

In-cend-ere, (cend-, cens-,) *to set on fire.*

Ex-ur-ere, (uss-, ust-,) *to burn up.*

In-nasc-i, innatus, *to be born in, to spring up.*

Tim-ere, (timu-,) *to fear. [as a coward.]*

Metu-ere, [metu-,] *to fear, to be apprehensive.*

Ver-eri, *to feel awe of, to fear. [As timere never, and metuere rarely has a supine-stem, the tenses formed from that stem are supplied by vereri in either sense.]*

Coqu-ere, [cox-, coct-,] *to cook.*

EXAMPLES.

	Negative Purpose.	Negative Result.
<i>That—no, that—not any,</i>	Ne quis, (§89, Rem. 2)	Ut nullus.
<i>That no one,</i>	Ne quis,	Ut nemo.
<i>That no one at all,</i>	Ne quisquam,	Ut nemo omnium.
<i>That—never,</i>	Ne unquam,	Ut nunquam.
<i>That nothing,</i>	Ne quid,	Ut nihil.
<i>Tanta vis probitatis est ut eam vel in hoste diligamus,</i>	} <i>So great is the power of honesty, that we love it even in an enemy.</i>	

N. B. In final sentences expressing a result, the subjunctive is translated like the indicative of the same tense.

Operam dare, To take care.

Præceptum est, Instructions were given.

Edictum est, An edict was issued.

Pater filio præcepit ne unquam } The father instructed his son never
mentiretur, } to lie.

Dominus servo imperavit ut e- } The master commanded the servant to
quum infrenaret, } bridle the horse.

Dominus servo imperavit ne e- } The master ordered the servant not to
quum infrenaret, } bridle the horse.

Translate into English.

Id mihi sic erit gratum ut gratus esse nihil possit. Ea non ut te instituerem scripsi. Cæsar castella communit, quo facilius Helvetios prohibere possit. Oppidani multis cum lacrymis imperatorem obsecrabant ne oppidum incenderet. Præceptum erat Labieno ne prælium committeret. Esse [§ 111, 8] oportet ut vivamus, non vivere ut edamus. In eo itinere Orgetorix persuasit Castico [§ 141, note] ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet; itemque Dumnorigi Æduo, fratri [§ 127] Divatiaci, ut idem conaretur persuasit. Rauracis persuasum erat uti, oppidis suis vicisque exustis [§ 186], una cum Helvetiis proficiscerentur. Consul edixit ne quisquam in castris coctum cibum venderet. Tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit ut omnium animos perturbaret. Hac oratione habita [§ 186], tanta commutatio facta est ut summa alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi [§ 177] innata esset. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. Consul militibus imperavit ne quem civem interficerent. Cæsar veritus ne quis motus in Gallia fieret, Labienum in continente reliquit. Milites metuunt ne mortiferum sit vulnus Scipionis. Timeo ut hostes ad urbem perveniant. Cæsar milites cohortatus est ut suæ pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent, neu perturbarentur.

animo [§ 161.] Opera dabatur *ne* quod iis [§ 143] colloquium inter se, neve communicatio esset.

Translate into Latin.

The enemy ran forward so swiftly *that time was not given* to our men for throwing their darts. So great a panic took possession of the citizens *that no man was able* to take up arms. An edict has been issued *that no one leave* the town. Instructions had been given to the horsemen *not to pursue* the enemy too far. Wise men eat *to live*, but fools and gluttons *live to eat*. I advise you, my son, *never to believe* a liar. Balbus is such a liar [*so lying*] *that he is never believed* [*it is never believed to him.*] I fear *that some one* has announced our plans to the enemy. Ariovistus demanded *that they should confer* on horseback, and *not bring* more [*amplius*] than ten horsemen apiece to the conference. The Belgians fearing [*having feared*] *that if all Gaul were subdued* [*abl. abs.*] the army of the Romans *would be led against* [*ad*] them, collected great forces. The citizens feared *that the auxiliaries would not reach* the city. Cæsar commanded [*imperare*] the soldiers *to run forward* swiftly, and *not give* the enemy time for collecting themselves. Ariovistus said that he feared *that snares were prepared* for him. It has been said that brave men do not fear death. The consul thought that Catiline had formed the design of setting the city on fire. An edict was issued *that no bread* [*nothing of bread*] nor any [*quis*] other cooked food should be introduced into the camp.

§ 195. EXERCISE 62.—(*Quin, quominus.*)

Vocabulary.

Flere, (flev-, flet-,) *to weep.*
Dubius, a, um, *doubtful.*

Ob-st-are, (stit-, stit-,) *to stand in the way*
of, to hinder. (Intr.)

Compell-are, *to call, address.*

Dubit-are, *to doubt.*

Circum-ven-ire, (ven-, vent-) *to surround.*

Conjunctio, on-is, *friendship, intimacy.*

Avoc-are, *to call away, separate.*

Investig-are, *to investigate.*

Cimon, on-is, *Cimon.*

Custos, custod-is, *guard.*

Itaque, (conj.) *and so, therefore.*

Haud multum, (§153) *not much, not far.*

Bib-ere, [bib-, bibit-,] *to drink.*

Im-ped-ire, *to prevent, to tangle the feet.*
(Tr.)

De-terr-ere, *to frighten off, to deter.*

Præter-mitt-ere, (mis-, miss-) *to leave undone.*

Ad-spic-ere, -io, [spex-, spect-,] *to look at.*

Im-pon-ere, [posu-, posit-,] *to post, to place.*

Fru-i, fructus, *to enjoy.*

Parmenio, on-is, *Parmenio.*

Medicus, i, *physician.*

Medicamentum, i, *dose of medicine.*

EXAMPLES.


Fieri non potest quin venturus sit, } *It cannot be that he is not going*
to come, (but that he is going to }
come); He is certainly going to }
come.

Nunquam adspexit quin fratricidam compellaret, *She never saw him without calling him a fratricide.*

Milites retinere non possum quin currant, *I cannot restrain the soldiers from running.*

Facere or mihi } non possum quin fleam; *I cannot help weeping.*
temperare }

Non est dubium } quin deus mun- } *There is no doubt } that God*
Negari non potest } dum regat, } *It cannot be denied } rules the*
Quis dubitat } } *Who doubts } world.*

 After the above expressions quin must be translated that.

Nihil prætermisi quin ad te veniam, *I have left nothing undone to come to you.*

Nihil Caio obstat quominus veniat, } *Nothing hinders Caius from*
Nihil obstat quominus Caius veniat, } *coming.*

Per me stat quominus venias, • *It is my fault that you do not come.*

Quid te impedivit quominus venires? *What prevented you from coming?*

Minimum (§153) abfuit quin caderet, *He was very near falling.*

Translate into English.

Non dubium est quin virtus summum sit bonum. Balbum nunquam adspexit quin proditorem compellaret. Fieri non potest quin alii a nobis dissentiant. Non dubitavit Adherbal quin Jugurtha eum interficere conaretur. Quis dubitare potest quin multo (§168) turpius sit fallere quam falli? Germani retineri non potuerunt quin in nostros tela conjicerent. Per Considium stetit quominus Cæsar Helve-

tios *circumveniret*. Orgetorix non dubitat *quin* brevi tempore totius Galliæ regnum occupaturus sit. Altitudo fluminis hostes deterrebat *quominus* transire conarentur. Nihil prætermisit Cicero *quin* Pompeium a Cæsaris conjunctione *avocaret*. Nihil tam difficile est *quin* quærendo investigari possit. Cimon nunquam in hortis custodem imposuit, *ne* quis *impediretur* *quominus* fructibus (§159, *Rem.* 6) *fruere-tur*. Parmenio audiverat venenum a Philippi medico regi (§141) parari; itaque epistola scripta (§186) eum deterere voluit *quominus* medicamentum biberet quod medicus dare constituerat.

Translate into Latin.

It cannot be denied that Cæsar was (a man) of the greatest courage. Who can doubt that our men are able to sustain the attack of the enemy (for) many months? The general *will certainly* relieve us in a few days. It cannot be denied that your son was born many years (§167, *Rem.* 2) after the building (§185, 3, c) of the city. I never converse with you *without becoming* wiser. What hinders us *from persuading* Marius *not to storm* the town? It was not Cicero's fault that Pompey was not separated from intimacy with (of) Cæsar. The army was *not far from being beaten* and *sent* under the yoke. The soldiers could not be restrained *from running forward* with a great shout. Orgetorix was not far from *getting possession of* the government of all Gaul. There is no man *but knows* that all things are ruled by God. The queen could not help *weeping*.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

§196. Express a condition, and are introduced by the conditional conjunctions, *si*, if; *nisi* or *ni*, unless, if—not; *sin*, but if; *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, provided.

The principal sentence, or complement of the condition, is called the *conclusion*.

§ 197. RULE L. (a.) If the condition is represented as a *fact*, the indicative is used both in the condition and conclusion.

Si vera dicis, leges violavi, } If you speak the truth, (of which I have
no doubt,) I have broken the laws.

(b.) If the condition is represented as *possible*, or *likely to be realized*, the subjunctive present or perfect is used in the condition, and the indicative, (generally future,) in the conclusion. (*Indeterminate Condition*.)

Si pecuniam habeat, dabit, If he has the money, he will give it.

Si mihi pecuniam dederit, ibo, } If he will give (shall have given) me
the money, I will go. (The money
must be given before I go.)

(c.) If the *non-existence* of the condition is implied, the subjunctive is used both in the condition and conclusion, the imperfect for present or future time, the past-perfect for past time.

Si pecuniam haberet, daret, } If he had money (now,) he would give it.
If he should have money, (at any future
time) he would give it.

Si pecuniam habuisset, dedisset, } If he had had money, he would have
given it. (Past time.)

Rem. 1. On the same principle the subjunctive-present or present-perfect is used to express a possible wish, the imperf. or past-perf., to express a vain wish.

Utinam filius } vivat!
viveret ! O that my son } may live!
vixisset ! } were living!
had lived !

Rem. 2. The condition is sometimes (a.) implied in some other expression; as, *sine cibo nemo vivere posset*, No one would be able to live without food; or (b.) altogether suppressed, in which case the

indicative imperfect is frequently used; as, *Satius erat mori quam mentiri*, It would be better (if necessary) to die than to lie.

Rem. 3. When the non-existence of the condition is implied, the indicative (especially the imperfects *decebat*, *oportebat*, *debebam*, *poteram*, and *eram* with a gerundive or adjective,) are sometimes used in the conclusion; as, *Si victoria dubia esset tamen omnes bonos reipublicæ subvenire decebat*, If the victory were doubtful, yet all good men ought to come to the assistance of the State.

Rem. 4. The use of the imperfect or past-perfect in a conditional sentence does not necessarily imply the non-existence of the condition, as they are often used simply because the leading verb is past, and not because the character of the condition requires their use. See §184.

Rem. 5. In a conditional sentence the subjunctive is usually translated like the indicative.

Rem. 6. Conditional sentences are adverbs.

§ 198.

EXERCISE 63.

Vocabulary.

Minu-ere, [minu-, minut-] to make less, to weaken.	Utiram, [interj.] O that! I wish that.
Exerc-ere, to exercise.	Con-ven-ire, [ven-, vent-] to agree.
Subig-ere, [eg-, act-] to subjugate.	Stipendium, i, tribute, tax.
Lacess-ere, [iv-, it-] to provoke.	Pend-ere, [pend-, pens-] to weigh, to pay.
Injuria lacess-ere, to provoke by injury, to injure.	Quotannis, [adv.] yearly.
Dol-ere, to grieve.	In-cit-are, to arouse.
Præceptum, i, precept.	Perpetuus, a, um, unending.
Inimicitia, æ, enmity.	Re-spond-ere, [spond-, spons-] to answer.
Adhuc, [adv.] still, yet.	Cav-ere, [cav-, caut-] to avoid.
Mature, [adv.] soon.	Invit-are, to invite.
	Vera dicere, to speak truth, [true things].
	Subvenire alicui, to come to one's assistance.

(a) *Si hoc feceris, te amabo*, If you do (shall have done) this, I will love you. (The doing must be accomplished before the loving.)

(a) If the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can follow, the Latins use a perfect tense, where in English we use a present.

Translate into English.

Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceas. Si Helvetii flumen transire conentur, Cæsar eos prohibebit. Cæsar Æduis bellum intulisset nisi obsides misissent. Alexander, si diutius vixisset, totum orbem terrarum subegisset. Utinam pater meus vivat! Utinam rex viveret! Cæsar ab Ariovisto postulavit ne quam multitudinem hominum in Galliam transduceret, neve Æduos injuria (§159) lacesseret, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret; "Si id ita feceris," inquit, "mihi (§143) populoque Romano perpetua amicitia tecum erit." Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit; "Æduis injuria (§159) bellum non inferam, si in eo quod convenerunt mancant, stipendiumque quotannis pendant." Nisi te satis incitatum esse considerem, plura scriberem. Sine ferro (§197, Rem. 2, [c]) fieri non posset (*it would be impossible*) ut agri colerentur. Imperatore interfecto (§197, Rem. 2) fieri non potest quin exercitus pellatur. Si vis me flere, primum dolendum est (§178) ipsi tibi (§145).

Translate into Latin.

If you speak the truth, Cato has done (to) you a great injury. If this is the case (§191, Ex.), I will set out immediately to Rome. No man can be happy, unless his life is ruled by the precepts of virtue. If Cæsar had been able to avoid these enmities, he would be still living. If I knew, I would say. If you live well, you will die happily. I wish you had come a little (§168) sooner. Ariovistus would not have led his army across the Rhine unless he had been invited by the Sequanians. It would be impossible to believe this report if we did not know that the messenger always speaks the truth. If I had known your danger, I would have come to your assistance. If I go to Rome, I will send

you the money which you demand. If the Helvetians *had endeavored* to cross the river, Cæsar *would have prevented* them. Ariovistus *would not be waging* war on the Æduans if they *had paid* the tribute. Without an army it *would be impossible* to wage war.

CONCESSIVE SENTENCES

§ 199. Express something *granted* or *yielded*, and are introduced by the concessive conjunctions *etsi*, *quanquam*, *tametsi*, *licet*, *quamvis*, *etiamsi*, &c., with the general meaning *although*.

§ 200. RULE LI. (a) If the thing granted is represented as a *fact*, the indicative is used, generally with *quanquam*, *etsi*, or *tametsi*; as,

Romani, quanquam fessi erant,	}	<i>The Romans, though they were weary,</i> <i>yet march in order of battle.</i>
tamen instructi procedunt,		

(b) A concession merely for argument's sake, or where the non-existence of the thing granted is implied, (a mere conception), is expressed by the subjunctive, usually with *quamvis* or *licet*, sometimes with *etiamsi* or *etsi*; as,

<i>Mendacium, quamvis oculufitur,</i>	}	<i>A falsehood, though it be concealed,</i> <i>is nevertheless base.</i>
<i>tamen turpe est,</i>		

Rem. 1. The complement of a concessive sentence is an adversative sentence introduced by *tamen*.

Rem. 2. *Quanquam* is properly the acc. sing. fem. of *quisquis*; (*rem* being understood); thus (a) *In respect to whatever thing the Romans were weary, &c.*

Rem. 3. *Etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi*, (*even if*;) and *ut* in the sense of *even if*, *although*, are properly conditional conjunctions, the mood to be used depending upon the character of the condition. (See §197).

Rem. 4. Quamvis, quantumlibet, quamlibet, are properly relative pronouns, (as much as you please, however much). Thus, in example (b), A falsehood, however much it may be concealed, let it be concealed as much as you please, &c. (See §210, Rem. 3).

Rem. 5. Licet is an impersonal verb, ut being omitted; as, Freeman omnes licet, dicam quod sentio, Though all cry out, (it is allowed that all cry out,) I will say what I think.

Rem. 6. The subjunctive is always used with ut or quum concessive.

Rem. 7. Concessive sentences are adverbs.

§ 201.

EXERCISE 64.

Vocabulary.

Occult-are, to conceal.

Fessus, a, um, weary.

Nondum, (adv.) not yet.

Tamen, (conj.) nevertheless, yet.

Emolumentum, i, advantage.

Crebro, (adv.) frequently.

Put-are, to think.

Strenuus, a, um, brisk, active.

Italicus, i, Italian.

Penes, (prep.) with, in the power of.

Deditio, on-is, surrender.

Advers-ari, to resist, object.

Sic, (adv.) thus.

Cognosc-ere, (nov-, cognit-,) to find out.

Accid-ere, (accid-, —,) to happen.

Suspici-ari, to suspect

Coh-sequi, secutus, to follow, to pursue, to attain.

Nesc-ire, not to know.

Suad-ere, suas-, suās-, to advise.

Potior, us, (potis, potissimus,) better; preferable to.

Reri, ratus, to think, to deem.

Transire, (transi-, transi-,) to pass over, to pass away. (§111, 9.)

Vit-are, to shun, to escape.

Translate into English.

Quod turpe est, id, *quamvis occultetur*, honestum fieri nullo modo potest. Nostri milites *quanquam* itinere et prælio fessi erant, tamen, consule imperante, ad summum (§128 *Rem. 8*) collem celeriter procurrerunt. Cæsar, *etsi* nondum eorum consilia *cognoverat*, tamen fere id quod accidit suspicabatur. Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt, quod decet, *etsi* nullum consecuturum emolumentum *vident*. Quod (§129, *Rem. 2*) crebro aliquis videt, non miratur, *etiamsi* causam *nescit*. *Licet* strenuum metum *putes* esse, velocior tamen spes est. Italici Adherbali suadent *uti* se et oppidum Jugurthæ *tradat*; at ille, *tametsi* omnia potiora (XVIII, b) fide (XXX) Jugurthæ rebatur, tamen quia penes Italicos,

si adversaretur (§197, *Rem.* 4), cogendi potestas erat, dedicationem facit. Divitiæ, *quamvis* magnæ sint, tamen alas habent. *Quamvis* prudens atque sapiens sis, mortem vitare nullo modo potes: sic transit gloria mundi.

COMPARATIVE SENTENCES

§ 202. Express comparison, and are introduced by comparative conjunctions, (*than, as,*) *quam, sicut, velut, prout, tanquam, quasi, utsi, acsi*; with *ac* and *atque* (as or than).

§ 203. RULE LII. In comparative sentences . . .

(a) A *fact* is expressed by the indicative; as,
Quam maximas potest copias cogit, He collects as great forces as he can.

(b) A *mere conception* and not a fact, is expressed by the subjunctive; as,

Me adspicitis quasi monstrum essem, You gaze at me as if I were a monster.

Rem. 1. The comparative conjunctions are for the most part either relative or conditional words. Thus *quam, than*, is a relative, *rem* being understood. Cicero eloquentior fuit quam (*rem*) Cæsar (*eloquens fuit*). *In-respect-to-what Cæsar was eloquent, Cicero was more eloquent*; i. e. *Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar*. So in example (a), (*Copias cogit (tam) maximas quam potest, He collects forces very great in that degree in which-degree he can,*) *quam* is an adverbial relative, *tam* understood being its antecedent. In the example, *In horto ambulabam sicut meus est mos, (— as my custom is), sic* is an adverbial demonstrative limiting *ambulabam*, and *ut* an adverbial relative having *sic* as its antecedent;—(*In horto eo modo ambulabam quo modo meus est mos ambulare*). In example (b) *quam* (*quasi=quam*) is a relative, and *si* a conditional conjunction. *Me aspiceretis quam adspiceretis si &c.* You gaze at me *as (you would gaze) if* I were &c.

Rem. 2. In comparative sentences the subjunctive is mostly translated by the indicative.

• Rem. 3. Comparative sentences are adverbs.

TEMPORAL SENTENCES

§ 204. Point out the time of an action, and are introduced by the temporal conjunctions *ut, ubi, quum*, when; *postquam, posteaquam*, after; *antequam, priusquam*, before; *quando*, when, whenever; *simulac, simul*, as soon as; *dum, donec, quoad*, while, as long as, until.

NOTE 1. In the narration of facts, the indicative will of course be used in temporal sentences; as, *Postquam in urbem venit*, After he came into the city.

NOTE 2. The adverbial relative *quum* or *cum*, (at what time, when, while), frequently has also a *causal* or *concessive* force, *since, although*. As a pure particle of time, it takes the indicative; but it is also followed by the subjunctive imperfect or past-perfect in the narration of past facts, especially when the aorist-perfect is used in the principal sentence. When the subjunctive is used, however, the idea of cause is usually combined with that of time. *Quum*, *causal* or *concessive*, always takes the subjunctive. Hence,

§ 205. RULE LIII. The subjunctive is always used (a) with *QUUM causal* or *concessive*; (b) frequently also with *QUUM temporal*, especially when the aorist-perfect is used in the principal sentence.

(a) *Quæ quum ita sint*, Since these things are so.

(a) *Ceres frumenta invenit, quum antea homines glandibus vescerentur*, Ceres invented grains, whereas men before lived on acorns.

(b) *Quum nostri arma cepissent, hostes se receperunt*; When our men had taken up arms, the enemy retreated. (Here *quum cepissent* points out both the time and cause of the enemy's retreat.)

§ 206. RULE LIV. With *antequam* and *priusquam* (a) the indicative is used to express the simple priority

of one action to another, (both having actually been performed.)

Filios convocavit antequam mortuus est, He called together his sons before he died.

(b) The subjunctive is used, (1), when the action is future and doubtful; (2), when the non-existence of the action is implied; (3), in indefinite general expressions.

(1) *Cæsar, priusquam quidquam* } *Cæsar, before he attempted any-*
conaretur, Divitiacum vocavit, } *thing, called Divitiacus.*

(The attempting was future to the calling, and dependent upon the result of Cæsar's interview with Divitiacus).

(2) *Prius ad hostium castra pervenit,* } *He reached the enemy's camp*
quam Germani quid ageretur } *before the Germans could*
sentire possent; } *find out what was going on.*

(It is here implied that the Germans never could find out.)

(3) *Tempestas minatur antequam* } *The tempest threatens before it*
surgat, } *rises. (A general truth).*

Rem. 1. After a future in the principal sentence, the indicative present or future-perfect is used with *antequam* and *priusquam*; as, *Antequam pro Murena dicere instituo, Before I begin to speak for Murena, I will say a little for myself.*

Rem. 2. In historical narrative the subjunctive imperfect and past perfect are sometimes used with these conjunctions, very much in the same way as with *quum* temporal. *Paucis ante diebus quam Syracusæ caperentur, A few days before Syracuse was taken.*

§ 207. RULE LV. *Dum, donec, and quoad*, in the sense of *until*, are followed by the indicative when a fact is stated; by the subjunctive, when the action is doubtful or future, (not a *fact*, but a *conception*).

Locum relinquere noluit } *He would not leave his post till Milo should*
dum Milo veniret, } *come.*

(These conjunctions in the sense of *while, as long as*, take the indicative.)

Rem. 1. All temporal sentences are adverbs, and in such sentences the subjunctive is for the most part translated like the indicative.

§208,

EXERCISE 65.

*Vocabulary.*Aries, -etis, *ram.*Infirmus, a, um, *weak.*Scapha, æ, *boat.*Commius, i, *Commius.*Atrebas, [at-is,] *Atrebatian.*Mandatum, i, *order.*Ver, [ver-is,] *spring.*Acerbus, a, um, *bitter.*Phocion, on-is, *Phocion.*Perpetuo, *continually.*Epaminondas, æ, *Epaminondas*, [App. I.]Obsidio, on-is, *siege.*Pavor, or-is, *fright.*Se recipere, *to recover one self.*Expectare dum, *to wait for anything to happen.*Periculum facere, *to make a trial.*Fulguratio, on-is, *lightning.*Sonus, i, *sound.*Rusticus, a, um, *rustic.*Suessiones, um, *Suessians.*Bœotii, orum, *Bœotians.*Dementia, æ, *madness.*Sui-ere, [sumps-, sumpt-,] *to take.*Rosa, æ, *rose,*Verres, -is, *Verres.*Compl-ere, [plev-, plet-,] *to fill.*De-ferre, [tul-, lat-,] *to carry [from one place or person to another.]*Dis-ferre, [distul-, dilat-,] *to put off, defer.*In-cip-ere, [-io, cep-, cept-,] *to begin.*In-cid-ere, [incid-, incas-,] *to fall upon.*Con-sperg-ere, [sper-, spers-,] *to sprinkle.*Præ-st-are, [stit-, stit- and stat-,] *to be superior.*At-ting-ere, [-tig-, tact-,] *to touch, reach.*De-sist-ere, [stit-, stit-,] *to leave off.*Bell-are, *to war.*Claud-ere, [claus-, claus-,] *to shut up.*Ex-pon-ere, [posu-, posit-,] *to set forth, explain.*Præ-mitt-ere, [mis-, miss-,] *to send before.*De-fervescere, [ferv-,] *to subside.*Inter-ced-ere, [cess-, cess-,] *to come between, to intervene.*Deliber-are, *to deliberate.*De-flu-ere, [deflux-, deflux-,] *to flow away.**Translate into English.*1. QUUM, *when, since, although, whereas.*

Cæsar quum id nunciatum esset, maturavit ab urbe proficisci. Quod (§129, *Rem. 9*) cum animadvertisset Cæsar, scaphas longarum navium militibus (XXV) compleri jussit. Britannii Commium Atrebatem, quum ad eos Cæsaris mandata deferret, comprehenderant, et in vincula conjecerant. Quum rosam viderat, tum incipere (§188) ver arbitratur. O acerbam mihi memoriam (XXIII) temporis illius et loci, quum hic in me incidit, quum complexus est, conspersitque lacrymis, nec loqui præ mœrore potuit! Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset. Homines, quum multis rebus (XXVI) infirmiores sint, hac re (§161) maxi-

me bestiis (§142) præstant, quod loqui possunt. Ædui, *quum* se suaque ab Helvetiis defendere non *possint*, legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt rogatum (XLII) auxilium. *Quum* vita sine amicis metus (IX, [a]) plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare. Quæ *cum* ita sint, ad urbem proficiscamur (§183, Rem.)

2. *Postquam, antequam, priusquam.*

Ea *postquam* Romæ audita sunt, timor omnes invasit. Decem *post* diebus (§167, Rem. 1 & 2) *quam* Cæsar in Italiam pervenit, legiones duæ erant conscriptæ.

(R. LV, [a]) *Ante* decimum diem (§167, Rem. 2) *quam* vita (§163) discessit, liberos omnes convocavit. Hæc omnia *ante* facta sunt *quam* Verres Italiam attigit. Epaminondas non *prius* bellare destitit *quam* Lacedæmonem obsidione (§159) clausit.

(b) Cives *prius* se dediderunt *quam* aries murum attigisset. *Antequam* de republica dicam, exponam breviter consilium meum. Cæsar *priusquam* hostes se ex pavore et fuga *reciperent*, in fines Suessionum exercitum duxit. Ad hæc cognoscenda *priusquam* periculum faceret, Caium præmittit. *Ante* videmus fulgurationem *quam* sonum audiamus.

3. *Dum, donec, quoad.*

Dum hæc geruntur, Cæsari nunciatum est hostes propius accedere. Lucius, quoad potuit, pontem defendit. Epaminondas, quum animadverteret mortiferum se vulnus accepisse, ferrum in corpore continuit *quoad* renuntiatum est vicisse (§188) Bœotios. Irati rogandi sunt*, ut vim differant, *dum* defervescat ira. Cæsar, ut spatium intercedere posset *dum* milites convenirent, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum. Dum vivimus (§183, Rem.) vivamus. Cæsar summæ dementiæ (vii) esse iudicabat, ex-

* Ought to be requested.

spectare *dum* hostium copiae augerentur. Rusticus exspectat *dum* defluat amnis.

RELATIVE SENTENCES

§209. Are introduced by a relative word. (For construction of relatives see §129.)

The predicate of a relative sentence is of course in the indicative when a *fact* is stated. The subjunctive is used in three cases.

§210. RULE LVI. The subjunctive is used in relative sentences ; (a) expressing *purpose*, *result*, or *cause* (*qui=ut* or *quod* with *demonstrative*). As,

Legatos miserunt qui (=ut ii)	} They sent ambassadors to sue for peace.
pacem peterent,	
Non is sum qui hoc faciam,	} I am not such a one as to do this.
Male fecit Hannibal qui	} Hannibal did wrong in wintering (because
Capuæ hiemarit,	

(b) In indefinite general expressions, both affirmative and negative.

Sunt qui dicant, There are some who say.

<i>Nemo est orator qui se Demosthenis</i>	} No one is an orator who is unwilling to be like Demosthenes.
<i>similem esse nolit</i> ,	

(c) To express the words or opinions of some one else, and not of the author,

<i>Nunicatum est equites qui</i>	} Word was brought that the horsemen who
<i>præmissi essent revertisse</i> ,	

Rem. 1. The subjunctive with *qui* expresses a purpose with reference to the *object* of the sentence, a purpose with reference the subject being expressed by *ut*. (See §193, §180, Example.) Thus *qui pacem peterent* means, *that they, (the ambassadors,) might seek peace*. *Qui* may be used with the passive construction ; *Legati missi sunt qui pacem peterent* ; where the object in the active becomes subject in the passive.

Rem. 2. *Quippe*, *utpote*, and *ut* are frequently joined with *qui* expressing a cause. The indicative is frequently used with *quippe qui*.

Rem. 3. The subjunctive is used in indefinite general expressions introduced by any relative word, whether adjectival or adverbial. *Ubi res posceret castellum communivit*, Wherever circumstances required, he built a fort. Such relative sentences express a condition,—thus, *If circumstances anywhere required*, &c. But the indicative is frequently used; as, *Quamcunque in partem nostri impetum fecerant, hostes loco cedere cogeantur*.

Rem. 4. The poets and some prose writers use the indicative with *sunt qui*, *erant qui*, &c. The indicative will of course be used when a definite subject is introduced. *Sunt feræ quæ domari non possunt*, There are wild beasts which cannot be tamed. (A fact.) But the subjunctive is used even then, if a particular fact is not stated; as, *sunt feræ quæ domari non possint*, ——— such that they cannot be tamed (if one should make the attempt.)

Rem. 5. A relative sentence is an adjective, limiting the antecedent. *Puer qui legit*, the reading boy. But as an adjective often agrees with a noun while limiting a verb, so an adjective sentence frequently limits the predicate, expressing the purpose (like a dative of purpose,—§144), or the cause (like an ablative of cause,—§159.) See examples, LVI, a.

§211.

EXERCISE 66.

Vocabulary.

Divinus, a, um, pertaining to the Gods.

Quo, (adv. for old acc. *quon*.) whither.

Rudis, e, uncivilized.

Com-mitt-ere, (mis-, miss-) to commit.

Argutus, a, um, sagacious.

Fortunatus, a, um, fortunate.

Præco, on-is, herald, crier.

Pecc-are, to do wrong, to sin.

Complures, a, and ia, very many, quite a number.

Phalanx, phalang-is, (Gr. acc. *phalanga*, pl. *phalangas*.) phalanx.

Homerus, i, Homer.

Adulatio, on-is, flattery.

Fortuna, æ, fortune.

Natus, (part. of *nascor*.) a son.

Aut,—aut, either.—or.

Ad-ven-ire, (ven-, vent-) to arrive.

Præ-esse, (præ-) intr. to preside over.

Di-lig-ere, (lex-, lect-) to choose, to love.

Vid-eri, visus, (pass. of *videre*.) to seem.

Cens-ere, (censu-, cens-) to be of opinion.

Re-per-ire, (reper-, report-) to find.

In-sil-ire, (silu-, —) to leap upon.

Re-vell-ere, (vell-, vuls-) to tear off.

Præ-pon-ere, (posu-, posit-) to prefer.

Una, (parte understood, (§166.)) together.

Fall-ere, (fefell-, fals-) to deceive.

Occid-ere, (cid-, cas-) to fall, to die.

Druides, um, Druids.

Fama, æ, fame, report.

Præditus, a, um, endowed.

Esurians, ent-is, (part. of *esurire*.) hungry.

Quam, (relative adv.) as.

EXAMPLES.

- (a). *Dignus est qui ametur* (LVI, a), } He is worthy of being loved (*that he be loved.*)
- (b). *Idoneus est cui res mandetur* (LVI, a), } He is fit to have the business entrusted to him (*that the business be entrusted.*)
- (c). *Doctior sum quam qui a te, docear* (LVI, a), } I am too learned to be taught by you,—(*than that I be taught.*)
- (d). *Quod sciam* (LVI, b), } *As far as I know.*
Quod meminerim, } *As far as I remember.*
- (e). *Legatus, ut imperatum erat,* } *The lieutenant, as had been ordered, crossed the river.*
flumen transiit, }

(Here *ut* is a relative pronoun, subject of *imperatum erat*, the antecedent being contained in *flumen transiit.*)

- (f). *Nemo est qui putet* (LVI, b), } *There is no one who thinks.*
Nemo est quin putet (§193), } *There is no one who does not think.*
- (g). *An quisquam est?* } *Is there any one? (stronger than numquid).*

Translate into English.

1. PURPOSE, LVI, a.—Britanni Druides habent, qui rebus (§141, *Note*) divinis præsent. Ædui legatos Romam (§154) miserunt qui auxilium a senatu (§151, *Rem.* 1) peterent. Legati missi erant qui nunciarent oppidum expugnatum esse (§188). Galli locum non habebant quo se reciperent. Cæsar equitatum præmisit qui (§129, *Rem.* 7) hostium itinera explorarent.

2. RESULT, LVI, a.—Nemo tam rudis est ad quem fama sapientiæ tuæ non pervenerit. Socrates dignus erat qui ab omnibus diligeretur. Caius non satis idoneus visus est cui tantum negotium mandaretur. Non sumus ii quibus nihil verum esse (§174) videatur. Non is sum qui tantum scelus committam. Major sum quam cui (§142) possit fortuna nocere. Argutior fuit Jugurtha quam qui Mecijsæ verbis falleretur.

3. CAUSE, LVI, a.—O fortunate adolescens, qui tuæ

virtutis Homerum præconem (§151, b) *inveneris*! Peccavisse (§174) mihi videor *qui* a te *discesserim*. Omnes laudabant fortunas meas, *qui* (§129, *Rem.* 7) natum tali ingenio (§160) præditum *haberem*.

4. LVI, b.—Sunt *qui* censeant una animum et corpus occidere (§188). Reperti sunt complures *qui* in phalangas *insilirent*, et scuta manibus *revellerent*. Nihil est *quod* homines tam miseros (§151, b) *faciat* quam impietas et scelus. An quisquam est *qui* libertati servitutem *præponat*? Nemo est *quin* Balbum stultum (§151, b) *existimet*.

5. LVI, c.—Ariovistus dixit se obsides *quos* ab Æduis *haberet* non redditurum (§188). Cæsar negavit se Helvetiis *quod* *postularent* dare (§174) posse.

Translate into Latin.

The Britons sent ambassadors *to say* (LVI, a) that they would return the prisoners whom they had taken (LVI, c). No one of the soldiers, *as far as I know*, has left his post. This boy has never, *as far as I recollect*, deceived me. Is Caius (a) suitable (person) *to commit* your daughter to? Kings are not too wise *to be conquered* by flattery, nor too sagacious *to be deceived*. Some say (*there are who say*), that the consul is both (*et*) a liar and a thief. *Some thought* that the enemy would not besiege the city. Is there any one *who doubts* that (§193, *Rem.* 4) God rules the world? Is there any one who thinks that a robber will return the booty *which he has taken*? The townsmen will send the noblest of the state *to sue for* (ask) peace. The general is *worthy of being loved* by all the soldiers. The lieutenant, as was ordered, sent forward the cavalry *to sustain* the attack of the enemy till the footmen should arrive (§207).

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

§212. Are introduced by an interrogative word, and contain a question.

1. A *direct* question is asked by means of a principal sentence ; as, *Quis venit?* Who comes ?

2. An *indirect* question contains the *substance* of a direct question, without giving the exact words, and the sentence by which it is asked is always dependent ; as, *Janitor interrogavit quis veniret*, The porter asked *who came*.

3. Questions, both direct and indirect, are asked by means of interrogative pronouns (§88), and the particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num* (§81) ; and double questions, by *utrum*—*an*, *whether*—*or*. In an indirect question *ne* means *whether, if* ; *nonne*, *if not* ; *num*, *whether, if*.

§213. RULE LVII. The subjunctive is used in a direct question implying doubt ; as,

Quo fugiam! Whither shall I fly ?

§214. RULE LVIII. The subjunctive is always used in indirect questions ; as,

Nescio quis veniat, I do not know *who* is coming.

Rem. 1. The older writers sometimes use the indicative in indirect questions.

Rem. 2. The first part of a double question is often omitted. *Cujum pecus est hoc?* *an Melibœi?*—Is it another person's, or is it Melibœus's ?

Rem. 3. Dependent interrogative sentences are nouns.

§215.

EXERCISE 67.

Vocabulary.

Quo? whither?

Permúltum, (adv.) very much.

Consultum, i, a thing determined ; abl. on purpose.

Incertus, a, um, uncertain.

Vitreus, a, um, of glass.

Concavus, a, um, hollow.

Manus concava, the hollow of the hand.

Unde? whence?

Abd-ere, (abdid-, abdit-,) to run for concealment.

Sit-ire, to be thirsty.

Interrog-are, to ask.

Appollo, in-is, Appollo.

Ab Ap. petere, to inquire of Appollo.

Infans, ant-is, infant.

Irasc-i, iratus, to be angry with.

Providentia, æ, providence.

Cur? *why?*Deorsum, (adv.) *down-hill.*Delphi, orum, *Delphi, (a city of Greece.)*Patina, æ, *dish.*Morini, orum, *the Morini.*Af-ferre, (attul-, allat-,) *to bring forward.*Causam afferre, *to explain.*Præstantia, æ, *excellence.*Catinus or um, i, *bowl.*Fictilis, e, *earthen.*Casus, us, *chance.*

EXAMPLES.

Quid [§155] interest?

What difference does it make?

Nihil [§155] refert or interest,

It makes no difference.

Ubi gentium [§134]?

Where in the world? [In what place of the nations!]

Nescio quis clamavit,

*Somebody or other [I don't know who] shouted. [A fact. Nescio-quis= aliquis, but stronger.]**Translate into English.*

Quisnam in horto ambulat? Nescio quis in horto ambulat. Puer dicere non potuit quo latrones sese abdidissent. Sæpe non utile est scire quid futurum sit. Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit. Permultum interest utrum casu an consulto fiat injuria. Caii nepos-ne es, an filius? Incertum est Caii nepos-ne sim, an filius. Si sitis (L, a) nihil interest utrum aquam bibas an vinum, nec refert utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum, an manus concava. Nonne canis lupo (§142, Rem. 3) similis est? Puer patrem interrogavit nonne canes lupis similes essent. Puer interrogatus est utrum pluris (§137) patrem an matrem faceret. Numquis (§89) infantibus (§142) irascitur? Interrogat Caius num quis infantibus irascatur. Quo itis, pueri? In hortum? Ariovisto (§142, Rem. 3) mirum visum est quid in ejus Gallia Cæsari (§143) negotii (§134) esset. Mentiri (§173) honestum-ne sit factu (XLII, b) an turpe, nemo dubitat. Unde legati venissent rex nunquam reperire potuit. An quisquam dubitat casu-ne an dei providentia mundus regatur? Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandarum (§177) causa morabatur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui causas afferrent (LVI, a) cur civitas populo Romano bellum intulisset. Nescio quis in horto ambulabat.

Translate into Latin.

Does any man doubt concerning the excellence of virtue?

The poet asks *whether any one* doubts concerning the excellence of virtue. Can you explain, my son, *why* water always flows down hill? The king sent messengers to Delphi (§154) to inquire (LVI, a) of Appollo *whether* he should give his daughter in marriage to Clodius *or* Glaucus. What difference does it make to a hungry man *whether* he eats his food out of a golden dish *or* an earthen bowl? It makes no difference to the dead whether the king is a wise man or a fool. It is uncertain whether the girl *thinks more of* (§137) her father or mother. It is uncertain whether Balbus values life or honor most (*pluris*). It seems wonderful to me what business either you or your father *has* (§143) in my garden. Did Caius kill his brother by chance, *or on purpose*? I have not been able to find out *whether* the injury *was done* by chance *or on purpose*. No one knows *where* in the world Glaucus *is wandering*.

§216. In narrating the words or opinions of another the writer may give, either

(a). The exact words of the speaker; as, *Cæsar dixit*, "Veni, vidi, vici," *Cæsar said*, "I came, I saw, I conquered," (*Oratio recta*, or *Direct discourse*;) or

(b). The *substance* of what the speaker said, but not the exact words; as, *Cæsar dixit se venisse, vidisse, visisse*, *Cæsar said* that he had come, seen, conquered. (*Oratio obliqua*, or *Indirect discourse*.)

§217. RULE LIX. Principal sentences in the *oratio recta*, are expressed in the *oratio obliqua* by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent sentences in the *oratio recta*, take the subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*.

Oratio recta.

Ariovistus dixit, "Obsides quos ab Æduis habeo non reddam,"

Oratio obliqua.

Ariovistua dixit se obsides quos ab Æduis haberet non redditurum.

Rem. 1. An imperative in the *oratio recta*, becomes a subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*, a verb of commanding or exhorting being understood.

Rem. 2. The reason for the use of the subjunctive referred to above (Rule LIX) is obvious, as the writer is making the statement, not as a fact upon his own authority, but as the opinion or assertion of some one else.

Rem. 3. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used in relative sentences in the *oratio obliqua*, the relative being equivalent to *et* with a demonstrative, and the sentence being therefore dependent only in form. The same construction occurs occasionally in other dependent sentences.

Rem. 4. The indicative is occasionally used in dependent sentences in *oratio obliqua*.

Rem. 5. Questions in which the indicative is used in direct discourse, are generally expressed in oblique discourse by the accusative with the infinitive, if the subject is of the *first* or *third* person; by the subjunctive, if the subject is of the second person.

Si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum memoriam deponere posse? (Si—vellem, num—possum?)

An quicquam superbius esse? (An quicquam superbius est?)

Quid tandem vererentur, aut cur de sua virtute desperarent? (Quid veremini, aut cur desperatis?)

If the subjunctive is used in direct discourse (§183), it is of course retained in oblique.

§ 218.

EXERCISE 68.

Vocabulary.

Super-are, *to overcome.*

Invictus, a, um, *invincible.*

Sub-ire, (§111,9,—subi-, subit-,) *to go under.* Propterea quod, *for the reason that, because.*

Suspici-ari, *to suspect.*

Opulentus, a, um, *powerful.*

Plus (adv.) posse, *to be more powerful.* Cog-nosc-ere, (nov-, nit-,) *to ascertain.*

See §150, *Rem. 3.*

Intellig-ere, (lex-, lect-,) *to find out, know.*

Accid-ere, (accid-, —,) *to happen.*

Translate into English.

Ariovistus respondit, 'Æduos, quoniam belli fortunam

tentassent,* et armis superati essent, stipendiarios (§130, 2) esse factos: neminem secum sine sua perniciē contendisse: cum Cæsar vellet, *congrederetur* (§217, *Rem.* 1): intellecturum (§188) quid invicti Germani, *qui* inter annos quatuordecim tectum non *subiissent*, virtute (facere) possent (§214). Divitiacus dixit 'pejus (§128, *Rem.* 5) victoribus Sequanis quam Æduis victis accidisse (§188), *propterea quod* Ariovistus in eorum finibus *consedisset*, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, *qui esset* optimus totius Galliæ (§134), *occupavisset*.' Consul pollicitus est 'se, *postquam* rex finem loquendi *fecisset*, legatos auditurum esse.' Imperator respondit 'se, *etsi* nondum principum consilia *cognovisset*, tamen conjurationem fieri† suspicari.' Philosophus respondit 'negari (§174) non posse quin homines mortales essent (§193).' Rex dixit, '*qui* (§129, *Rem.* 2) opulentior *esset*, *etiamsi* injuriam acciperet (§200), tamen, *quia* plus *posset*, facere (§174) videri.'

Translate into Latin.

.. Cæsar said (*negavit*) that he could not give the Helvetii a way through the province, because he feared that (§193, 2, b) they would do injury to his allies. The scouts announced to Cæsar that the cavalry which he had sent forward had been routed by the enemy; that the skirmishers had not been able to cross the river; that the forces which the Germans had collected would arrive in three days. Word was brought that the footmen, the flight of the horsemen having been seen, had retreated to the mountain.

(Change the examples in the Latin exercise from *oratio obliqua* to *oratio recta*.)

* For *tentavissent*. † Depends on *se suspicari*.

APPENDIX I.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§219. 1. Nouns of this declension transferred from the Greek end in *e* (fem.); *as* and *es*, (masc.)

PARADIGM.

N. Pe <i>nel o pe</i> ,	N. <i>Æ ne as</i> ,	N. An <i>chi ses</i> ,
G. Pe <i>nel o pcs</i> ,	G. <i>Æ ne æ</i> ,	G. An <i>chi sæ</i> ,
D. Pe <i>nel o pæ</i> ,	D. <i>Æ ne æ</i> ,	D. An <i>chi sæ</i> ,
Ac. Pe <i>nel o pen</i> ,	Ac. <i>Æ ne am</i> , or <i>an</i> ,	Ac. An <i>chi sen</i> ,
V. Pe <i>nel o pe</i> ,	V. <i>Æ ne a</i> ,	V. An <i>chi se</i> , or <i>a</i> ,
Ab. Pe <i>nel o pe</i> .	Ab. <i>Æ ne a</i> .	Ab. An <i>chi se</i> , or <i>a</i> .

2. Nouns in *a* transferred from the Greek sometimes have *an* in the accusative.

3. Those Greek nouns which have a plural are declined in that number like *mensæ*.

4. The gen. plural of patronymies in *es*, and of some compounds in *gena*, and *cola*, has *um* instead of *arum*.

APPENDIX II.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

§220. 1. Greek nouns of the second declension end in *os* (masc. and fem.), and *on* (neut.), commonly changed in Latin into *us* and *um*.

PARADIGM.

Singular.		Barbiton, a lyre.	
		Singular.	Plural.
N. De <i>los</i> ,	An <i>dro ge os</i> ,	N. bar <i>bi ton</i> ,	bar <i>bi ta</i> ,
G. De <i>li</i> ,	An <i>dro ge o</i> , or <i>i</i> ,	G. bar <i>bi ti</i> ,	bar <i>bi ton</i> ,
D. De <i>lo</i> ,	An <i>dro ge o</i> ,	D. bar <i>bi to</i> ,	bar <i>bi tis</i> ,
Ac. De <i>lon</i> ,	An <i>dro ge o</i> , or <i>on</i> ,	Ac. bar <i>bi ton</i> ,	bar <i>bi ta</i> ,
V. De <i>le</i> ,	An <i>dro ge os</i> ,	V. bar <i>bi ton</i> ,	bar <i>bi ta</i> ,
Ab. De <i>lo</i> .	An <i>dro ge o</i> .	Ab. bar <i>bi to</i> .	bar <i>bi tis</i> .

2. The plural of Greek nouns in *os* is declined like the plural of *dominus*, except that they sometimes have *-on* instead of *-orum* in the genitive.

3. Greek proper names in *eus* are declined like *dominus*, except that they have the vocative in *eu*. They sometimes retain the Greek forms in the other cases, viz.: gen. *eos*, dat. *ei* (contracted *ei*), acc. *ea*, and are of the third declension.

4. *Pelagē* is found as the acc. pl. of *pelagus*.

APPENDIX III.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§221. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension:—

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
S.	Lampas,	{ -adis, -ados, }	-adi,	{ -adem, -ada, }	-as,	-ade.
Pl.	-ades,	-adum,	-adibus,	{ -ades, -adas, }	-ados,	-adibus.
S.	Heros,	-ois,	-oi,	{ -oem, -oa, }	-os,	-oc.
P.	-oes,	-oum,	-oibus,	{ -oes, -oas, }	-oes,	-oibus.
	Chelys,	{ -yis, -yos, }	-yi,	{ -ym, -yn, }	-y.	-ye or y.
	Poesis,	{ -is, -ios, -eos, }	-i,	{ -im, -in, }	-i,	-i.
	Achilles,	{ -is, -ei, -i -eos, }	-i,	{ -em, -ea, -en, }	-es, e,	-e or -i.
	Orpheus,	-eos,	-ei,	-ea,	-eu,	See §220, 3.
	Aer,	-eris,	-eri,	-era,	er,	-ere.
	Dido,	-us,	-o,	-o,	-o,	-o.

APPENDIX IV.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§222. 1. Nouns are derived from { other nouns, *Denominatives*;
adjectives, *Abstracts*;
verbs, *Verbals*.

DENOMINATIVE NOUNS.

2. The ending *ium* added to the stem of a noun denotes office or condition, and sometimes a collection or assemblage; as, *colleg-ium*, (*colleg-a*), the office of colleague, an assemblage of colleagues, a *college*.

3. The ending *imonium* added to a noun-stem denotes condition, and derivatively, several other relations; as, *matr-imonium*, motherhood, the married state; *patr-imonium*, fatherhood, then derivatively, *that which results from being a father, what a father gives a son, what a son inherits*, a patrimony.

4. The ending *-etum* added to the stem of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *laur-etum*, a laurel grove; *querc-etum*, an oak grove.

5. The diminutive endings, *lus*, *la*, *lum*, *ulus*, (*a*, *um*), *olus*, (*a*, *um*), sometimes *culus*, *unculus*, *uleus*, denote a small specimen of the primitive. *Libellus*, (*liber*), a little book; *filiolus*, (*filius*), a little son.

6. *Patronymics* are personal names derived from the name of one's father or other ancestor. They end in *ides* (penult short, fem. *is*); *ides* (penult long, fem. *eis*); *ias*, *iades* (fem. *as*); and some feminines in *ine* or *ione*. As,

Tyndar-ides, a son of *Tyndarus*; *Tyndar-is*, a daughter of *Tyndarus*. *Ner-ides*, a son of *Nereus*; *Ner-eis*, a daughter of *Nereus*.

7. *Amplificatives* are personal names given on account of the great size of some part of the body. They are formed by adding *o* to noun-stems; as, *capit-o*, big head; *nas-o*, big-nose.

ABSTRACT NOUNS.

8. Adjectival abstracts are formed by adding to adjective stems the endings *tas*, *itas*, *etas*; *tus*, *itus*, *itudo*; *ia*, *itia*, *ities*; *edo*, and *imonia*.

VERBAL NOUNS.

9. The name of an action or condition is expressed

(a) By adding *or* to the present-stem (generally of intransitive verbs); *mær-or*, grief; *splend-or*, brightness.

(b) By adding *ium* to the present or supine-stem; as, *gaud-ium*, joy; *exit-ium*, destruction.

(c) By adding *io* or *us* to the supine-stem ; as, *lect-io*, a reading ; *cant-us*, a singing.

(d) Sometimes by adding *ela*, *imonia*, *imonium*, to the present-stem, or *ura* to the supine-stem ; as, *quer-ela*, complaining, a complaint.

10. *Ura* added to the supine-stem usually denotes the result of an action ; as, *pict-ura*, the result of painting, a picture.

11. The doer of an action is expressed by *or*, (fem. *rix*), added to the supine-stem ; as, *vict-or*, *vict-rix*, a conqueror. Some nouns in *tor* are formed from other nouns, though an intermediate verb is always supposed to exist ; as, *vi-a*, *vi-are*, *vi-at-or* ; *gladi-us*, *gladi-are*, *gladi-at-or*.

The doer is expressed by adding *a* or *o* to the present-stem of a few verbs ; as, *scrib-a*, *comed-o*.

12. The endings *ulum*, *bulum* (*brum*), *culum* (*clum* or *crum*), *trum*, added to the present-stem, express the instrument, sometimes the place, for performing the action ; as, *ven-a-bulum*, a hunting spear ; *veh-i-culum*, a vehicle. These endings are sometimes added to noun-stems ; as, *acet-abulum*, a vinegar cruet.

13. The ending *men* added to the present-stem, expresses the thing in which the action of the verb is exhibited ; as, *flu-men*, that which exhibits *flowing*, a river ; *ag-men*, something which exhibits *motion*, an army on the march.

14. The ending *mentum*, added to the present-stem, usually with a connecting vowel, expresses the means of performing the action ; as *doc-u-mentum*, a means of showing, a proof.

15. The ending *orium* added to the supine-stem expresses the place where an action is performed ; as, *audit-orium*, a lecture-room.

16. Adjectives are mostly derived from verbs (*verbals*), or from nouns and adjectives, (*denominatives*).

DENOMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

17. The ending *cus*, (sometimes *nus*, *neis*), means *made of*, as, *aur-eus*, made of gold ; *ebur-nus*, made of ivory. Sometimes it expresses resemblance in character ; as, *virgin-cus*, maidenly. The endings *inus* (penult short,) and *enus* have the same meaning.

18. The endings *alis*, *anus*, *aris*, *arius*, *ilis* (penult long,) *atilis*, *icus*, *icius*, *ius*, *inus* (penult long,) and *ivus*, mean *pertaining to*, *belonging*

to, and form *possessive* adjectives. The ending *ilis* often denotes character; as, *puer-ilis*, boyish. These adjectives are often used as nouns, the limited noun being omitted; as, *ferr-arius* (*faber*,) a smith; *medic-ina* (*ars*,) the physician's art, medicine; *avi-arium*, a place pertaining to birds, an aviary; *ov-ile*, something pertaining to sheep, a fold.

19. The endings *osus* and *lentus* mean *full of*; as, *vin-osus*, full of wine; *fraud-u-lentus*, full of fraud.

20. From names of places are formed possessives in *anus*, as, *ensis*, *ius*, *inus*; as, *Athen-i-ensis*, of Athens, an Athenian.

21. The ending *atus* means *furnished with*, *wearing*; as, *al-atus*, winged; *barb-atus*, bearded.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES.

22. The ending *bundus* added to the present-stem, with a connecting vowel, has the meaning of the participle present, but usually with an intensive force; as, *err-a-bundus*, wandering to and fro; *cundus* has sometimes the same meaning.

23. The ending *idus*, added to the present-stem, expresses state or condition; as, *cal-idus*, cold; *rapidus*, rapid.

24. The ending *uus* added to the stem of an intransitive verb, expresses condition or tendency;—added to the stem of a transitive verb, it has a passive meaning; as, *congru-us*, agreeing; *noc-uus*, hurtful; *conspic-uus*, visible.

25. The endings *bilis* (with a connecting vowel,) and *ilis*, added to verbal stems, express, passively, capability or desert; as, *fac-ilis*, capable of being done; as, *am-a-bilis*, deserving to be loved. Sometimes they are active in meaning; as, *horr-i-bilis*, producing horror.

26. The ending *icius*, or *itius*, added to the supine-stem, has a passive sense; as, *fict-icius*, feigned.

27. The ending *ax* expresses an inclination—generally an evil one; as, *rap-ax*, rapacious.

28. The ending *ivus* added to the supine stem expresses, actively, capacity or tendency; as, *conjunct-ivus*, having a tendency to unite, conjunctive.

DERIVATION OF VERBS. •

29. From noun and adjective stems are formed

(a) Intransitives (in *o*, *eò*, *or*,) denoting *to be* that denoted by the primitive ; as, *comit-or*, I accompany.

(b) Transitives (*o*, *or*,) denoting *to do* or *make*, *to exercise*, *employ* or *use* upon something, that which is denoted by the primitive ; as, *fraud-o*, I use fraud, I defraud ; *liber-o*, I make free.

30. From verbs are derived the following :

(a) *Frequentatives*, expressing frequency, or increase, of the action expressed by the primitive. They are formed by adding the endings of the first conjugation to the supine-stem, *at* passing into *it* ; as, *clam-are* (*clam-at*,) to cry—*clam-it-are*, to cry aloud, or frequently. A few add *ito* to the present-stem ; as, *ag-ito*. Frequentatives are sometimes formed from frequentatives ; as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursito* ; *venio*, *vento*, *ventito*.

(b) *Inceptives*, expressing the beginning of an action or condition. They are of the third conjugation, and are formed by adding *sco*, *scor* to the present-stem with a connecting vowel ; *lab-a-sco*, I begin to totter ; *ard-e-sco*, I begin to be warm ; *profic-i-scor*, I begin to make myself forward, I set out.

(c) *Desideratives*, expressing strong desire. They are of the fourth conjugation, and are formed by adding *urio* to the supine-stem of the primitive ; as, *es-urio*, (*edo*,) I desire to eat, I am hungry. They are few in number.

(d) *Diminutives*, which express trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the present or supine stem ; as, *conscrib-illo*, I scribble.

(e) *Intensives*, which express earnest action. They are of the third conjugation, and are formed by adding *esso*, or *isso*, to the stem of the primitive ; as, *fac-esso*, I do with all my might.

NOTE. Many verbs of the above classes have only the meaning of the primitive.

ANALYSIS OF TENSE FORMATION.

§223. 1. Every verb-form consists of two parts, the stem and the ending. The ending consists of the *personal signs*

(for the most part pronominal roots of the different persons); the *connecting vowel*; and, in some tenses, the *tense-sign*. Though for the sake of convenience we call the radicals *am-*, *mon-*, and *aud-* the present-stems of the verbs *amare*, *monere*, and *audire*, the stems are in fact *ama-*, *mone-*, and *audi-*; verbs of 1st, 2nd, and the 4th conjugations may, therefore, be termed *pure* or *vowel verbs*, while only those of the 3rd conjugation have consonant stems. Thus, in the form *ama-ba-tis*, (*ama-eba-i-tis*), *ama-* means *love*; *eba-*, the tense-sign, marks incomplete action in past time, (the *e* being absorbed by *a* of the stem,) and means *did*; *i*, the connecting vowel, or *mood-sign*, is absorbed by the *a* preceding, while *tis*, the personal sign, means *ye* or *you*. The whole, if literally rendered, means *love-did-ye*, or according to the English idiom, *ye love-did*, *ye love-d*.

2. The following tables show the personal, mood, and tense-signs, which, uniting with the verb stem, produce the various verb forms.

(a) PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
<i>Person.</i>	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
<i>Active.</i>	m,	s,	t,	mus,	tis,	nt.	
		<i>Ind. Perf. sti.</i>			<i>Ind. perf. stis.</i>		
<i>Passive.</i>	r,	ris, re,	tur,	mur,	mini,	ntur,	

NOTE. The personal sign *m* is the radical of the Greek, Latin, and English *me*; *mus* is the pluralized form: *s*, frequently interchanged with *t*, is the radical of *tu*, (Greek *su*, English *th-ou*,) and *tis* is the same form pluralized, the *t* being resumed: *t*, of the third person, (plur. *nt*.) has a demonstrative force, and is found as a prefix in *tan-tus*, *talis*, &c.; and as a suffix in *id*, (English *i-t*,) *is-te*, &c.

The sign of the passive is *r*, and enters into all the passive endings except *mini*, which is wholly unlike the rest, and is generally

considered a participial ending (Greek *menci*,) *estis* being understood;—*ama-mini estis*. The personal signs for the Imperative are, *to*, (pl. *tote*,) *to*, (pl. *nto*,) Pass., *re* or *tor*, (pl. *mini*,) *tor*, (pl. *nter*.)

(b) MOOD SIGNS.

Persons.		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Indicative.	All but Pres.-Perfect, and Fut., 3rd and 4th conj.	o,	{ i, pass. e,	i,	i,	i,	u.
	Pres.-Perf.	i,	i,	i,	i,	i,	eru
	Fut., 3rd and 4th conj.	a,	i,	i,	i,	i,	u.
Subjunctive	Pres., 2nd, 3rd, and 4th conj.	a,	a,	a,	a,	a,	a.
	Pres., 1st conj.	e,	e,	e,	e,	e,	e.
	Pres.-Perf.	i,	i, i,	i,	i, i,	i, i,	i i.
	Imperf. and Past-Perf.	e,	e,	e,	e,	e	e.
Imperative.		—	e,	e,	—	i,	u.
Inf. Active <i>e</i> , pass. <i>i</i> .							

Note. The mood-signs of the Indic. are short (except *i* and *eru* of the pres.-perf.); those of the Imper. are short; those of the Subj. long (except *i* of the pres.-perf. which is long or short.)

(c) TENSE SIGNS.

	Pres.	Imperf.	Fut.	Pres.-Perf.	Past-Perf.	Fut.-Perf.
Indicative.	none,	era,	eb. 1st & 2nd conj. e, 3rd & 4th conj.	none,	era,	er.
Subjunctive.	none,	er,		er,	iss,	
Infinitive.	er,			iss,		

Note. The sign of completed action must not be confounded with the tense signs. It is

In the 1st conj. *v*, sometimes passing into *u*,—*sec-u-i*;
 “ “ 2nd “ *v*, generally passing into *u*,—*mon-u-i*;
 “ “ 3rd “ generally *s*, sometimes *u*.
 “ “ 4th. “ *v*.

Before it the final letter of the stem is lengthened; as, *ama-vi*, *fle-vi*, *audi-vi*. The reduplication is sometimes used, as in Greek, to indicate completed action; as, *mo-mord-i*, *po-posc-i*, *ve-ven-t*, (contr. *ven-i*,) *mo-mov-i*, (contr. *mov-i*). Such perfects as *pav-i*, (*pa-sc-o*,) *quiev-i*, (*quie-sc-o*,) *sprev-i*, (*sper-n-o* for *spre-n-o*,) are regularly formed on vowel-stems, strengthened by the addition of *sc*, (App. IV. 30, b,) and *n*.

3. Where two vowels come together, the former usually absorbs the latter, the two short syllables making one long one. It must be borne in mind, however, that no vowel in Latin can be long before *m*, *t*, or *r*, except in certain monosyllables. The mood-sign *o* and the personal-sign *m*, never stand together, but one or the other is dropped; as, *amao(m)*, *amaba(o)m*;—*amo*, *amabam*.

4. In the following table the stem, sign-sign mood-sign, and personal-sign, are exhibited.

PARTS ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>	<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>
reg-o (m)	reg-o	ama-o (m)	am-o
reg-i-s, &c.,	reg-is &c,	ama-i-s &c,	am-as
reg-u-nt	reg-unt	ama-u-nt	am-ant
reg-eba-(o) m	reg-ebam	ama-eba-(o) m	am-abam
reg eba i s, &c.,	reg ebas	ama eba i s &c,	am abas
reg eba u nt	reg ebant	ama eba i t	am abat
reg e a m	reg am	ama eb o (m)	am abo
reg e i s, &c,	reg es	ama eb i s, &c.,	am abis
reg e u nt	reg ent	ama eb u nt	am abunt
reg a m	reg am	ama e m	am em
reg a s, &c.	reg as	ama e s &c,	am es
reg a mus, &c.,	reg amus	ama e mus	am emus
reg er e m	reg erem	ama er e m	am arem
reg er e s	reg eres, &c.,	ama er e s	am ares &c
reg e	reg e	ama e	am a
reg i to	reg ito	ama i to	am ato
reg i te	reg ite	ama i te	am ate
reg i tote, &c.,	reg itote, &c.,	ama i tote, &c.,	am atôte
reg er e	reg ere	ama er e	am are

PARTS ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>	<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>
regs i	rex i	amav i	amav i
regs i sti	rex isti	amav i sti	amav isti
regs i mus, &c.	rex imus, &c.,	amav i mus	amav imus &c.

<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>	<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>
regs era [o] m rex eram		amav era [o] m	amav eram
regs era i s, &c. rex eras, &c.		amav era i s, &c.	amav eras, &c.
regs er o [m] rex ero		amav er o [m]	amav ero
regs er i s, &c. rex eris, &c.		amav er i s, &c.	amav eris, &c.
regs er i m rex erim		amav er i m	amav erim
regs er i s, &c. rex eris, &c.		amav er i s, &c.	amav eris, &c.
regs iss e m rex issem		amav iss e m	amav issem
regs iss e s, &c. rex isses, &c.		amav iss e s, &c.	amav isses, &c.
regs iss e rex isse		amav iss e	amav isse.

ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

fle o [m]	fle o	audi o [m]	aud i o
fle i s	fl es	audi i s	aud i s
fle i t, &c.	fl et, &c.	atidi i t, &c.	aud it, &c.
fle u nt	fl ent	audi u nt	aud iunt
fle eba [o] m	fl ebam	audi eba [o] m	aud iebam
fle eba i s	fl ebas	audi eba i s	aud iebas
fle eba i t, &c.	fl ebat, &c.	audi eba i t, &c.	aud iebat, &c.
fle eb o [m]	fl ebo	audi a [o] m	aud i am
fle eb i s	fl ebis	audi e i s	aud i es
fle eb i t, &c.	fl ebit, &c.	audi e i t, &c.	aud iet, &c.
fle a m	fl eam	audi a m	aud i am
fle a s	fl eas	audi a s	aud ias
fle a t	fl eat, &c.	audi a t	aud iat, &c.
fle er e m	fl erem	audi er em	aud irem
fle er e s, &c.	fl eres	audi er e s	aud ires, &c.
fle e —	fl e	audi e —	aud i
fle e te, &c.	fl ete, &c.	audi e te, &c.	aud i te, &c.

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

fle v i [m]	fl ev i	audi v i [m]	aud i v i
fl ev era [o] m	fl ev eram	aud i v era [o] m	aud i v eram
fl ev er o [m]	fl ev ero	aud i v er o [m]	aud i v ero

Full Form.	Contracted Form.	Full Form.	Contracted Form.
flev er i m	flev erim	audiv er i m	audiv erim
flev iss e m	flev issem	audiv iss e m	audiv issem
flev.iss e	flev isse	audiv iss e	audiv isse

NOTE.—The pupil can readily complete the tables for himself.

5. The participles are formed by adding adjectival endings to the verb-stem, [sometimes with a connecting vowel in consonant verbs,] *us* expressing continuance [actively]; *turus*, futurity; *tus*, completion [passively]; and *-ndus*, fitness, capacity.

6. The gerund is a verbal noun formed by adding *-ndi*, &c., to the verb-stem, a connecting vowel being necessary in consonant verbs: *reg-c-ndi*.

7. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth conjugation, sometimes complete [as *cursus*], but usually found only in the accusative and ablative. It is formed by adding *tus* [sometimes *sus*] to the verb-stem.

APPENDIX VI. PECULIARITIES OF TENSE FORMATION.

TENSES FORMED ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

§224. 1. The tense-sign of the indicative future in verbs of the fourth conjugation [*i* stems] seems anciently to have been *eb*, as in *a* and *e* stems, the *i* of the stem absorbing the *e* of the tense-sign: as, *vesti-b-o*, *sci-b-o*, instead of *vestiam*, *sciam*. The same contraction also occurs in the imperfect; as *ves-tibam*. The forms *ibam* and *ibo* of *eo* are still retained.

2. The endings *im*, *is*, &c., in the subjunctive present [mood-sign *i*] are sometimes found in the earlier writers and in the poets; as *edim*, *edis*, *edit*, *edimus*, &c., for *edam*, &c. The same mood-sign is always found in the forms *sim*, *sis*, &c., *velim*, *velis*, &c., and their compounds.

3. The ending *e*, is dropped in the imperatives *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*. The short forms are also used in their compounds, except those compounds of *facio* which change *a* into *i*; as, *effice*.

4. The personal-sign of the imperative future passive 2nd person singular was anciently *mino*; as *horta-mino*, *progredi-mino*. The older

writers sometimes use the active ending of the imperative in dependent verbs; as *arbitrato*, instead of *arbitrator*.

TENSES FORMED ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

5. The letter *v* of the perfect stem is frequently elided and the first vowel of the ending is absorbed, when followed in the first conjugation by *s*, in the other conjugations by *s* or *r*; as *ama-[v]-isti*, *amasti*; *fle-[v]-eram*, *fleram*. When *i* precedes *v*, there is usually no contraction. This is especially the case in compounds of *eo*; as *redii*, *perii*, *subii* &c.

6. When the perfect-stem ends in *s*, the syllables *is*, *iss*, immediately following it, are sometimes omitted; as *evasti*, *evassem*, *evastis*, for *evas-isti*, *evas-issem*, *evas-istis*.

7. An ancient future-perfect in *so* sometimes occurs, from which subjunctive forms in *sem* and *sim*, are formed; as *recepso*, *recepssim*. Sometimes this future is formed on the present-stem; as, *habesso*.

The forms *ausim*, *faxim* and *faxo*, are retained by the classic writers.

COMPOUND VERBS.

8. Compound verbs generally form their perfect and supine stem like the simple verbs from which they are derived. Sometimes, however, there is a change of the stem vowel; as *hab-co*, *pro-hib-co*; *facio*, *con-ficio*; *scind-o*, *de-scend-o*. A reduplication in the perfect is omitted in compound verbs; as, *cæd-o*, *ce-cid-i*; *oc-cid-o*, *oc-cid-i*; but the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *poseo*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

APPENDIX VII.

THE VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

§225. First Conjugation.

1. The perfect and supine stems are formed, in the first conjugation; by adding respectively *av* and *at* to the present stem; or, to speak more correctly, by adding *v* and *t* to the crude form of the verb; as, *ama-*, *amav-*, *amat-*.

2. But

(a) The characteristic vowel *a* is elided in the perfect tenses of a few verbs, (*u* passing into *u* after a consonant,) and in such cases is usually changed into *i* in the supine; as, *crepo*, *crep-u-i*, *crep-i-tum*.

(b) The perfect stem is formed by reduplicating the initial consonant with *e*; as *d-are*, *ded-i*.

(c) Some verbs seem originally to have reduplicated; but the reduplication has been dropped, the two first syllables blending into one, and the short stem-vowel becoming long; as *lav-o*, *lav-i*, for *la-la-vi*.

3. The following list contains the verbs which vary from the usual mode of formation.

Crepo, *crepare*, *crepui*, *crepitum*,
to creak. *Increpo*, -*avi*, or -*ui*,
-*atum* or -*itum*. *Discrepo*, -*ui*,
— . *Recrepo*, *are*, — , — .

Cubo, *cubui*, *cubitum*, to lie down.
Incubo has rarely -*avi*. Some
of the compounds insert *m*, and
are of the 3d conjugation.

Domo, *domui*, *domitum*, to tame.

Do, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*, to give.
Compounds with monosyllabic
prepositions are of the 3d con-
jugation.

Frico, *fricui*, *frictum* or *fricatum*,
to rub.

confrico, *confricavi*, *confrica-*
tum.

Juvo, *juvi*, *jutum*, *juvaturas*, to
help.

Lavo, [*are*, & *ere*,] *lavi*, *lotum*,
lautum, and *lavatum*, *lavaturus*,
to wash.

Mico, *micui*, — , to quiver.

dimico, -*avi* rarely -*ui*, -*atum*.
emico, -*ui*, -*atum*.

Neco, *necavi* rarely *neui*, *nee-*
atum rarely *nectum*, to kill.

Plico, *plicavi* & *plicui*, *plicatum*
& *plicitum*, to fold.

applico, *complico*, *explico*, *impli-*
co, in the same way. The other
compounds have -*avi*, *atum*.

Poto, -*avi*, *potum* and *potatum*,
to drink.

Seco, *secui*, *sectum* and *secatum*,
to cut. So also *præseco*, *reseco*.
The other compounds have only
sectum.

Sono, *sonui*, *sonitum*, *sonaturus*.
to sound. *Consono*, *exsono*, *in-*
sono, *præsono*, -*ui*, — . *Re-*
sono, *avi*, — .

Sto, *steti* [*for sesti*,] *statum*, to
stand.

Tono, *tonui*, — , to thunder.

Attono, -*ui*, -*itum*.

Veto, *vetui*, *vetitum*, to forbid.

§226. SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. The perfect stem is formed, in the second conjugation

(a) by adding *v* to the *crude* form of the verb, as in the first conjugation; as, *flē-o*, *flēv-i*.

(b) But in most verbs the characteristic *e* is elided, *v* passing into *u*; and, as in the first conjugation, the characteristic is changed into *i* in the supine; as, *monē-o*, *monu-i*, *monit-um*.

(c) In many verbs *e* is elided, and *s*, instead of *v*, added, with such consonant changes as euphony may require; as, *ardē-o*, *ar-s-i* for *ard-si*; *augē-o*, *aux-i* for *aug-si*.

(d) A few verbs reduplicate the initial consonant, and drop the characteristic *e*; as, *morde-o*, *mo-mord-i*.

(e) Some verbs preserve a trace of the reduplication in the lengthening of the stem-vowel in the perfect, the characteristic, as in the last class, being elided; as, *movē-o*, *mov-i*; perhaps for *mo mov-i*; or perhaps the original form was *mōvēc-v-i*, syncopated into *mōv-i*, to avoid having two successive syllables begin with *v*. All verbs of the first and second conjugations which lengthen the stem-vowel in the perfect, have stems ending in *v*, except *videō* and *sedeō*.

2. The following list contains the verbs of the second conjugation which form the perfect and supine stems otherwise than according to §226, 1, b, that being considered the regular formation, as it is the one which most commonly occurs.

Aboleo, *abolevi*, *abolitum*, to destroy. The other compounds of the obsolete *oleo*, are *adolēo*, *adolui*, (rarely *adolevi*,) *adulium*; *exoleo*, (inceptive from *exoleo*,) *exolevi*, *exoletum*; *deleo*, *-evi etum*.

Algeo, *alēi*, —, to be cold.

Arceō, *arēui*, *arctum* or *artum*, to keep off.

Ardeo, *arēi*, *arsum*, to burn.

Audeo, *ausus* sum, (rarely *ausi*, from which *ausim*,) to dare.

Augeo, *auxi*, *auctum*, to increase.

Caveo, *cavi*, *cautum*, to beware.

Censeo, *censui*, *censum*, to be of opinion. *percenseo*, *percensui*, *recensum* and *recensitum*.

Citeo, *civi*, *citum*, to arouse. The compounds with *ex* and *ad* are of the fourth conjugation. The pe-

<i>nult</i> of <i>excitus</i> is common, and that of <i>conceitus</i> is rarely long.	<i>Neo, nevi, netum, to spin.</i>
<i>Conniveo, connivi, or connixi, —, to shut the eyes.</i>	<i>Paveo, pavi, —, to fear.</i>
<i>Denseo, densetum, to be dense.</i>	<i>Pendeo, pependi, —, to hang. — impendeo, -ere.</i>
<i>Docco, docui, doctum, to teach.</i>	<i>Pleo (obsolete), plevi, pletum, to fill.</i>
<i>Faveo, favi, fantum, to favor.</i>	<i>Prandeo, prandi, pransum, to break. — fast.</i>
<i>Ferveo, ferbui, or fervo fervi, to boil.</i>	<i>Rideo, risi, risum, to laugh.</i>
<i>Fleo, flevi, fletum, to weep.</i>	<i>Sedeo, sedi, sessum, to sit; præsideo, præsedī, —.</i>
<i>Foveo, fovi, fotum, to warm.</i>	<i>Soleo, solitus, rarely solui, to be accustomed.</i>
<i>Fulgeo, fulsi, (anteclassical and poetic, fulgo, fulsi,) to flash.</i>	<i>Sorbeo, sorbui, —, to suck up. — resorbeo, -ere, —; absorbeo, absorbui, rarely absorpsi, absorptum.</i>
<i>Gaudeo, gavisus, to rejoice.</i>	<i>Spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, to pledge.</i>
<i>Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick. Obhæreo, -ere, —, —; so also subhæreo.</i>	<i>Strideo, stridi, to creak.</i>
<i>Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to indulge.</i>	<i>Suadeo, suasi, suasum, to advise.</i>
<i>Jubeo, jussi, jussum, to order.</i>	<i>Teneo, tenui, tentum, to hold: — pertineo, pertinui. —</i>
<i>Luceo, luxi, —, to shine. Polluceo, -luxi, -luctum.</i>	<i>Tergeo or tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe.</i>
<i>Lugeo, luxi, luctum, to mourn.</i>	<i>Turgeo, tursi, —, to swell.</i>
<i>Maneo, mansi, mansum, to stay.</i>	<i>Tondeo, totondi, tonsum, to shear.</i>
<i>Misceo, miscui, mistum or mixtum, misturus, to mix.</i>	<i>Torqueo, torsi, tortum, to twist.</i>
<i>Mordeo, momordi, morsum, to bite.</i>	<i>Torreo, torrui, tostum, to roast.</i>
<i>Moveo, movi, motum, to move.</i>	<i>Urgeo or urgueo, ursi, —, to press.</i>
<i>Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, rarely mulctum, to stroke.</i>	<i>Video, vidi, visum, to see.</i>
<i>Mulgeo, mulsi rarely mulxi, mulsum, or mulctum, to milk. Emulgeo, -ere, —, emulsum.</i>	<i>Voveo, vovi, votum, to vow.</i>
	<i>Vieo, —, vietum, to plait.</i>

§ 227. To these may be added the following impersonal and deponent verbs of 2nd conjugation.

<i>Decet, decuit, it becomes.</i>	<i>tum est, it pities.</i>
<i>Libet, libuit or libitum est, it pleases.</i>	<i>Oportet, oportuit, it behooves.</i>
<i>Licet, licuit or licitum est, it is allowed.</i>	<i>Piget, piguit or pigitum est, it grieves.</i>
<i>Liquet, liquit or licuit, it is clear.</i>	<i>Pœnitet, pœnituit, it repents.</i>
<i>Miseret, misernit, less frequently miseretur, miseritum or miser-</i>	<i>Pudet, puduit or puditum est, it shames.</i>

<p>Tædet, tæduit or tæsum est, <i>it disgusts.</i> Fateor, fassus, <i>to confess.</i> diffi- teor, -eri, ——— Medeor, ———, <i>to cure.</i></p>	<p>Misereor, misertus or misertus, <i>to pity.</i> Reor, ratus, <i>to think.</i> Tueor, tuitus or tutus, (<i>the latter</i> <i>passive,</i>) <i>to behold, to gaze at.</i></p>
--	--

§ 228. The following have the perfect-stem in *u*, but want the supine.

Aceo, *to be sour*; candeo, *to be white*; caneo, *to be hoary*; egeo, *to want*; emineo, *to rise up*; floreo, *to flower*; horreo, *to bristle*; lateo, *to lie hid*; muceo, *to be mouldy*; nigreo, *to be black*; oleo, *to smell*; palleo, *to be pale*; pateo, *to be open*; sileo, *to be silent*; strideo, *to creak*; studeo, (*studivi once,*) *to be eager*; stupeo, *to be stunned*; timeo, *to fear*.

§ 229. The following have neither perfect nor supine stems; though from some of them perfect tenses are formed with an inceptive force.

Aigreo, *to be sick*; albeo, *to be white*; areo, *to be dry*; aveo, *to covet*; calleo, *to be hard*; calveo, *to be bald*; ceyeo, *to fawn*; clareo, *to be bright*; clueo, *to be famous*; flacceo, *to droop*; flaveo, *to be yellow*; fleteo, *to stink*; frigeo, *to be cold*; frondeo, *to bear leaves*; hebeo, *to be dull*; humeo, *to be moist*; lacteo, *to suck*; languéo, *to be faint*; lenteo, *to be slow*; liveo, *to be livid*; maceo, *to be lean*; mæreo, *to grieve*; niteo, *to shine*; oleo, *to smell*; polleo, *to be powerful*; puteo, *to stink*; renideo, *to glitter*; rigeo, *to be stiff*; rubeo, *to be red*; seateo, *to gush out*; senceo, *to be old*; sordeo, *to be filthy*; splendeo, *to shine*; squalco, *to be foul*; sueo, *to be wont*; tæpeo, *to be warm*; torpeo, *to be stiff*; tumco, *to swell*; vegeo, *to arouse*; vigeo, *to flourish*; vireo, *to be green*; uvco, *to be moist*.

VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 230. 1. The perfect stem is formed in the third conjugation.

(a) By adding *s*, to the present-stem, which in this con-

jugation is the crude form of the verb. As, *carp-o*, *carps-i*.

(b) By adding *re* to the crude form of the verb, which has been strengthened by adding *n* or *sc*, as in Greek. These are all originally vowel verbs. As, *cre-sc-o*, *crev-i*; *pa-sc-o*, *pav-i*; *no-sc-o*, *nov-i*; *si-n-o*, *siv-i*; *sper-n-o*, *sprev-i* (by metathesis for *spervi*.)

(c) By adding *u* (the form which the perfect sign *v* assumes after a consonant.) As, *al-o*, *alu-i*.

(d) By adding *iv* to the present stem; as, *arcess-o*, *arcessiv-i*.

(e) By reduplicating the initial consonant; as, *curr-o*, *cu-curr-i*.

(f) By lengthening the present-stem, with or without vowel change; as, *em-o*, *em-i*; *ag-o*, *eg-i*.

(g) In a member of verbs (especially vowel verbs in *u*), the perfect-stem is like the present stem; as, *acu-o*, *acu-i*.

2. The supine-stem is usually formed in the third conjugation by adding *t*, frequently by adding *s*, to the present stem.

3. The following list contains most of the verbs of this conjugation:

Acuo, *acui*, *acutum*, to sharpen.

Ago, *egi*, *actum*, to set in motion.

ambigo, -ere, —, —. *dego*,
degi *satago*, -ere, —, —.

Alō, *alui*, *altum* and *alutum*, to nourish.

Ango, *auxi*, —, to choke.

Arguo, *argui*, *argutum*, to convict.

Arcesso, (*pass* *iri* or *i*), *arcessivi*,
arcessitum, to send for.

Batuo, *batui*, —, to beat.

Bibo, *bibi*, *bibitum*, to drink.

Cado, *cecidī*, *casum*, to fall. *ac-*
cido, *decido*, *excido*, and *succido*,

have no supine-stem. See App. VI, 8.

Cædo, *cecidī*, *cæsum*, to cut. The compounds change *æ* into *i*; as, *occido*, *occidī*, *eccisum*. See App. VI, 8.

Cando, to cause to shine; whence *accendo*, *incendo*, *succendo*, (-*ceudi*, -*cesum*.)

Cano, *cicini*, *cantum*, to sing. *præcino*, -*cinui*, -*centum*; *conci-*
no, -*cinui*, —; so *occino*, *accino*, -*ere*, —, —; so also *inci-*
no, *intercino*, *recino*, *succino*.

Capesso, -ivi, -itum, to seize.

Capio, cepi, captum, to take. so antecapio. The other compounds change a of the present-stem into i, and of the supine-stem into e; as, accipio, -cepi, -ceptum.

Carpo, carpsi, carptum, to pluck. Cedo, cessi, cessum, to yield.

Cello, ante-, præ-, re-cello, -ero. —, —, excello, -cellui, -cellsum; percello, perculi, perculsum.

Cerno, crevi, cretum, to decide.

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, to gird.

Clango, —, —, to clang.

Claudo, clausi, clausum, to shut.

Claudo, —, clantum, to limp.

Clepo, clepsi rarely clepi, to steal.

Colo, colui, cultum, to cultivate.

Oculo, ocului, occultum.

Como, compsi, comptum, to adorn.

Compesco, compescui, —, to check.

Consulo, -sului, -sultum, to consult.

Coquo, coxi, coctum, to cook.

Cresco, crevi, cretum, to grow.

Cudo, -ere, —, —, to forge.

Exeudo, exaudi, excusum.

Cupio, -ivi, -itum, to desire.

Curro, cucurri, cursum, to run.

concurro, succurro, transcurro, drop the reduplication. The other compounds have both forms: as, accurro, accuri and accucurri, accurant, antecurro, -ere, —, —; so also circumcurro. See App. VI. 8.

Condo, condidi, conditum, to build. absconde, -condidi or -condi, -conditum or -consum. So the other compounds of do.

Depse, dep-ni, depstum, to knead.

Dico, dixi, dictum, to say.

Disce, didici, disciturus, to learn.

Dispesco, —, dispestum, to separate.

Divido, divisi, divisum, to divide.

Duco, duxi, ductum, to lead.

Edo, edi, esum, to eat. See §111.

Exuo, exui, exutum, to put off.

Emō, emi, emptum, to buy.

demo, dempsi, demptum.

Facesso, -ivi, -itum, to do eagerly.

Facio, feci, factum, to do.

Imper. pres. fac. The compounds with a verb follow the simple; as, calefacio, -feci, -factum; calefac, calefio: those with a preposition change a of the present-stem into i, and of the supine-stem into e; and have a regular passive; as, interficio, interfeci, interfectum; interficior, interfici, interfectus.

Fallo, fefelli, falsum, to deceive.

refello, refelli, —.

Fendo, (obs.) defendo, defendi, defensum, to defend; offendo, fendi, -fensum, to offend.

Fero, ferre, (syncopated from ferre-re,) tuli, latum, to carry. A pers. tetuli occurs. affero, attuli, allatum; aufero, abstuli, ablatum; confero, contuli, collatum; differo, distuli, dilatatum; effero, extuli, elatum; infero, intuli, illatum; offero, obtuli, oblatum; suffero, sustuli, sublatum.

Ferve, fervi, to boil. See ferreo. 2d conj.

Fido, sisus, to trust. confido, confidi or confisus sum.

Figo, fixi, fixum rarely fictum, to fix.

Findo, fidi, fissum, to split.

Fingo, finxi, fictum, to feign.

Flecto, flexi, flexum, to bend.

Flēgo, flixi, —, to dash; affligo, affixi, afflictum. So infligo, profligo, -are, &c.

Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, to flow.

- Fodio, fodi, forsum, to dig.** *Old inf. pass. fodiri; so also effodiri.*
Frango, fregi, fractum, to break.
Fremo, fremui, fremitum, to roar.
Frendo, —, fresum and fressum, to gnash.
Frigo, frixi, frictum rarely frixum, to fry.
Fugio, fugi, fugitum, to fly.
Fulgo, —, —, to flash.
Fundo, fudi, fusum, to pour.
Furo, —, —, to rage.
Gemo, gemui, gemitum, to groan.
Gero, gessi, gestum, to bear.
Gigno, (for gi-geno.) genui, genitum, to beget.
Glisco, —, —, to grow.
Glubo, —, —, to peel. deglubo, degluptum.
Gruo, (obs.) congruo, ingruo, -grui.
Ico, ici, ietum, to strike.
Imbuo, imbui, imbutum, to imbue.
Incesso, incessivi or incessi, —, to attack.
Induo, indui, indutum, to put on.
Jacio, jeci, jactum, to throw. conjicio, -jeci. -jectum; so the other compounds.
Jungo, junxi, junctum, to join.
Lacesso, -ivi, -itum, to provoke.
Lacio, (obs.) allicio, allexi, allectum, to allure. So illicio, pellicio; but elicio, eliciui & elixi. elicatum.
Lædo, læsi, læsum, to hurt.
Lambo, lambi, lambitum, to lick.
Lego, legi, lectum, to read. So the compounds with ad, per, præ, re, sub. and trans: the other compounds change a into i. Diligo, intelligo, and negligo, have -lexi, -lectum.
Lingo, linxi, linctum, to lick. de-lingo, —, —, to lick up.
Lino, livi or levi, litum, to daub.
Linquo, liqui, —, to leave. relinquo, and delinquo, -liqui, -lictum.
Ludo, lusi, lusum, to play.
Luo, lui, luiturus, to atone. abluc, -lui, -lutum. So diluo and eluo.
Mando, mandi, mansum, to chew.
Mergo, mersi, mersum, to dip.
Metuo, metui, metutum (rare), to fear.
Mingo. minxi, mictum, to make water.
Minuo, minui, minutum, to lessen.
Mitto, misi, missum, to send.
Molo, molui, molitum, to grind.
Mungo, (obs.) emungo, emunxi. emunctum, to wipe the nose.
Nectò, nexui & nexi, nexum, to knit, annexo, -nexui, nexum. So innecto and connecto.
Ningo or -guo, nixi, —, to snow.
Nosco, novi, notum, to know. agnoscò and cognoscò have -nitum. dignosco and præ-nosco have only the present-stem.
Nubo, nupsi, nuptum, to veil.
Nuo, to nod. abnuo, -nui, -nuitum. or -nutum; annuo, -nui, -nutum: innuo, -nui, -nutum; renuo, -nui. —.
Olo, olui, —, to smell.
Pando, —, passum or pansum, to spread. dispando, —, disper-sum.
Pango, panxi, pegi, and pegegi, pactum, pancturus, to fix. The compounds have -pegi. -pactum, except depango and suppingo, which want the perf.-stem: and repango, which wants both perf. and sup. stems.
Parco, peperci, rarely parci, parci-tum and parsum, to spare.
Pario, peperii, partum and paritum.

to bring forth. The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Pasco, pavi, pastum, *to feed.*

Pecto, pexi, pexum, and pectitum, *to comb.*

Pedo, pepedi, —, *to break wind*
oppedo, —, —.

Pello, pepuli, pulsum, *to drive.*

Pendo, pependi, pensum, *to weigh.*

Peto, petivi, petitum, *to beg.*

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, *to paint.*

Pinso, pinsi and pinsui, pinsitum, pinsum, and pistum, *to pound.*

Plango, plaxi, planctum, *to beat.*

Plando, plausi, plausum, *to clap*
circumplando, —, —. *The other compounds except applando, change au into o*

Plecto, plexi, and plexui, plexum, *to twine.*

Pluo, plui, or pluvi, —, *to rain.*

Pono, posui, positum, *to place.*

Porricio, porrexi, porrectum, *to sacrifice.*

Posco, poposci, —, *to demand.*

Prehendo } -di, -sum, *to seize.*
Prendo. }

Premo, pressi, pressum, *to press.*

Promo, prompsi, promptum, *to bring out.*

Psallo, psalli, —, *to play on a stringed instrument.*

Pungo, pupugi, punctum, *to prick.*
The compounds with con-, dis-, ex-, and inter-, have punxi, punctum. repungo, —, —.

Quæro, quæsi, quæsitum, *to seek.*

Quatio, —, quassum, *to shake. The compounds change qua into cu; as, concutio, concussi, concussum.*

Quiesco, quievi, quietum, *to rest.*

Rado, rasi, rasum, *to shave.*

Rapio, rapui, raptum, *to snatch.*

Rogo, rexi, rectum, *to rule.*

Repo, repsi, —, *to creep.*

Rodo, rosi, rosum, *to gnaw. e-, and præ-rodo, want the perf. stem: and orodolo, both perf. and sup. stems.*

Rudo, rudivi, ruditum, *to bray.*

Rumpo, rupi, ruptum, *to break.*

Ruo, rui, rutum, ruiturus, *to fall.*
cornuo, corruui, —; so irruo.

Sapio, sapivi, and sapii, —, *to be wise. resipio, —, —: so desipio.*

Scabo, scabi, —, *to scratch.*

Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, *to engrave.*

Salio or sallo, —, salsum, *to salt.*

Scando, scandi, scansum, *to climb.*

Scindo, scidi. (anciently scescidi.) scissum, *to cut.*

Scisco, scivi, scitum, *to order.*

Scribo, scripsi scriptum, *to write.*

Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, *to carve.*

Sero, sevi, satum, *to sow.*

Sero, —, sertum, *to entwine. compounds have -serui.*

Serpo, serpsi, scriptum, *to creep.*

Sido, sidi, (collateral form of sedeo,) *to settle.*

Sino, sivi, situm, *to place.*

Sisto, stiti, statum, *to stop. The compounds want the supine-stem.*

Solvo, solvi, solutum, *to loose.*

Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, *to scatter.*

Specio, spexi, spectrum, *to look; used only in the compounds.*

Sperno, spreui, spretum, *to despise.*

Spuo, spui, sputum, *to spit. respuo, respui, —.*

Statuo, statui, statutum, *to plate.*

Sterne, stravi, stratum, *to strew.*

Sternuo, sternui, —, *to sneeze.*

Sterto, stertui, —, *to snore.*

Stingo, —, —, *to put out. The compounds have stinxi, stinctum.*

Strepo, strepui, —, *to make a noise.*

Striço, stridi, *to creak.*

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, <i>to bind.</i>	Traho, traxi, tractum, <i>to draw.</i>
Struo, traxi, structum, <i>to build.</i>	Tremo, tremui, —, <i>to tremble.</i>
Sugo, suxi, suctum, <i>to suck.</i>	Tribuo, tribui, tributum, <i>to attribute.</i>
Sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, <i>to take.</i>	Trudo, trusi, trusum, <i>to thrust.</i>
Suo, sui, sutum, <i>to sew.</i> consuo, —, consutam, <i>so dissuo, assuo, —, —.</i>	Tundo, tutudi, tunsam & tusum, <i>to beat.</i> The compounds have tusum; but contunsum, detunsum, obtunsum, and retunsum also occur.
Tango, (<i>strengthened from tingo.</i>) tetigi, tactum, <i>to touch.</i>	Ungo (or -guo), unxi, unctum, <i>to anoint.</i>
Tego, texi, tectum, <i>to cover.</i>	Uro, ussi, ustum, <i>to burn.</i>
Temno, —, —; contemno, -temp-si, temptum, <i>to despise.</i>	Vado, vasi, (once), —, <i>to go.</i> supervado, —, —. The other compounds have vasi, vasum.
Tendo, tetendi, tensum and tentum, <i>to stretch.</i> So in-, os-, and pectendo, detendo, —, -tensum. The other compounds have ten-um.	Veho, vexi, vectum, <i>to carry.</i>
Tergo, (tegeo, 2nd conj.) tersi, tersum, <i>to wipe.</i>	Vello, velli & vulsi, vulsum, <i>to drag.</i> So avello, divello, evello; intervallo, -vulsi, -vulsum. The other compounds have velli only.
Tero, trivi, tritum, (<i>syncopated for terivi, teritum, to rub.</i>)	Verto, versi, —, <i>to incline.</i>
Texo, texui, textum, <i>to weave.</i>	Verro, verri, versum, <i>to sweep.</i>
Tingo (or -guo.) tinxi, tinctum, <i>to moisten.</i>	Verto, verti, versum, <i>to turn.</i>
Tollo, tetuli (anciently,) rarely tolli, —, <i>to raise.</i> sustuli and sublatum from sustulero, supply the perfect and supine stems of tollere and sustollere. The compounds want perfect stem.	Vinco, vici, victum, <i>to conquer.</i>
	Viso, visi, visum, <i>to visit.</i>
	Vivo, vixi, victurus, <i>to live.</i>
	Volvo, volvi, volutum, <i>to roll.</i>
	Vomo, vomui, vomitum, <i>to vomit.</i>

INCEPTIVE VERBS.

§231. Very few inceptive verbs have a supine-stem, and these take it from the simple verb; the perfect-stem, when used, is also adopted from the simple verb. In many inceptives, especially those derived from nouns and adjectives, the intermediate verb in -eo is not used; as, *gravesco*, from *gravis*.

Acesco, acui, <i>to be sour.</i>	*ui, -alimum.
Ægresco, —, <i>to grow sick.</i>	Ardesco, arsi, <i>to take fire.</i>
Albosco, —, <i>to grow white.</i>	Aresco, —, <i>to grow dry.</i> exaresco, -arui; so inaresco, peraresco.
Alesco, —, <i>to grow.</i> coalesco, -al-	

- Angesco, —, to begin to grow.
 Calesco, —, to grow warm.
 Calvesco, —, to grow bald.
 Candesco, candui, to grow white.
 Canesco, —, to grow grey.
 Clareasco, clarui, to become bright.
 Condormisco, -dormivi, to grow sleepy.
 Conticesco, -tienti, to become silent.
 Crebresco, crebui & crebrui, to increase.
 Crudesco, crudui, to become cruel.
 Ditesco, —, to grow rich.
 Dulcesco, duleni, to grow sweet.
 Duresco, durui, to grow hard.
 Evilesco, evilui, to grow vile.
 Extimeſco, extimui, to fear greatly.
 Fatisco, —, to gape.
 Flaccesco, flaceni, to wilt.
 Fervesco, ferbui, to boil.
 Floresco, florni, to begin to flourish.
 Fracesco, fracui, to grow rancid.
 Frigescō, frixi, to grow cold.
 Frondesco, frondui, to grow leafy.
 Fruticesco, —, to begin to shoot.
 Gelasco, —, to freeze.
 Gemisco, —, to begin to sigh.
 Gemmasco, —, to begin to bud.
 Gemmesco, —, to become a gem.
 Generasco, —, to be produced.
 Grandesco, —, to grow large.
 Gravesco, —, to grow heavy.
 Haresco, —, to adhere.
 Hebesco, —, to grow dull.
 Horresco, horrui, to grow rough.
 Humesco, —, to grow moist.
 Ignescō, —, to become inflamed.
 Indolesco, -dolui, to be grieved.
 Insolesco, —, to be haughty.
 Integrasco, —, to grow fresh.
 Juvenesco, —, to grow young.
 Languesco, languui, to grow languid.
 Lapidescō, —, to become stone.
 Latesco, —, to grow broad.
 Latesco, —, to lie hid. delitesco
 a ul oblitescō hinc -litui.
 Lentescō, to become soft.
 Liquesco, licui, to become liquid.
 Lutesco, —, to grow light.
 Lutesco, —, to grow muddy.
 Macesco, —, } to grow lean.
 Macresco, macrui, }
 Madesco, madui, to grow wet.
 Marcesco, —, to pine away.
 Maturesco maturui, to ripen.
 Miseresco, —, to pity.
 Mitescō, —, to grow mild.
 Mollesco, —, to grow soft.
 Mutescō, —, to grow dumb. obmutescō, obmutui.
 Nigresco, nigrui, to grow black.
 Nitescō, nitui, to grow bright.
 Notesco, notui, to become known.
 Obbrutesco, —, to become brutish.
 Obdormisco, —, to fall asleep.
 Obsurdesco, obsurdui, to grow deaf.
 Occallesco, —, callui, to grow hard.
 Olesco, (rarely used.) abolesco, abolevi. adolesco, adolevi, adultum, to grow up. exolesco, -olevi, -oletum, to grow obsolete. So obsolesco; inolesco, —, olivi, olitum.
 Pallesco, pallui, to grow pale.
 Patesco, patui, to be opened.
 Pavescō, —, to grow fearful.
 Pertimesco, -timui, to fear greatly.
 Pinguesco, —, to grow fat.
 Pubesco, pubui, to grow to maturity.
 Puerasco, —, to become a boy.
 Putesco, putui } to become rotten.
 Putresco, —, }
 Raresco, —, to become thin.
 Resipisco, -sipivi, -sipii, and -sipui, to come to oneself.
 Rigescō, rigui, to grow cold.
 Rubesco, rubui, to grow red.

Sanesco, —, <i>to become sound.</i> con-	Tabesco, tabui, <i>to waste away.</i>
sanesco, -sanui.	Teneresco, & -asco, —, <i>to grow</i>
Senesco, senui, <i>to grow old.</i>	<i>tender.</i>
Sentesco, —, <i>to perceive.</i>	Tepesco, tepui, <i>to grow warm.</i>
Sicesco, —, <i>to become dry.</i>	Torpesco, torpui, <i>to grow torpid.</i>
Silesco, —, <i>to grow silent.</i>	Tremisco, —, <i>to grow tremulous.</i>
Solidesco, —, <i>to grow solid.</i>	Tumesco, tumui } <i>to begin to swell.</i>
Sordesco, sordui, <i>to grow filthy.</i>	Turgesco, —, }
Splendesco, splendui, <i>to grow</i>	Uvesco, —, <i>to grow moist.</i>
<i>bright.</i>	Valesco, —, <i>to grow strong.</i>
Spumescio, —, <i>to begin to foam.</i>	Vanescio, —, <i>to vanish.</i>
Sterilesco, —, <i>to become barren.</i>	evanesco, evanui.
Stupesco, —, <i>to be astonished.</i>	Veterasco, -avi, <i>to grow old.</i>
Suesco, suevi, suetum, <i>to become</i>	Vireseo, —, <i>to grow green.</i>
<i>accustomed.</i>	Vivesco, vixi, <i>to come to life.</i>

§232 DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Apiscor, aptus, <i>to get.</i>	Nanciscor, nactus or nactus, <i>to</i>
Expergiscor, -perrectus, <i>to wake up.</i>	<i>obtain.</i>
Fatiscor, <i>to gape.</i> defetiscor, de-	Nascor, natus, nasciturus, <i>to be</i>
fessus. <i>So the other compounds.</i>	<i>born.</i>
Fruor, fruitus, fructus, fruiturus,	Nitor, nixus, or nisus, nisurus, <i>to</i>
<i>to enjoy.</i>	<i>strive.</i>
Fangor, functus, <i>to perform.</i>	Obliviscor, oblītus, <i>to forget.</i>
Gradior, grassus, <i>to walk.</i> aggre-	Paciscor, pactus, <i>to bargain.</i>
dior, aggredi, & aggrediri, ag-	Patior, passus, <i>to suffer.</i>
gressus. <i>So progredior.</i>	Proficiscor, profectus, <i>to set out.</i>
Irascer, <i>to be angry.</i>	Queror, questus, <i>to complain.</i>
Labor, lapsus, <i>to fall.</i>	Ringor, rinctus, <i>to snarl.</i>
Liquor, <i>to flow.</i>	Segnor, secutus, <i>to follow.</i>
Loquor, locutus, <i>to speak.</i>	Tuor, tutus, <i>to protect.</i>
Miniscor, (obs.) comminiscor,	Vescor, <i>to eat.</i>
commentus, <i>to invent.</i> remin-	Ulciscor, ultus, <i>to avenge</i>
iscor, <i>to remember.</i>	Utor, usus, <i>to use.</i>
Morior, mori, <i>rarely moriri, mortu-</i>	
<i>us, moriturus, to die.</i>	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 223. 1. Verbs of the fourth conjugation are vowel verbs, the characteristic vowel being *i*. The perfect-stem is formed.

(a) By adding *v*; as, *audi-o, audiv-i*.

(b) The characteristic vowel is dropped in some verbs, and then *v* passes into *u*; as, *sal-i-o*, *sal-u-i*.

(c) By dropping the characteristic and adding *s*; as, *sepio*, *seps-i*.

(d) By dropping the characteristic and lengthening the stem-vowel; as, *veni-o*, *ven-i*.

2. The supine-stem is formed by adding *t*.

In many verbs *v* of the perfect stem is elided.

3. The following list contains those verbs which form the perfect-stem according to the three last methods mentioned above.

Amicio, -ui or -xi, amictum, to clothe.	Payio is of the third conjugation
Balbutio, —, —, to stammer.	but its compounds are of the fourth;
Cæcutio, —, —, to be blind.	as, aperio, aperui, apertum; so
Cambio, campsi, to exchange.	opperio.
Dementio, —, —, to be mad.	Reperio, reperi, repertum: so
Effutio, —, effutitum, to prate	comperio, rarely deponent.
Eo, -ivi, -itum, to go. The compounds	Prurio, —, —, to itch.
almost always elide <i>v</i> of the per-	Queo, (like eo,) quivi, quitum, to
fect-stem, redii, &c. anteo, -ivi	be able.
or -ii, —. contraeo, —, —, so	Raucio, —, rausum, to be hoarse.
also posteo.	Rugio, —, —, to roar.
Farcio, farsii, fartum and fartum.	Sævio, sævii, -itum, to rage.
to pack. The compounds change	Sagio, —, —, to perceive keenly.
a into <i>e</i> ; as, refercio, -fersi,	Salio, salui or -ii, saltum, to leap;
-fertum; but con- and ef- farcio	as- & de silio, -ui, sultum; pro-
and fercio, —, fartum and fer-	& trans-silio, -ui, -ivi, -ii; ab-
tum.	in-, sub-silio, -ii, -ui; dis-, ex-
Ferio, —, —, to strike.	re-silio, -ui; circum- & præ silio,
Ferocio, -ivi and -ii, to be fierce.	—, —.
Fulcio fulsi, fultum, to prop. ful-	Salio, —, salitum, to salt.
situs occurs.	Sancio, sanxi, sanctum & sanc-
Gannio, —, —, to bark.	tum, to ratify. Sancierat occurs.
Glocio, —, —, to cluck.	Sarcio, sarcii, sartum to patch.
Grandio, —, —, to make great.	Sarrio, -ivi, -ui, -itum, to hoe.
Haurio, hausi, rarely haurii, hau-	Seaturio, —, —, to gush out.
sum rarely hausitum, hausus,	Sentio, sensi, sensum, to feel.
hausurus, hauritus, hauriturus.	Sepelio, -ivi & ii, rarely sepli, se-
Hinnio, —, —, to neigh.	pultum, rarely -itum, to bury.
Ineptio, —, —, to trifle.	Sepio, sepsi, septum, to hedge.

Singultio, —, —; also singulto,	Tussio, —, —, to cough.
—, -atum, to sob.	Vagio, —, —, to cry.
Sitio, -ivi & ii, —, to be thirsty.	Venio, veni, ventum, to come.
Suffio, -ii, -itum, to fumigate.	Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, to bind.

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Metior, mensus; and metitu, to measure.	rior, oppertus and opperitus, to wait for.
Ordior, orsus, to begin.	Rotior, potitus, to obtain.
Orior, ortus, oriturus, to rise. Of the 3rd conj. except infin. pres.	The poets sometimes use an indicative present and subjunctive imperfect of the third conjugation.
Perior, (obs. whence peritus.) experior. expertus, to try. oppo-	

APPENDIX VIII.

ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING TIME.

§ 234. 1. The Romans divided the natural day, (from sunrise to sunset,) into twelve equal hours of varying length according to the time of year. The night was also divided in the same way into four equal watches.

2. The year, according to the calendar of Julius Cæsar, was divided into twelve months, as follows:

Januarius, 31 days.	Maius, 31 days.	September, 30 days.
Februarius, 28 "	Junius, 30 "	October, 31 "
Martius, 31 "	Quintilis, 31 "	November, 30 "
Aprilis, 30 "	Sextilis, 31 "	December, 31 "

3. In early times the year began in March, hence the names, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, &c. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis*, were afterwards changed to *Julius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two Cæsars.

4. The day of the month was reckoned from three points, *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*, which fell respectively on the *first*, *fifth*, and *thirteenth* of each month; except March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* fell on the *seventh*, and the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.

5. Any given date was reckoned, not backward from the first day of the month as with us, but forward to the next Kalends, Nones, or Ides, *inclusive*. Thus the 2nd of March was called the “sixth before the Nones of March;” *sextus (ante) Nonas Martias*, or *ante diem sextum Nonas Martias*; the 16th of March was called the “17th before the Kalends of April,” *septimus decimus (ante) Kalendas Apriles*, or *ante diem septimum decimum Kalendas Apriles*. The 2nd of June was called *quartus Nonas Junias*, or *ante diem quartum Nonas Junias*, &c.

6. In leap year February had 29 days, the 24th (*sextus Kal. Mar.*) being doubled and called *bisextus Kal. Mar.*—Hence leap year was called *bisextilis*.

7. Therefore, to reduce the Roman calendar to our own,
(a). For a date before the Nones or Ides, subtract the number of days from the day of the month on which the Nones or Ides fell, and add one to the remainder. Thus, *a. d. VIII, Idus Maias*, $(15-8) + 1 = 8$; May 8th.

(b). For a date before the Kalends, subtract the number of days from the number of days in the month, and add *two* to the remainder. Thus, *a. d. XVII, Kal. Jun.*; $(31-17) + 2 = 16$; May 16th.

8. To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the process will be reversed.

9. The week of seven days (*hebdomas*,) was not used at Rome till after the introduction of christianity.

APPENDIX IX.—PROSODY.*

§236. Prosody is the science of versification.

* Prosody belongs rather to poetry than to grammar. In the following appendix the only metres discussed are hexameter and pentameter, these being the only ones the pupil is likely to encounter in the course of preparation for college. The rules of quantity are for the most part derived from the full and laborious work of Dr Andrews.

QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it, a long syllable requiring twice as much time as a short one.

2. A vowel is long by *nature*, as *duco*; or by *position*, as *restiti*. A syllable that is sometimes long and sometimes short is said to be *common*.

§237. RULE I. A vowel before another vowel is short.

So also when *h* comes between two vowels, it being only a breathing.

Exc. 1. *Fio* has *i* long except before *er*; and sometimes even then; as *fiunt*, *fiam*.

Exc. 2. *E* between two *i*'s is long in the genitive and dative of the 5th declension; as, *faciei*.

Exc. 3. *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *ai*; as, *aulai*.

Exc. 4. *A* & *E* are long in the endings *aius*, *eius*, *cia*.

Exc. 5. *I* is common in genitives in *ius*, but in *alterius* it is almost always short.

Exc. 6. The first vowel of *cheu* is long; that of *Diana*, *ie*, and *ohe*, is common.

§ 238. RULE II. Diphthongs are long.

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel.

Exc. 2. A diphthong at the end of a word is sometimes made short when the next word begins with a vowel.

§ 239. RULE III. Contracted syllables are long. (For an exception see §223, 3.)

§ 240. RULE IV. A vowel before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position.

NOTE. A vowel, other than *i*, really combines with *j* to form a diphthong.

REM. 1. The vowel is long by position when one or both the consonants are in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is common.

REM. 2. A short vowel at the end of a word before an initial double consonant or *j* in the next word, is not lengthened.

REM. 3. The law of position is frequently disregarded by the comic poets.

Exc. 1. *i* is short before *j* in the compounds of *jugum*; as, *bijugus*.

Exc. 2. A vowel naturally short, before a mute and liquid, is common.

REM. 4. A vowel is made long by position in compound words where the former part ends with a mute, and the latter part begins with a liquid; as, *ablucio*.

REM. 5. A short vowel at the end of a word, before a mute and liquid in the next word, is rarely lengthened, except in the arsis of a foot.

REM. 6. In Latin words only *l* and *r* following a mute lengthen a preceding short vowel.

§241. RULE V. Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives.

Exc. 1. Frequentatives from verbs of the 1st conjugation change a long into *i* short; *clamat-um*, *clamit-o*.

Exc. 2. (a). Some derivatives lengthen a short vowel; such as *deni* from *decem*; *persona* from *sono*; *humanus* from *homo*; *secius* from *secus*; *laterna* from *lateo*; *sedes* from *sedeo*; *litera* from *lino*; *tegula* from *tego*; *suspicio* from *suspico*.

(b) Some shorten a long vowel; as, *dicax* from *dico*, *dux* (*ducis*) from *duco*, *fides* from *fido*, *labo* from *labor*, *lucerna* from *luceo*, *molestus* from *moles*, *nato* from *natum*, *noto* from *notum*, *odium* from *odi*, *quasillus* from *qualus*, *sagax* from *sagio*, *sopor* from *sopio*, *vadum* from *vado*, *voco* from *voc-is*.

§242. RULE VI. Words introduced from the Greek, or other languages, retain their original quantity; so also Latin stems have the same quantity as the cognate Greek ones; as, *Darius*, (*Greek Darcios*); *viciis* (*Greek oikos*, *digammatel*.)

§243. RULE VII. Compound words retain the quantity of their components.

Exc. 1. *Agnitus* and *cognitus* from *notus*; *dejero* & *pejero* from *juro*; *hodie* from *hoc die*; *nihil* from *hilum*; compounds in *dicus* from *dico*; *innuba*, *pronuba*, *subnuba*, from *nubo*, (*but connubium* has *u* common;) *imbecillus* from *bacillum*; *ambitum* from *itum*; *but i* is short in *ambitus* and *ambitio*.

Exc. 2. *Pro* is short in *procella*, *procul*, *profanus*, *profari*, *professus*, *proficiscor*, *profiteor*, *profugio*, *profundus*, *pronepos*, *proneptis*, and *protervus*. It is common in *procuro*, *profundo*, *propago*, *propello*, and *propino*. The Greek *pro* is always short.

REM. 1. The inseparable prepositions *dis* and *re* are short; *di*, *se*, and *ve*, are long.

REM. 2. *A* ending the former part of a compound word is long; the other vowels short.

Exc. 1. *E* is long in *se* for *sex* or *semi*, and common in some compounds of *facio*.

Exc. 2. *I* is long when the first part of a compound is declined, or may be separated without altering the sense; as, *quidam*, *agricultura*; also in the former part of compounds of *dies* (*biduum*, *meridies*, &c.), in *ibique*, *utroque*, and *ibidem*; and in *idem* when masculine.

Exc. 3. *O* is long in compounds of *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, *quando*, (except *quandoquidem*), and in *alioqui*.

INCREMENTS.

§244. 1. A noun is said to *increase* when in any of its cases it has more syllables than in the nominative singular. A plural increment is one which belongs to the endings of the plural number, while a singular increment always belongs to the stem.

2. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first increment, and the penult the second; if three, the syllable before the antepen-

nult is called the first, the antepenult, the second, and the penult the third; as,

¹ ¹ ² ¹ ² ³
 sermo, ser-mon-is, ser-mon-i-bus, it-in-er-i-bus.

SINGULAR INCREMENTS.

§ 245. RULE VIII. Increments of the third declension in *a* and *o* are long; in *e*, *i*, and *u*, are short.

REM. 1. There are no singular increments in the second declension, stems in *r* merely dropping the nominative ending. Those of the first, fourth, and fifth, belong to § 237.

A.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*,) with *anas*, *mas*, *vas*, (*vadis*,) *baccar*, *hepar*, *jubar*, *lar*, *nectar*, *par*, *fax*, and *sal*, increase short.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *s* preceded by a consonant increase short in *a* and *o*; as, *daps*, *dapis*; *scrobs*, *scrobis*.

O.

Exc. 3. *O* in the increment of neuters is short; but *os* (*oris*) and neuter comparatives have *o* long. The increment of *adoris* common.

Exc. 4. *Arbor*, *memor*, *bos*, *compos*, *impos*, *lepus*, and *præcox* increase short.

E.

Exc. 5. Nouns in *en*, *enis*, (except *Hymen*,) with *Anio* and *Nerio*, increase long; also *hæres*, *locuples*, *mansues*, *merces*, *quies*, *Iber*, *veralec* or *alex*, *lex*, *rex*, *vervex*, *plebs* and *seps*.

I.

Exc. 6. Nouns and adjectives in *ix* increase long; but *calix*, *coxendix*, *filix*, *fornix*, *larix*, *nix*, *pix*, *salix*, and *strix*, increase short.

Exc. 7. *Dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *vis*, *Nesis*, *Quiris*, *Samnis*, and *vibex*, increase long.

U.

Exc. 8. Nouns in *us* (gen. *uris* *udis*, *utis*,) with *fur*, *frux*, *lux*, *Potlux*, increase long; but *intercus*, *Ligus*, and *pecus*, increase short.

REM. 2. Increments in *y* belong to Greek Nouns.

PLURAL INCREMENTS.

§ 246. RULE IX. Plural increments in *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u* are short.

INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 247. 1. A verb is said to *increase* when any of its forms has more syllables than the second person singular of the indicative present active.

2. The number of the increment is reckoned as in nouns: (§ 244, 2,) as,

audis, ¹aud-i-tis, ^{1 2}aud-i-e-bas, ^{1 2 3}aud-i-e-ba-tis, ^{1 2 3 4}aud-i-e-bam-i-ni.

§ 248. RULE X. In the increment of verbs *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u*, short.

A.

Exc. 1. The first increment of *do* is short.

E.

Exc. 2. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of the present and imperfect of the third conjugation, and in the second increment in *beris* & *bere*.

Exc. 3. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, & *re*, and the persons formed from them.

I.

Exc. 4. *I* is long before *v* or *s* in the perfect-stem.

Exc. 5. *I* is long in the supine-stem of *gaudeo*, *arcesso*, *divido*, *facesso*, *lacezzo*, *peto*, *quæro*, *recenseo*, & *obliviscor*.

Exc. 6. *I* is long in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except *imus* of the perfect; also in *simus*, *sitis*, *velimus*, *velitis*, *nolito*, *nolite*, *nolitote*.

Exc. 7. *I* is common in *rīs*, *rimus*, *ritis*, of the indicative future perfect and subjunctive perfect.

U.

Exc. 8. *U* is long in the supine stem and future participle active.

PENULTS.

§249. RULE XI. Monosyllabic present and perfect stems are long (§225, 2, c.); as *mōvi*, *motum* (perhaps syncopated from *movitum*).

Exc. (a.) Seven perfect-stems are short; *lib-i*, *ded-i*, *fid-i* (from *findo*), *scid-i*, *stet-i*, *stit-i*, *tul-j*.

NOTE. A reduplication is always short: hence the short stems of *bibi*, *dedi*, *steti*, (for *sesti*), and *stivi* (for *sisti*).

(b.) Ten supine-stems are short: *cit-um*, *dat-um*, *it-um*, *lit-um*, *quit-um*, *rat-um*, *rut-um*, *sat-um*, *sit-um*, *stat-um*.

So also the obsolete *futum* whence *futurus*.

§250. RULE XII. (a.) Words in *abrum*, *acrum*, *ætrum*, *ubrum*, *osus*, *atum*, *itum*, *utum*, *udus*, *aris* & *clus*, lengthen the penult.

Exc. *Gelus*, *gelum* and *scelus*; *defrutum*, *pulpitum*, *petoritum*, *lutum*.

(b.) Words in *ca*, *do*, *ga*, *go*, *ma*, *tus*, *le*, *les*, *lis*, *na*, *ne*, *ai*, *nis*, *dex*, *dix*, *mex*, *mix*, *lex*, and *rex*, lengthen the penult.

Exc. *Brassica*, *dica*, *fulica*, *mantica*, *pedica*, *pertica*, *scutica*, *tunica*, *vomica*; *cado*, *divido*, *edo* (to eat), *solido*, *spado*, *trepido*; *caliga*, *toga*, *plaga*, *fuga*, *ego*, *ligo*; *anima*, *lacrima*, *victima*; *catus*, *latus* (-*eris*), *metus*, *vegetus*, *anhelitus*, *digitus*, *gratuitus*, *halitus*, *servitus*, *spiritus*, *notus*, *quotus*, *arbutus*, *putus*, *inclutus*; *male*; verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*; adjectives in *atilis*; *dapsilis*, *gracilis*, *humilis*, *parilis*, *similis*, *sterilis*, *mugilis*, *strigilis*; *sine*, *canis*, *cinis*, *juvenis*, *buccina*, *fiscina*, *femina*, *fuscina*, *lamina*, *pagina*, *patina*, *sarcina*, *apina*, *nundina*, *culex*, *silex*, *rumex*.

(c.) *A*, *e*, *o*, *u*, before *mus*, *mum*, *nus*, *num*, are long.

Exc. *Glomus*, *humus*, *postumus*, *nemus*; *anus* (an old woman), *manus*, *occanus*, *penus*, *tenuis*, *Venus*, *onus*, *bonus*, *sonus*, *laganum*.

(d.) Words in *ates*, *itis*, *otis*, *ata*, *eta*, *ota*, *uta*, lengthen the penult; except *silis*, *potis*, *nota*, *rota*.

(e.) A penultimate vowel before *v* is long.

Exc. *Avis, brevis, gravis, levis, ovis; juvo, lavo, ovo; avus, cavius, favus, novus, favor, pavor, novem.*

§ 251. RULE XVIII. (a.) Words in *acus, icus, idus, ilus, imus; ba, bo, pa, po; etas, itas, and ita*; shorten the penult.

Exc. *Dacus, meracius, opacus; amicus, apricus, ficus, mendiculus, picus, posticus, pudicus, spicus, umbilicus; Idus, fidus, infidus, nidus; asilus, bimus, limus, opimus, patrimus, matrimus, quadrimus, trimus, and the superlatives inus and primus; gleba, bubo, glubo, libo, nubo, scribo, ripa, cupa, pupa, scopa, repo, pituita.*

(b.) Diminutives and polysyllables in *ulus*, with verbs in *ino, inor*, shorten the penult.

Exc. *Festino, sagino, propino, opinor, and compounds of clino.*

§ 252. RULE XIV. Words in *inus*, except adjectives expressing time or material, lengthen the penult.

Exc. But *matutinus, repentinus, and vespertinus* lengthen the penult, and the following shorten it: *accimus, asinus, dominus, facinus, sinus, terminus, geminus, circinus, minus.*

§ 253. RULE XV. Before final *ro, ror, a* and *e* are short; the other vowels, long.

Exc. *Pero, spero, foro, soror, voro, furo.*

§ 254. RULE XVI. Before final *rus, ra, rum, e* is short; the other vowels, long.

Exc. *Austerus, galerus, plerus, procerus, serus, severus, verus, statera; barbarus, nurus, pirus, scarus, sparus, torus, hara, mora, parum, supparum.*

§ 255. RULE XVII. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult; those in *iter* and *itus* shorten it. But *statim*, (immediately,) is short.

REM. 1. Many apparent exceptions to the foregoing rules are covered by § 241, § 242, § 243. The masculine only of adjectival ter-

minations is given, the quantity of the feminine and neuter being of course that of the masculine.

REM. 2. Patronymies, (Greek,) in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult, while those in *ais*, *ets*, *ois*, lengthen it. Nouns in *eus* form patronymies in *ides*.

ANTEPENULTS.

§ 256. RULE XVIII. The connecting vowels *i*, *o*, and *u*, are short; *a* is long; as, *vinolentus*, *fraudentus*, *alimentum*, *atramentum*.

§ 257. RULE XIX. A vowel before *nea*, *neo*, *nia*, *nio*, *nus*, *nium*, is long.

Exc. *Castanea*, *linea*, *marco*, *mineo*, *monéo*, *teneo*, *ignominia*, *luscinia*, *renia*, *lanio*, *venio*, and words in *cinium*.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 258. RULE XX. (a.) Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long.

(b.) Monosyllabic nouns ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short.

Exc. 1. *Cor*, *fel*, *mel*, *pol*, *vir*, *os*, (*ossis*), *vas*, (*vadis*), are short.

Exc. 2. *En*, *non*, *cras*, *plus*, *cur*, *par*, are long. So also monosyllables in *e*, except *nec* (short,) and *hic* and *hoc* (common)

Exc. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases and verb forms in *as*, *es*, and *is*, are long; but *es* from *sum* is short.

POLYSYLLABLES.

A final.

§ 259. RULE XXI. *A final*, in words declined, is short, and long in words undeclined.

Exc. 1. *A final* is long in the ablative singular of the first declension, and in the vocative singular of Greek nouns in *as* and *es*.

Exc. 2. *A final* is short in *cia*, *ita*, *quia*, and *puta*, when used ad-

verbally; sometimes also in *contra* and numerals in *ginta*. In *postea* it is common.

E final.

§ 260. RULE XXII. *E* final is short in words of two or more syllables.

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in the first and fifth declensions.

Exc. 2. Final *e* in the imperative active, second person singular of the second conjugation is a contraction; but it is sometimes short in *cave*, *vale*, *vide*.

Exc. 3. Final *e* is long in *fere*, *ferme*, *ohe*, and in adverbs derived from adjectives of the second declension; but it is short in *bene*, *male*, *inferne*, and *superne*.

I final.

§ 261. RULE XXIII. *I* final is long.

Exc. *I* final is common in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, *ubi*, *nasi*, *quasi*, and *cui* when a dissyllable.

O final.

§ 262. RULE XXIV. *O* final, in words of more than one syllable, is common.

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative, and in the local adverbs *quo*, *eo*, *eodem*, &c.; also in *omnino* and *io*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is short in *cito*, *illico*, *profecto*, and *modo*, and generally in *ego* and *homo*.

U final.

§ 263. RULE XXV. *U* final is long.

D, L, N, R, T, final.

§ 264. RULE XXVI. A vowel before *d, l, n, r, t*, final is short.

Exc. *U* is long in *lien*, *Iter*, and *Celtiber*.

C final.

§ 265. RULE XXVII. A vowel before *c* final is long; but *e* in *donec* is short.

As, Es, Os, final.

§ 266. RULE XXVIII. As, es, and os, final are long.

Exc. 1. As is short in *anas*.

Exc. 2. Es is short in nouns of the third declension, class III (§ 35); and in *penes*.

Exc. 3. Os is short in *compos*, *impos*, and *cs* (*ossis*).

Is, Us, Ys, final.

§ 267. RULE XXIX. Is, Us, and Ys, final are short.

Exc. 1. Is and us are long in plural cases, and in the nominative of nouns having a long stem vowel; *as*, *musis*, *fructus*, *tellus*, *Samnis*.

Exc. 2. Contracted final syllables in *us* and *is* are of course long, *as*, *audis* for *audi-is*, *fructus* for *fructu-is*.

Exc. 3. *Ris* in the indicative future perfect and subjunctive perfect is common.

REMARK. The last syllable of a verse (except the anapæstic and Ionic *a minore*), may be long or short.

VERSIFICATION.

§ 268. 1. A *foot* is a combination of two or more syllables. A compound foot consists of two simple feet united. The only feet which we have occasion now to mention, are the *Spondee*, consisting of two long syllables, *as nobis*; and the *Dactyl*, consisting of a long syllable and two short ones; *as, Punicus*.

2. *Metre* is the arrangement of syllables and feet into verses. In *dactylic* metre the fundamental foot is a *dactyl*.

3. A *verse* is a number of feet arranged in a certain order, and constituting a line of poetry. Two verses are called a *distich*, half verse, a *hemistich*.

4. *Scanning* is dividing a verse into the feet of which it is composed, or reading it *metrically*.

5. The figures of prosody are

(a.) *Synalapha*, or the elision of a final vowel or diph-

thong in scanning, when the next word begins with a vowel. Thus, *si, omnes* is read *s'omnes*; *illi inter se' ill' inter se*, &c.

Rem. 1. *O, heu, 'ah, proh, vœ, and vah,* are not elided. Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes stand unelided, and if so, they are generally short in the thesis of a foot.

(b.) *Ecthlipsis*, or the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the next word begins with a vowel: As, *Monstr(um) horrend(um) inform(e) ingens cui lumen ademptum.*

Final *s* was sometimes elided in the same way by the earlier poets.

Rem. 2. *M* final, when unelided, is short before a vowel.

(c.) *Synæresis*, or the contraction of two separate vowels into one syllable; as, *deinde, fluviorum, tenuis*, pronounced *dine-de, fluv-yorum, ten-wis.*

(d.) *Diæresis*, or the separation of one syllable into two; as, *silua* for *silva*; *su-adent* for *sudent*.

(e.) *Systole*, or the shortening of a syllable, naturally or by position long; as,

Obstupui, steterunt comæ; vox faucibus hæsit.

(f.) *Diastole*, or lengthening a syllable naturally short.

(g.) *Synapheia*, or such a connection between the last syllable of one verse and the first of the next, that the former is made long by position, or cut off by synalœpha or ecthlipsis.

6. Rhythm is the alternate elevation (*arsis*) or depression (*thesis*) of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a verse. The terms *arsis* and *thesis* are also applied to the part of the foot on which this elevation or depression takes place. The *arsis* of a foot is on the long syllable.

7. The *cæsura* of the verse is such a division of the line,

by the ending of a word, as affords a convenient and harmonious pause.

§ 269. 1. An *hexameter* or *heroic* verse consists of six feet, the last of which is a spondee, and the fifth a dactyl; but the fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and then the verse is called *spondaic*.

Ludere | *quæ* vel- | *lem* || *cala-* | *mo* per | *misit a-* | *gresti.* *Virg. E* 1, 10.
In nova | *fert ani-* | *mus* || *mu-* | *tatas* | *dicere* | *formas.* *Ov. M.* 1, 1.
Cara de | *um sobo-* | *les* || *mag-* | *num Jovis* | *inere-* | *mentum.* *Virg.*

2. The *cæsura* in hexameter usually occurs after the arsis of the third foot, as above; frequently, however, it occurs after the arsis of the fourth foot, and there is then a slighter one after the arsis of the second; as,

Inde to- | *ro pater* | *Æne-* | *as* || *sie* | *orsus ab* | *alto.*

3. A light and rapid movement is produced by the recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one, by that of spondees.

Atque le- | *vem stipu-* | *lam* || *crepi-* | *tanti* | *urere* | *flamma.*
Ill(i) in- | *ter se-* | *se* || *mag-* | *na vi* | *brachia* | *tollunt.*


§ 270. 1. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, anapæsts (i. e. two short and one long).

Ah nimis | *ex, ve-* | *ro* || *nunc* | *tibi no-* | *men erit!*

2. It is generally, however, divided into two hemistichs, the first containing two dactyls, two spondees, or a dactyl and a spondee, followed by a long syllable; the second, two dactyls, followed by another long syllable. The *cæsura* occurs at the close of the first hemistich.

Natu- | *ra sequi-* | *tur* || *semina* | *quisque su-* | *æ.*
Ah nimis | *ex ve-* | *ro* || *nunc tibi* | *nomen e-* | *rit.*

3. This verse usually alternates with hexameter, forming what is called *elegiac* verse.

 For a discussion of other metres, see Zumpt's Latin Grammar, or Andrews' Latin Grammar.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A OR AB.

a or ab, prep., *from, by*; §120, 2.
 ab-do, (-ere, abdid-, abdit-,) *to run for concealment, to hide.*
 ab-eo, (-ire, abi-, abit-,) *to go away.*
 absens, entis, (absum), *absent.*
 ab-solvo, (ere, solv-, solut), *to free from, clear, absolve.*
 ab-sum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, *to be away from, to be absent.*
 ab-undo, -are, &c., *to abound.*
 ab-utor, -i, -usus, *to abuse.*
 ac-cedo, -ere, cess, cess, *to approach.*
 ac-cendo, -ere, accend-, accens-, *to set on fire.*
 ac-cido, -ere, accid-, —, *to happen.*
 ac-cipio, -ere, cep-, cept-, *to receive.*
 ac-curro, -ere, curr-, *seldom cur-curr-, curs-, to run to.*
 ac-cuso, are, &c., *to bring to trial, accuse, reproach.*
 acer or acris, -is, .e, *sharp.*
 acerbus, a, um, *bitter.*
 acies, ei, *edge, point, line of battle.*
 acriter, adv. (acer), *sharply*; §119.
 ad, (prep., §120, 1), *to, at, towards.*
 ad-do, -ere, addid-, addit-, *to add.*
 ad-duco, -ere, dux-, duct-, *to lead to or against, to prompt, excite.*
 adeo, (adv.), *so.*
 Adherbal, -alis, *a Numidian prince, son of Micipsa, and half-brother to Jugurtha.*
 ad-hibeo, -ere, -u-, -it-, *to bring to, apply, employ.*

ADHUC.

ad-huc, (adv.), *as yet.*
 ad-itus, us, *approach.*
 ad-miror, -ari, &c., *to wonder.*
 ad-moneo, -ere, &c., *to remind.*
 ad-olescens, -ent-is, *young, a young man.*
 ad-spicio, -ere, spex-, spect-, *to look at, behold.*
 ad-ventus, -us, *arrival.*
 ad-versor, ari, &c., *to object, oppose.*
 ad-vertō, (-ere, vert-, vers-,) *to turn towards. Participle ad-versus, adversum, used as preposition.*
 ædificium, i, *building. From*
 ædifico, -are, &c., *to build.*
 Æduus, i, *an Ædúan.*
 æquor, -oris, *a level surface. the sea. From*
 æquus, a, um, *level, even, just.*
 aer, -is, *air.*
 æstas, -tat-is, *summer.*
 æstimo, (-are, &c.), *to value, esteem.*
 ætas, -tat-is, *age, life.*
 af-fero, (ferre, attul-, allat-,) *to bring to.*
 Africa, æ, *Africa. Hence.*
 Africanus, a, um, *African: a surname of Scipio on account of his exploits in Africa.*
 ager, agri, *field, land, territory.*
 Agesilaus, i, *Agesilaus, a distinguished Spartan king.*
 ag-gredior, i, gressus, *to go to, approach, attack.*
 agilis, e, *active.*
 agmen, -inis, *an army on the march.*

AGNUS.

agnus, i, *lamb*.ago, -ere, *eg^o*, act-, to *lead, drive*.agricola, æ, *farmer*.ala, æ, *wing*.alacer or cris, e, *cheerful*; whencealacritas, tatis, *eagerness, promptness*.Alexander, dri, *Alexander, king of Macedonia*.alienus, a, um, *belonging to another, foreign*.aliquando, at *some time*.aliquantus, a, um, *somewhat great, considerable*—aliquantum agri, a *considerable piece of ground*.aliquis, qua, quod or quid, *some, any, some one*, 289.alius, a, ud, (256, Rem. 1), *another (of many)*.Allobrox, brog-is, an *Allotrogian*. ala, -ere, ala: alit- & alt-, to *support*.Alpes, ium, *the Alps*.alter, a, um, (256), *another (of two), second*.altitudo, inis, *height, depth*.altus, a, um, *high, deep*.amans, ant is, *fond*.ambulo, -are, &c., to *walk*.amens, entis, *mad*.amicitia, æ, *friendship*; fromamicus, i, *friend*.a-mitto, -ere, mis-, miss-, to *love*.Amnis, is, (233, Rem. 6, Exc. 2), *river*.amo, -are, &c., to *love*.amor. oris, *love*.amplector, (-i, plexus), to *embrace*.amplus, a, um, *large ample*; amplius, *more*.

an, (interrog, disjunc, conj.), or

ancilla, æ, *maid-servant*.ancora, æ, *anchor*.

Ancus Martius, 4th king of Rome.

ANGUSTUS.

angustus, a, um, *narrow*.anima, æ, *breath, life*.animadverto, -ere, vert-, vers-, to *turn the mind to, to perceive*.animal, alis (239), *animal*.animus, i, *mind, soul*.annus, i, *year*.anser, -is, *goose*.ante, (2120, 1), *before*.antequam; (often separated, temp, conj.), *before*.antea, aforeside, *before*.antenna, æ, *sail-yard*.Antigonus, i, *Antigonus*.Antiochia, æ, *Antioch*, a city of Syria.Antiochus, i, *Antiochus*.anxius, a, um, *anxious, uneasy*.aper. pri, *wild boar*.aperio, -ire, aperu-, apert-, to *open*.Apollo, inis, *Apollo*; ab Apoliné petere, to *inquire of Apollo*.appello, -are, &c., to *call*.appetens, entis, *eager for*.ap-propinquo, -are, &c., to *approach*.aptus, a, um, *fit, suitable*.

apud, with, among; of persons, at the house of, in the works of.

aqua, æ, *water*.aquila, æ, *eagle*.ara, æ, *altar*.

Arar or Araris, is, the Saone, a river, of Gaul.

aratrum, i, *plow*.arbitror, -ari, -atus, to *think, suppose*.arbor, oris, (238, Exc. 1), *tree*.arcesso, -ere, -iv-, -it-, to *call, bring*.arcus, us, *baw*; 248, Rem. 4.argentum, i, *silver*.argutus, a, um, *sagacious*.

ARIES.

aries, -etis, *ram, battering ram.*
 Ariovistus, i, *a German king.*
 Aristides, is, *an Athenian, sur-*
named the Just from his integ-
riety.
 arma, orum, *arms.*
 armo, are, &c., *to arm.*
 aro, are, &c., *to plow.*
 ar-ripio, ere, ripu-. rept-. *to seize,*
snatch up.
 ars, art-is, *skill, art.*
 arx, arc-is, *citadel.*
 as, assis, *a pound of copper, (about*
16 & 2 third cents of our money);
in general, a thing of small value.
 ascendo, ere, cend-, cens-, *to as-*
cend.
 asinus, i, *ass.*
 asper, a, um, *rough.*
 aspicio, ere, spex-, spect-, *to be-*
hold, see.
 Athenæ, arum, *Athens.*
 Atheniensis, is, *Athenian.*
 atque or ac, (cop. conj.), *and.*
 atrox, ocis, *savage, cruel, fierce.*
 auctoritas, tatis, *authority, influ-*
ence.
 audax, acis, *bold, daring.*
 audeo, ere, ausus, *to dare.*
 audiens, (participial adj.), *hear-*
ing, attentive; audiens dicto, at-
tentive to orders, obedient.
 audio, ire, &c., *to hear.*
 augeo, ere, aux-, auct-, *to increase,*
swell.
 aureus, a, um, *golden. From*
aurum, i, gold.
 aut, or; aut—aut, *either—or.*
 auxilium, i, *aid, help.*
 avarus, a, um, *greedy, covetous.*
 avidus, a, um, *desirous, eager.*
 avis, is, *bird; 333, Rem. 6.*
 a-voco, are, &c., *to call away,*
separate.

CANTUS.

B.

Babylon, onis, *Babylon.*
 Balbus, i, *Balbus, (stammerer).*
 barbarus, a, um, *foreign, barbarous*
beatus, a, um, happy.
 Belga, æ, *a Belgian.*
 bello, are, &c., *to war.*
 bellum, i, *war.*
 beneficium, i, *benefit.*
 bene, (melius, optime), *well.*
 benignus, a, um, *kind.*
 bibo, ere, bib-, bibit-, *to drink.*
 Bibrax, actis, *a town in Gaul.*
 biduum, i, *two days' time.*
 biennium, i, *two years' time.*
 bipartito, *in two divisions.*
 blandus, a, um, *flattering.*
 Bœotii, orum, *the Bœotians.*
 bonus, a, um, *good.*
 bos, bovis, *ox or cow.*
 brevis, e, *short.*
 breviter, (adv.), *shortly.*
 Britannia, æ, *Britain.*
 Britannus, i, *a Briton.*

C.

cadaver, eris, *corpse.*
 Cadmus, i, *Cadmus.*
 cado, ere, cecid-, cas-, *to fall.*
 cæcus, a, um, *blind.*
 cædo, ere, cecid-, cæc-, *to cut, kill.*
 Cæsar, aris, *Cæsar.*
 cæspes, itis, *turf.*
 Caius, i, *Caius.*
 calamitas, tatis, *misfortune.*
 calcar, aris, *spur. From*
calx, calc-is, heel.
 campester, *level; from*
campus, i, plain.
 canis, is, *dog.*
 canto, are, &c., *to sing.*
 cantus, us, *singing.*

CAPAX.

capax, acis, *capable of receiving; roomy, large.*
 capio, ere, cep-, capt-, to take.
 capitalis, e, of the head, capital.
 captivus, i, prisoner, captive.
 caput, capitis, head.
 carcer, eris, prison.
 carmen, inis, song, poem.
 caro, carnis, flesh.
 carpo, ere, carps-, carpt-, to pluck.
 Carthago, inis, Carthage.
 Carthaginensis, is, Carthaginian.
 carus, a, um, dear.
 Cassius, i, Cassius.
 castellum, i, tower, fort.
 Casticus, i Casticus.
 castigo, are, &c., to chastise.
 castra, orum, camp.
 casus, us, a falling, chance.
 catena, æ, chain, fetter.
 Catilina, æ, Catiline.
 catinus or um, i, bowl. dish.
 Cato, onis, Cato.
 causa, æ, reason, cause; abl., for the sake of, always placed after the limiting word.
 caveo, ere, cav-, caut-, to beware.
 cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to yield.
 celer, or is, e, swift. Hence
 celeritas, tatis, swiftness.
 celo, are, &c., to conceal.
 censeo, ere, censu-, cens-, to be of opinion, to think.
 censor, oris, censor, a Roman magistrate.
 centum, hundred; 2 63.
 centurio, onis, centurion, captain of a hundred men.
 certamen, inis, contest, strife.
 cervus, i, stag.
 cetera, um (nom. sing. m. not used) the rest (of a thing.)
 charta, æ, paper.
 cibus, i, food.

COLLOQUOR.

Cicero, onis, Cicero.
 cingo, ere, cinx-, cinct-, to gird.
 cinis, eris, ashes.
 circiter, about.
 circum, around.
 circum-do, are, ded-, dat-, to put around, to surround.
 circumfundo, ere, fud-, fus-, to pour around, to surround.
 circum-venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to surround.
 cis, eitra, on this side of.
 civilis, of citizens, civil.
 civis, is, citizen.
 civitas, tatis, state.
 clamo, are, &c., to shout.
 clamor, oris, shouting.
 clarus, a, um, famous, renowned.
 classis, is, fleet.
 Claudius, i, Claudius.
 Clodius, i, Clodius.
 claudo, ere, claus-, claus-, to shut.
 clavis, is, key.
 clementia, æ, mildness.
 cliens, entis, client, dependant.
 cælum, i, heaven.
 cæno, are, &c., to dine, sup.
 cœpi, (2 113, Rem. 1,) I begin.
 cogito, are, &c., to think, reflect.
 cognomen, inis, surname.
 cognosce, ere, nov-, cognit-, to find out, learn.
 cogo, ere, coeg-, coact-, to collect, bring together, compel.
 cohors, hortis, cohort.
 cohortor, -ari, -atus, to encourage.
 collega, æ, colleague.
 colligo, ere, leg-, lect-, to assemble, gather, collect.
 collis, is, hill.
 colloco, are, &c., to put, station, place, set up.
 colloquium, conversation, conference.
 colloquor, locutus, to converse.

COLO.

colo, ere, colu-, cult-, to cultivate;
 of the gods, to worship.
 color, oris, color.
 columba, æ, dove.
 com-edo, onis, glutton.
 com-es, itis, companion.
 commemoro, are, &c., to relate.
 com-meo, are, to come and go.
 com-misum, i, (part of com-mitto,) *a thing done, crime.*
 com-mitto, to bring or send together,
 to commence (battle.)
 Commius, i, Commius.
 commodum, i, convenience.
 com-moveo, ere, mov-, mot-, to
 move, disturb, disquiet.
 com-munis, e, common.
 comparo, are, &c., to bring together,
 acquire.
 com-pello, ere, pul-, puls-, to drive
 together.
 compello, are, to call, address.
 com-perio, ire, per-, pert-, to find
 out, ascertain.
 com-plector, i, plexus, to embrace.
 com-pleo, ere, plev-, plet-, to fill.
 com-plures, ium, (§72, 5,) a great
 many.
 com-pos, otis, having control of.
 conatus, us, attempt.
 con cavus, a, um, hollow; manus
 concava, the hollow of the hand.
 con-cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to yield.
 con-cilium, i, council.
 con-cito, are, &c., to rouse, excite,
 urge on, raise.
 con-cordia, æ, agreement, concord.
 con-curro, ere, curr-, curs-, to run
 together.
 con-cursus, us, running together.
 con-cutio, ere, cuss-, cuss-, to shake
 violently.
 con-demuo, are, &c., to condemn.

CONSUL.

con-do, ere, did-, dit-, to found,
 build.
 con-duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to bring
 or lead together.
 con-ficio, ere, fec-, fect-, to finish.
 con-fido, ere, fisis, to trust.
 con-firmo, are, &c., to assert, estab-
 lish.
 con-fiteor, eri, fessus, to confess.
 con-gredior, i, gressus, to meet
 with; in a friendly or hostile
 sense.
 con-jicio, ere, jec-, ject-, to throw,
 hurl.
 con-junctio, onis, union, friendship,
 intimacy.
 con-jungo, ere, junx-, junct-, to
 unite.
 con-juro, are, &c., to swear together,
 conspire.
 con-juratio, onis, conspiracy.
 con-jux, jug is, husband or wife.
 con-or, -ari, -atus, to attempt.
 conscius, a, um, conscious.
 con-scribo, to levy, enroll.
 con-sector, -ari, -atus, to pursue
 eagerly and overtake.
 con-sequer, i, secutus, to pursue,
 attain.
 con-servo, are, &c., to preserve,
 save.
 con-sido, ere, sed, sess-, to encamp,
 settle.
 con-silium, i, counsel, advice.
 con-spergo, ere, spers-, spers-, to
 sprinkle.
 con-stanter, firmly, persistently.
 con-stat, constitit, it is evident.
 con-stituo, ere, stitu-, stitut-, to
 determine, put, fix.
 con-suesco, ere, suæv-, suet-, to ac-
 custom.
 con-suetudo, inis, custom.
 consul, is, consul.

CONSULO.

consulo, ere, sulu-, sult, to take
counsel, reflect, consult
 consultum, i, (part.) a thing re-
flected on; abl. on purpose.
 con sumo, ere, sumpt-, sumpt-, to
consume.
 con temno, ere, tempt-, tempt-, to
despise.
 con tendo, ere, tend-, tent-, to
strive, contend, hasten.
 con tinens, entis, (part. pres.),
holding together continent.
 con tinenter, (adv.), *continually.*
 con tineo, ere, tinu-, tent-, to hold
on all sides, keep in.
 contra, against.
 con traho, ere, trax-, tract-, to
draw together.
 con venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to come
together, assemble.
 copia, æ, abundance; pl. forces.
 coquo, ere, cox-, coct-, to cook.
 Corinthus, i, Corinth.
 corniger, a, um, horned.
 cornu, us, horn.
 corona, æ, crown.
 corpus, oris, body.
 cor rigo, ere, rex-, rect-, to set
straight, correct.
 cor rumpo, ere, rup-, rupt-, to de-
stroy, corrupt.
 eras, (adv.), to-morrow.
 creber, a, um, frequent.
 crebro, (adv.), frequently.
 credo, ere, did-, dit-, to believe.
 cremo, are, &c., to burn.
 creo, are, &c., to create, make.
 cresco, ere, crev-, cret-, to grow.
 crinis, is, hair.
 cruciatus, us, torture.
 crudelis, e, cruel.
 cubiculum, i, bedchamber.
 cubile, is, couch.
 cuius, a, um, whose?

DEFLUO.

culpa, æ, fault.
 culter, i, knife.
 cum, with.
 cupiditas, tatis, longiny, lust.
 cupidus, a, um, desirous, eager.
 cupio, ere, iv-, it-, to desire.
 cur, why?
 cura, æ, care.
 curo, are, &c., to care for, attend to.
 curro, ere, cucurr-, curs-, to run.
 currus, us, chariot.
 cursus, us, running, course.
 custos, odis, keeper, guardian, sen-
 tinel.

D.

damno, are, &c., to condemn.
 Davus, i, Davus.
 debeo, ere, &c., to owe, ought.
 de cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to de-
 part.
 decem, ten; § 63.
 de clivis, e, sloping downward.
 decoro, are, &c., to adorn.
 decorus, a, um, becoming.
 decus, oris, honor, dignity.
 de decus, oris, disgrace.
 de ditio, onis, surrender.
 de do, ere, dedid-, dedit-, to sur-
 render.
 de fendo, ere, fend-, fens-, to de-
 fend.
 de fensio, are, &c., to defend dili-
 gently.
 de fero, ferre, tul-, lat-, to bring
 or carry (from one place or per-
 son to another.)
 de fervesco, ere, ferv- & ferbu-,
 to boil down, subside.
 defessus, a, um, weary.
 de-flagro, are, &c., to burn down.
 de fluo, ere, flux-, flux-, to flow
 down or away.

DEJICIO.

de jicio, ere, jec-, ject-, to *throw down*.

delecto, are, &c., to *delight*.

deleo, ere, ev-, et-, to *destroy*.

de libero, are, &c., to *deliberate*.

de ligo, ere, leg-, lect-, to *choose*.

de lictum, i, *fault, crime*.

Dēlphi, orum, *Delphi*, a town of Greece.

dementia, ae, *madness*.

de monstro, are, &c., to *show*.

deni, *ten at a time*; 263.

dens, dentis, *tooth*.

densus, a, um, *thick, dense*.

denuntio. are, &c., to *announce, threaten*.

deorsum, (adv.) *down-hill*.

de pono, ere, posu-, it-, to *lay aside*.

de silio, ire, silu-, sult-, to *leap down*.

de sisto, ere, stit-, stit-, to *cease*.

de spero, are, &c., to *despair*.

destino, are, &c., to *fasten*.

de stituo, ere, stitu-, stitut-, to *desert*.

de stringo, ere, striax-, strict-, to *draw*.

de super, (adv.) *from above*.

de terreo, ere, &c., to *scare off, deter*.

deus, i, (224, Rem. 2,) a *god*.

de voro, are, &c., to *gulp down*.

dexter, tera, terum, or tra, trum, *on the right, right*.

Diana, ae, *Diana*,

dico, are, &c., to *dedicate*.

dico, ere, dix-, dict-, to *say*.

dictator, oris, *dictator*.

dies, ei, *day*.

dis fero, ferre, dis-tul-, di-lat-, to *put off, defer*.

dis ficilis, e, *difficult*.

dis fido, ere, fisus, to *distrust*.

DUCENTI.

dignus, a, um, *worthy*.

di labor, i, lapsus, to *fall to pieces*.

di ligo, ere, lex-, lect-, to *love*.

di midium, i, *half*.

di mitto, ere, mis-, miss-, to *send out*.

Dionysius, i, *Dionysius*.

di ripio, ere, ripu-, rept-, to *tear asunder, plunder, pillage*.

dis cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to *depart*.

discipulus, i, *pupil, learner*.

disco, ere, didic-, to *learn*.

dis cordia, ae, *disagreement*.

dis pono, ere, posu-, posit-, to *arrange*.

dis puto, are, &c., to *discuss, dispute*.

dis sentio, ire, sens-, sens-, to *differ in opinion, dissent*.

dis similis, e, *unlike*.

diu, utius, utissime, [adv.] *long*.

dives, itis, *rich*.

divido, ere, vis-, vis-, to *divide*.

divinus, a, um, *divine*.

Divitiacus, i, *an Aeduan chief*.

divitiæ, arum, *riches*.

do, dare, ded-, dat-, to *give*.

doceo, ere, docu-, doct-, to *teach*.

doctus, a, um, *learned*.

doleo, ere, &c., to *grieve*.

dolor, oris, *pain, grief*.

domina, ae, *mistress*.

dominus, i, *master*.

domus, (248, Rem. 5,) *house*.

donec, until; temp. conj.

donum, i, *gift*.

dormio, ire, &c., to *sleep*.

dormito, are, &c., to *fall asleep*.

Druides, um, *the Druids*.

dubitatio, onis, *doubt*.

dubito, are, &c., to *doubt*.

dubius, a, um, *doubtful*.

ducenti, ae, a, (263,) *two hundred*.

DUCO.

duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to *lead*,
deem, consider, regard.
 dulcis, e, *sweet.*
 dum, *while, as long as, until.*
 Dumnorix, igis, *brother of Divitia-*
cus.
 duo, æ, o, *two.*
 duplex, icis, *double.*
 duplico, are, &c., to *double.*
 durus, a, um, *hard.*

E.

E or ex, *out of, from, in consequence*
of, after.

e dico, ere, dix-, dict-, to *issue an*
edict.

edo, ere, ed-, es-, (§ 114,) to *eat.*

e doceo, ere, docu-, doct-, to *teach*
thoroughly, educate.

e duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to *lead*
out.

effigies, ei, *image, likeness.*

egens, entis, *needy.*

egeo, ere, egu-, to *need.*

egestas, tatis, *poverty.*

ego, (§ 78), *I.*

egregius, a, um, *remarkable.*

e jicio, ere, jec-, ject-, to *cast out.*

elegans, antis, *luxurious, elegant.*

eloquens, entis, *eloquent.*

eloquentia, æ, *eloquence.*

emo, ere, em-, empt-, to *buy.*

emolumentum, i, *advantage.*

Epaminondas, æ, (App. 1), *the*
great Theban general.

Ephesus, i, *a city of Asia Minor.*

Ephesius, a, um, *Ephesian.*

epistola, æ, *letter, epistle.*

eques, itis, *horseman.*

equester, or tris, e, *of a horse.*

equito, are, &c., to *be a horseman,*
to ride on horseback.

equitatus, us, *cavalry.*

FATEOR.

equus, i, *horse.*

e ripio, ere, ripu-, rept-, to *rescue.*

erro, are, &c., to *err.*

error, oris, *error.*

esuriens, entis, *hungry.*

et, *and.*

etiam, *also.*

ex cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to *retire.*

exemplum, i, *example.*

ex eo, ire, exi-, exit-, to *go out.*

exerceo, ere, &c., to *exercise.*

exercitus, us, *army.*

exiguus, a, um, *slight, small.*

existimo, are, &c., to *judge, think.*

exitium, i, *destruction.*

ex pello, ere, pul-, puls-, to *drive*
out.

ex ploro, are, &c., to *search out.*

ex plorator, oris, *scout.*

ex pono, ere, posu-, posit-, to *ex-*
plain.

ex pugno, are, &c., to *storm.*

ex sisto, ere, stit-, stit-, to *stand*
out.

ex specto, are, &c., to *await, look*
for.

ex uro, ere, uss-, ust-, to *burn up.*

F.

facies, ei, *form, face.*

facile, *easily; from*

facilis, e, *easy.*

facinus, oris, *deed, crime; from*

facio, ere, fec-, fact-, to *do, make,*
esteem, value.

facultas, tatis, *means, power.*

fallo, ere, fefell-, fals-, to *deceive.*

fama, æ, *fame, reputation.*

fames, is, *hunger, famine.*

familia, æ, *family.*

familiaris e, *pertaining to the fam-*
ily; res fam., property.

fateor, eri, fassus, to *confess.*

FATIGO.

fatigo, are, &c., to weary.
 faveo, ere, fav-, faut-, to favor.
 febris, is, fever.
 femina, æ, woman.
 femur, oris & inis, thigh.
 ferax, acis, fertile.
 fere, [adv.] almost.
 fero, ferre, tuli, latum, to bear,
 carry.

ferox, ocis, fierce
 ferreus, a, um, made of iron.
 ferrum, i, iron.
 ferus, a, um, wild, savage.
 fessus, a, um, wearied.
 festino, are, &c., to hasten.
 fides, ei, faith, promise.
 fides, ium, strings, a lute, lyre.
 fidus, a, um, faithful.
 figura, æ, figure, shape.
 filia, æ, daughter.
 filius, i, son.
 fingo, ere, finx-, fiet-, to make,
 feign.

finis, is, end, limit, boundary.
 finitimus, a, um, neighboring.
 firmus, a, um, strong, firm.
 flagito, are, &c., to demand, [earnestly.]

flatus, us, blast.
 flecto, ere, flex-, flex-, to bend.
 fleo, flere, flev-, flet-, to weep.
 fletus, us, weeping.
 floccus, a lock of wool, [anything
 of small value.]

flos, floris, flower.
 fluctus, us, wave.
 flumen, inis, river.
 fluo, ere, flux-, flux-, to flow.
 foedus, eris, league, treaty.
 folium, i, leaf.
 fons, fontis, fountain.
 forma, æ, form, shape.
 formido, are, &c., to dread.
 fortis, e, brave.

GREX.

fortitudo, inis, fortitude, firmness.
 fortuna, æ, fortune.
 fossa, æ, ditch.
 frater, tris, brother.
 fratricida, æ, fratricide.
 fraus, fraudis, deceit.
 frenum, i, pl. i & a, bit, bridle.
 fretus, a, um, trusting.
 frons, frontis, forehead.
 fructus, us, fruit.
 frumentor, ari, &c., to forage.
 frumentum, i, corn, grain.
 fruor, i, fructus, fruitus, to enjoy.
 frustra, (adv.), in vain.
 fuga, æ, flight.
 fugio, ere, fug-, fugit-, to flee.
 fugo, are, &c., to put to flight,
 rout.
 fulguratio, onis, lightning.
 fur, furis, thief.

G.

Gallia, æ, Gaul.
 Gallus, i, a Gaul.
 gallina, æ, hen.
 gaudeo, ere, gavisus, to rejoice.
 gener, i, son-in-law.
 gens, gentis, race, family.
 genus, eris, kind, race.
 Germania, æ, Germany.
 Germanus, i, a German.
 gero, ere, gess-, gest-, to wage,
 carry.
 gladius, i, sword.
 Glaucus, i, Glaucus.
 gloria, æ, glory.
 Græcia, æ, Greece.
 Græcus, i, a Greek.
 grammatica, æ, grammar.
 gratus, a, um, acceptable, pleasant.
 gravis, e, heavy, severe.
 graviter, heavily, severely.
 gregatim, in flocks, herds.
 grex, gregis, flock, herd.

H.

habeo, ere, &c., to have, hold.
 habito, to have frequently, dwell.
 hædus, i, kid.
 hæreo, ere, hæs, hæs, to stick.
 Hannibal, alis, Hannibal.
 Harudes, um, Harudians.
 hasta, æ, spear.
 haud, not.
 Helvetius, i, a Helvetian.
 Hercules, is, Hercules.
 Herminius, i, Herminius.
 herus, i, master.
 Hibernia, æ, Ireland.
 hiberna, (castra), winter-quarters.
 hic, hæc, hoc, this.
 hiemo, are, &c., to winter.
 hiems, is, winter.
 hodie, to-day.
 Homerus, i, Homer.
 homo, inis, man.
 honeste, honorably.
 honestus, honorable.
 honor, oris, honor.
 hora, æ, hour.
 horreum, i, granary.
 hortor, ari, &c., to encourage.
 hortus, i, garden.
 hospes, itis, guest.
 hostis, is, enemy.
 humanus, a, um, human.
 humanitas, tatis, refinement.
 humerus, i, shoulder.
 humilis, e, low.
 humus, i, ground.

I.

ibi, there.
 idem, eadem, idem, same.
 idoneus, a, um, fit, suitable.
 ignarus, a, um, ignorant.
 ignis, is, fire.
 ignosco, ere, nov-, not-, to forgive.

INCOLUMIS.

ille, a, ud, that, the former, he.
 illicio, ere, lex-, lect-, to decoy.
 imber, bris, rain, shower.
 imitor, ari, &c., to imitate.
 immanis, e, immense, huge.
 immemor, oris, unmindful.
 immortalis, is, e, immortal.
 immortalitas, tatis, immortality.
 impatiens, entis, not able or willing to bear, impatient.
 impedimentum, i, hindrance.
 impedio, ire, &c., to hinder.
 impello ere, pul-, puls-, to drive on.
 imperator, oris, general, emperor.
 impere, are, &c., to order.
 imperitus, a, um, ignorant, unskilled.
 imperium, i, command, government.
 impetro, are, &c., to obtain.
 impetus, us, attack.
 impietas, tatis, un dutifulness.
 impiger, a, um, active.
 impleo, ere, plev-, plet-, to fill.
 impono, ere, posu-, posit-, to put upon.
 importo, are, &c., to bring in, import.
 impotens, entis, unable to restrain.
 improbus, a, um, wicked.
 imprudens, entis, imprudent.
 inus, a, um, see inferus.
 in, (with acc.), into, upon; (with abl.), in, among.
 incendium, a burning, conflagration.
 incendo, ere, cend-, cens-, to set on fire; to burn up.
 incertus, a, um, uncertain.
 incido, ere, incid-, cas-, to happen.
 incito, are, &c., to set in motion.
 arouse, excite.
 incola, æ, inhabitant.
 incolo, ere, colu-, cult-, to inhabit, dwell, live.
 incolumis, e, unhurt, safe.

INCONDITUS.

inconditus, a, um, *rude; uncouth.*
 incredibilis, e, *incredible.*
 incuso, are, &c., to *blame, censure,*
find fault with, accuse.
 indignus, a, um, *unworthy.*
 in-duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to *lead*
on.
 indulgeo, ere, duls-, dult-, to *in-*
dulge.
 infans, antis, *infant.*
 infero, ferre, intul-, illat-, to
bring upon, wage upon, inflict.
 infinitus, a, um, *boundless.*
 in-fluo, ere, flux-, flux-, to *flow*
into.
 infreno, are, &c., to *bridle.*
 ingenium, i, *intellect, natural dis-*
position.
 ingens, entis, *huge.*
 ingratus, a, um, *disagreeable, un-*
grateful.
 inimicus, i, *enemy.*
 inimicitia, æ, *enmity.*
 iniquus, a, um, *unjust.*
 initium, i, *beginning.*
 injuria, æ, *injury.*
 in nascor, i, natus, to *spring up.*
 innocens, entis, *innocent.*
 innocentia, æ, *innocence, purity.*
 inopia, æ, *want, scarcity.*
 inquam, (q 113,) *I say, (used only*
after one or more words of a quo-
tation.)
 insidie, arum, *ambush, snares.*
 in silio, ire, sili- & silu-, to *leap*
upon.
 instigo, are, &c., to *stir up.*
 in stituo, ere, stitu-, stitut-, to *or-*
range, instruct.
 In struo, ere, strux-, struct, to *set*
in order, draw up, build.
 in suetus, a, um, *unaccustomed.*
 insula, æ, *island.*
 integer, gra, grum, *sound, unhurt.*

JACTO.

intelligo, ere, lex-, lect-, to *under-*
stand.
 inter, *between, among, in the midst*
of; inter se, with or against one
another. inter spoliandum, in the
act of despoiling.
 inter dico, ere, dix-, dict-, to *for-*
bid.
 interdum, *sometimes.*
 intereo, ire, interi-, interit-, to *die,*
perish,
 interficio, ere, fec-, fect-, to *kill.*
 interus, a, um, *inward.*
 intersum, esse, fui, to *be of impor-*
tance, to be between.
 nihil interest, *it makes no difference.*
 introduco, ere, dux-, duct-, to *in-*
troduce.
 invado, ere, vas, vas-, to *attack.*
invade.
 in venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to *come*
upon, find, invent.
 in ventor, oris, *inventor.*
 in vestigo, are, &c., to *search out.*
 in victus, a, um, *invincible.*
 invidia, æ, *envy.*
 invito, are, to *invite.*
 invitus, a, um, *unwilling.*
 ipse, a, um, *self.*
 ira, æ, *anger.*
 iracundia, æ, *hasty temper.*
 irascor, i, to *be angry.*
 iratus, a, um, *angry.*
 iste, a, ud, *that (of yours.)*
 ita, *thus, so.*
 Italia, æ, *Italy.*
 item, *likewise.*
 iter, itineris, *journey, march, way.*

J.

jacio, ere, jec-, jact-, to *throw.*
 jacto, are, &c., to *throw about, dis-*
cuss.

JAM.

jam, now, already.
 jecur, (§ 45,) the liver.
 jubar, aris, sunshine.
 jubeo, ere, juss-, juss-, to order.
 jucundus, a, um, delightful.
 judex, icis, judge.
 jugum, i, a yoke. Two spears set upright with a third laid across the top were called jugum.
 Jugurtha, æ, king of Numidia.
 jumentum, i, beast of burden, work-horse or ox.
 Jupiter, Jovis, Jupiter.
 Jura, æ, Jura, a mountain.
 jus, juris, law, right; (usually unwritten law, as opposed to *lex*, statute law).
 jus jurandum, (§ 45), oath.
 justus, a, um, just.
 juvenis, is, young man.
 juvenus, tatis, youth.
 juvat, abat, &c., it pleases.

L.

Labienus, i, a lieutenant of Cæsar.
 labor, oris, labor.
 lac, lactis, milk.
 laccio, ere, iv-, it-, to provoke.
 injuria lacessere, to injure.
 lacrima, æ, tear.
 lacus, us, lake.
 laetus, joyful.
 lanio, are, &c., to tear to pieces.
 lapis, idis, stone.
 largior, iri, itus, to bribe.
 lateo, ere, latu-, to lie hid.
 latitudo, inis, breadth.
 latro, onis, robber.
 latus, a, um, wide, broad.
 latus, eris, side, flank.
 laudo, are, to praise.
 laus, laudis, praise, glory.

MAGNANIMUS.

lavo, are, lav-, lots, lant-, lavat-, to bathe.
 legatio, onis, embassy.
 legatus, i, ambassador, lieutenant.
 legio, onis, legion.
 lego, ere, leg-, lect-, to read.
 leo, onis, lion.
 lepus, oris, hare.
 levis, e, light, slight.
 levo, are, to lighten, relieve.
 liber, a, um, free.
 liber, bri, book.
 liberi, orum, children.
 libero, are, &c., to free.
 libertas, tatis, liberty.
 licet, licuit, it is allowed, permitted, right, lawful.
 lignum, i, wood.
 lingua, æ, tongue, language.
 linter, tris, boat.
 Liscus, i, an Ædian chief.
 litera, æ, a letter (of the alphabet).
 litus, oris, shore.
 locus, i, pl i & a, place.
 locuples, etis, rich.
 longitudo, inis, length.
 longus, a, um, long.
 loquor, i, locutus, to speak.
 ludus, i, game, play.
 lumen, inis, light.
 luna, æ, moon.
 lupus, i, wolf.
 lux, lucis, light.

M.

Macedonia, æ, Macedonia.
 macto, are, &c., to sacrifice.
 mæror, oris, grief. præ mærore, for grief, (a preventing cause.)
 magis, maxime, more, most.
 magister, i, master (of a school, &c.)
 magnanimus, a, um, great-souled, magnanimous.

MAGNITUDO.

magnitudo, inis, *greatness*.
 magnus, a, um, (major, maximus,) *great*.
 maledico, ere, dix-, dict-, to be *abusive, revile, curse*.
 malo, malle, malui, to prefer.
 malum, i, *apple*.
 malus, i, *mast of a ship*.
 malus, a, um, (pejor, pessimus,) *bad, wicked, evil*.
 mandatum, i, *a thing entrusted, command*.
 mando, are, &c., to *entrust*.
 maneo, ere, mans-, mans-, to *remain*.
 manus, us, *hand*.
 Marcus, i, *Mark*.
 mare, is, *sea*.
 maritimus, *bordering on the sea*.
 Marius, i, *Marius*.
 marmor, oris, *marble*.
 mater, tris, *mother*.
 maturo, are, &c., to *hasten*.
 maturus, a, um, *ripe*.
 mature, (adv.) *quickly; soon*.
 medicamentum, i, *drug, dose*.
 medicina, ae, *medicine*.
 medicus, i, *physician*.
 medius, a, um, *middle*.
 melior, us, *better*.
 meminī, (§113), *I remember*.
 memor, oris, *mindful*.
 memoria, ae, *memory, recollection*.
 mendacium, i, *falsehood, lie*.
 mendax, acis, *false, lying*.
 mens, mentis, *mind*.
 mensa, ae, *table*.
 mensis, is, *month*.
 mentior, iri, itus, to *lie*.
 mercator, oris, *merchant*.
 Mercurius, i, *Mercury*.
 meritus, a, um, *deserving*.
 merges, itis, *sheaf*.
 meridies, ei, *mid-day*.

MULTITUDO.

Messala, ae, *Messala*.
 Metior, iri, mensus, to *measure*.
 meto, ere, messu-, mess-, to *reap*.
 metuo, ere, metu-, rarely metut-, to *fear, be apprehensive*.
 metus, us, *apprehension, fear*.
 meus, a, um, *my, mine*.
 miles, itis, *soldier*.
 militaris, e, *military*.
 mille, (§64, 6,) *thousand*.
 minor, ari, atus, to *threaten*.
 minuo, ere, minu-, minut-, to *make less, weaken*.
 miror, ari, atus, to *wonder*.
 mirus, a, um, *wonderful*.
 miser, a, um, *wretched*.
 misereo, ere, u-, to *pity*. (generally used impersonally; § 135, c.)
 mitto, ere, mis-, miss-, to *send*.
 modus, i, *manner, measure, limit; praeter modum, beyond measure, unduly*.
 moenia, ium, &c., *walls*.
 mollis, e, *soft*.
 moneo, ere, &c., to *advise, remind*.
 monile, is, *necklace*.
 mons, mont-is, *mountain*.
 monstro, are, &c., to *show*.
 mordeo, ere, momord-, mors-, to *champ, bite*.
 morior, i, & iri, mortuus, moriturus, to *die*.
 mortuus, a, um, *dead*.
 moror, ari, atus, to *delay*.
 mors, mortis, *death*.
 morsus, us, *biting*.
 mortalis, e, *mortal*.
 mos, moris, *manner, custom*.
 motus, us, *moving, insurrection*.
 moveo, ere, mov-, mot-, to *move*.
 mulier, eris, *woman*.
 multus, (plus, plurimus,) *much, many*.
 multitudo, inis, *multitude*.

MUNDUS.

mundus, *i, world.*
munio, *ire, &c., to fortify.*
murus, *i, wall.*
mus, *muris, mouse.*
musa, *ae, muse.*
mutuo, *are, &c., to change.*

N.

nactus, *participle from nanciscor.*
nam, *for, (conj.)*
namque, *for, indeed.*
nanciscor, *i, nactus, to get.*
narro, *are, &c., to tell, relate.*
nascor, *i, natus, to be born.*
natura, *ae, nature.*
natus, *us, birth.*
nauta, *ae, sailor.*
navale, *is, dock-yard.*
navigo, *are, &c., to sail.*
navis, *is, ship.*
ne, *(final conj.) that, not, lest.*
nec, *(conj.) neither, nor and not.*
necessarius, *a, um, critical, necessary.*
neco, *are, &c., to murder, kill.*
negligens, *entis, negligent; part. adj.*
negligo, *ere, lex-, lect-, to neglect.*
nego, *are, &c., to deny.*
negotium, *i, business.*
nemo, *inis, no man, no one.*
nemus, *oris, grove.*
nepos, *otis, grandson.*
Neptunus, *i, Neptune, God of the sea.*
neque, *and not, neither, nor.*
nescio, *ire, &c., not to know.*
neuter, *a, um, neither (of two.)*
neve, *neu, and, not, nor; (neg fin. conj.)*
nidifico, *are, &c., to build a nest.*
nidus, *i, nest.*
niger, *a, um, black.*

OBSIDEO.

nihil, *(indecl.), or nihilum, i, nothing.*
nimius, *a, um, too much, excessive.*
nisi, *(cond. conj.), unless, if not.*
nobilis, *e, noble.*
nobilitas, *atis, nobility.*
noceo, *ere, &c., to hurt, harm.*
nolo, *nolle, nolui, to be unwilling.*
nomen, *inis, name.*
non, *not.*
nonus, *a, um, (§ 63), ninth.*
non ne, *(in direct questions, § 81, 4); in indirect questions, if not, whether not.*
nosco, *ere, nov-, not-, to know.*
noster, *a, um, our, ours.*
novem, *(§ 63), nine.*
novus, *a, um, new, late.*
nox, *noctis, night.*
noxius, *hurtful.*
nubes, *is, cloud.*
nudo, *are, &c., to strip.*
nudus, *a, um, naked.*
nullus, *a, um, (§ 56), none, not any.*
num, *§ 81, 3.*
Numa, *ae; Numa.*
Numantinus, *a, um, Numantian.*
numerus, *i, number.*
Numida, *ae, a Numidian.*
Numidia, *ae, Numidia.*
numquis, *§ 89.*
nunc, *now.*
nuncio, *are, to announce.*
nuncius, *i, messenger.*
nunquam or numquam, *never.*

O.

ob, *for, on account of.*
obliscor, *oblitus, to forget.*
obscurus, *are, &c., to obscure.*
obsecro, *are, &c., to beseech.*
obses, *idis, hostage.*
obsideo, *ere, sed-, sess-, to besiege.*

OBSIDIO.

obsidio, onis, siege.
 ob sto, are, stit-, stat-, to stand
 before, hinder, prevent.
 ob trunco, are, to slay.
 occasus, us, going down, setting.
 oc cido, (ob—caedo), cid-, cis-, to
 cut down, kill.
 oc cido, (ob—cado), ere, cid-, cas-,
 to fall, set.
 oc cultus, a, um, hidden,
 occupo, are, to seize, take posses-
 sion of.
 oceanus, i, ocean.
 octavus, a, um, (§ 63), eighth.
 octingenti, ae, a, (§ 63), eight
 hundred.
 octo, (§ 63), eight.
 oculus, i, eye.
 odi, (§ 113, *Rem.* 1), I hate.
 odium, i, hatred.
 officium, i, duty, service.
 olim, (adv.), formerly, anciently,
 (of the future) some time or
 other.
 omnino, altogether, wholly, at all.
 omnis, e, all, every.
 onero, are, to load, lade.
 onus, eris, burden.
 opera, ae, pains, work, labor.
 opinio, onis, opinion, belief.
 opinor, ari, &c., to be of opinion.
 oportet, uit, it is necessary, pro-
 per, it behooves.
 oppidanus, a, um, of a town.
 oppidum, i, town.
 opportunitas, atis, fitness, suita-
 bleness.
 opportunus, a, um, fit, favorable.
 opprimo, ere, press-, press-, to
 press down, put down, suppress,
 overcome, crush, oppress.
 oppugno, are, &c., to assault.
 optimus, a, um, (bonus), best.

PARS.

opulens or opulentus, a, um, pow-
 erful.
 opus, eris, work.
 opus, (indecl.) need, necessity;
 opus est, it is necessary, there
 is need.
 oraculum, i, oracle.
 oratio, onis, speech, oration.
 orator, oris, orator.
 orbis, is, circle; orbis terrarum,
 the world.
 ordo, inis, rank, order.
 Orgetorix, igis, a Helvetian chief.
 origo, inis, origin.
 orior, ari, ortus, oriturus, to rise.
 os, oris, mouth, face.
 os, ossis, bone.
 otium, i, leisure, ease.
 ovis, is, sheep.
 ovum, i, egg.

P.

paco, are, &c., to subdue
 pagus, i, canton.
 palus, udis, marsh, bog.
 paluster, tris, tre, marshy.
 panis, is, bread.
 par, paris, equal.
 paratus. a, um, ready, prepared.
 parco, ere, peperc- pars-, & parcit-
 & pars-, to spare.
 parens, entis, parent.
 pareo, ere, &c. to obey, be obedi-
 ent.
 paries, etis, wall (of a house).
 pario, ere, peper-, part-, to beget,
 bring forth.
 Parmenio, onis, Parmenio.
 paro, are, &c., to prepare.
 parricida, ae, killer of a father,
 parricide.
 pars, partis, part; una ex parte,
 on one side.

PARTIM.

partim, (acc. of pars), partly.
 parum, minus, minime, little.
 parvus, a, um, small, little.
 passus, us, pace; mille passus, a mile.
 pastor, oris, shepherd.
 patefacio, fec-, fact-, to lay open.
 pateo, ere, patu-, to lie open.
 pater, patris, father.
 patienter, patiently.
 patiens, entis, capable of enduring, patient.
 patientia, ae, patience.
 patina, ae, dish.
 patior, i, passus, to suffer, endure, permit.
 patria, ae, country.
 pauci, ae, a, few.
 paulatim, by degrees.
 paulus, a, um, little; usually in the acc. and abl. neuter.
 pauper, is, poor.
 paupertas, atis, poverty.
 pavor, oris, trembling.
 pax, pacis, peace.
 peccatum, i, fault, sin.
 pecco, are, &c., to do wrong, sin.
 pectus, oris, breast.
 pecunia, ae, sum of money.
 pecus, oris, cattle.
 pedes, itis, footman.
 pedester, tris, tre, on foot.
 pejor, us, (malus,) worse.
 pellis, is, skin, hide.
 pello, ere, pepul-, puls-, to beat, drive, rout.
 pendo, ere, pepend-, pens-, to cause to hang, weigh, pay.
 penes, in the power of.
 penus, us and i, storehouse.
 per, through.
 percutio, ere, cuss-, cuss-, to strike through, kill.

PISCIS.

perdo, ere, did-, dit-, to destroy, lose.
 pes duco, ere, to lead through, extend.
 per eo, ire, ii, itum, to perish.
 per facilis, very easy.
 per fringo, ere, freg-, fract-, to break through.
 perfuga, ae, deserter.
 pergo, ere, perrex-, rect-, to proceed.
 periculosus, a, um, dangerous.
 periculum, i, trial, danger.
 peritus, skilled.
 per moveo, ere, mov-, mot-, to move thoroughly, alarm.
 pernicies, ei, destruction.
 perpetuus, a, um, unending.
 Persa, ae, Persian.
 per sequor, i, secutus, to follow perseveringly, overtake.
 per suado, ere, suas-, suas-, to persuade.
 per terreo, ere, &c., to frighten thoroughly, terrify.
 per timeo, ere, tinu-, tent-, to reach, extend, pertain, belong.
 per turbo, are, &c., to confound.
 per venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to come through, arrive.
 pes, pedis, foot.
 pessimus, a, um, (malus,) worst.
 peto, ere, -iv-, -it-, to seek, ask.
 phalanx, gis, phalanx.
 Philippus, i, Philip.
 philosophus, i, philosopher.
 pietas, atis, dutifulness.
 piget, piguit and pigitum est, it disgusts, irks, troubles: piget me tui, I am disgusted with you.
 piger, a, nm, slow, lazy.
 pilum, i, javelin.
 pirata, ae, pirate.
 piscis, is, fish.

PISO.

Piso, onis, Piso.

pius, a, um, dutiful, pious.

placeo, ere, &c., to please.

Plato, onis, a Grecian philosopher.

plebes, ei and is, and plebs, plebis, common people.

plenus, a, um, full.

pluma, ae, feather.

poculum, i, drinking cup.

poema, atis, poem.

Poeni, Carthaginians.

pœnitēt, uit, it repents: p. me peccati, I repent of my sin.

polliceor, eri, &c., to promise.

pollicitatio, onis, promise.

Pompeius, i, Pompey.

pomum, i, fruit.

pondus, onis, weight.

pono, ere, posu-, posit-, to put, place.

pons, pontis, bridge.

populus, eri, &c., to lay waste.

populus, i, people.

porta, ae, gate of a city.

porto, are, &c., to carry.

portus, us, harbor.

posco, ere, poposc-, to demand.

possum, posse, potui, to be able.

post, after, behind.

postea, afterwards.

posterus, posterior, postremus or postumus, coming after: comp., of less account. inferior.

postquam, (temp. conj.), after.

postulo, are, &c., to demand.

potens, entis, powerful.

potentia, ae, power, ability.

potestas, atis, power, right.

potior, iri, &c., to get possession of, acquire.

prae, before, in comparison with, for: prae maerore, for grief.

praebeo, ere, &c., to furnish.

praeceptum, i, precept; from

PROBITOR.

prae cipio, ere, cep-, cept-, to instruct, order, command.

prae cipue, especially.

prae cipuus, a, um, especial.

prae clarus, a, um, very distinguished.

praeco, onis, crier, herald.

praeda, ae, booty.

prae dico, are, &c., to boast.

prae ditus, a, um, endowed.

praedor, eri, &c., to plunder.

prae ficio, ere, fec-, fact-, to put over.

prae mitto, mis-, miss-, to send forward.

praemium, i, reward.

prae pono, posu-, posit-, to prefer.

praesens, entis, present.

praesidium, i, garrison.

praestans, antis, excellent, distinguished.

prae sto, are, stit-, stit-, to excel.

prae sum, esse, fui, to be over.

praeter, past, besides, beyond.

praeter eo, ire, iv-, it-, to pass by.

praetor mitto, mis-, miss-, to let slip.

praetor, oris, praetor, chief.

pravus, a, um, crooked, depraved.

premo, ere, press-, press-, to press.

pretium, i, price, value.

primus, a, um, first.

princeps, ipis, chief.

prior, primus, former, sooner.

priusquam, before.

pristinus, a, um, former.

privatus, a, um, private.

pro, for, before.

pro cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to go forward.

procul, at a distance.

pro curro, ere, cucurr- & curr-, curs-, to run forward.

proditor, oris, traitor.

PRÆLIUM.

prælium, i, battle.

profectio, onis, departure.

pro ficiscor, i, fectus, to set out.

pro fligo, arc, &c., to dash in pieces.

pro fugio, ere, fug-, fugit-, to flee, run away, escape.

progenies, ei, offspring.

progredior, i, gressus, to go forth or forward.

pro hibeo, ere, &c., to prevent, keep off.

promptus, a, um, ready, quick.

propero, are, &c., to hasten.

propinquus, a, um, near.

propior, proximus, nearer, next.

pro pono, ere, posu-, posit-, to set up.

propositum, i, purpose.

propter, on account of.

propterea, on this account.

pro pulso, are, &c., to repel.

pro sequor, i, secutus, to pursue.

pro sum, prodesse, profui, to benefit, to do good.

providentia, ae, foresight, providence.

provincia, ae, province.

prudens, entis, prudent.

prudentia, ae, prudence.

publicus, a, um, public.

pudet, puduit, it shames.

pudor, oris, shame, modesty.

puella, ae, girl.

puer, i, boy.

pugna, ae, fight.

pugno, are, &c., to fight.

pulcher, a, um, beautiful.

pulchritudo, inis, beauty.

pulvis, eris, dust.

Punicus, a, um, Carthaginian.

punio, ire, &c. to punish.

purgo, are, &c. to cleanse, excuse.

puto, are, to think.

Q.

quadraginta, (§ 63), forty.

quaero, ere, quaesiv-, quaesit-, to seek, ask.

qualis, of what kind, as.

quam, than, as.

quamquam, although.

quamvis, however much, although.

quantus, a, um, how great, as.

tantus—quantus, as great—as.

quatuor, (§63) four.

queror, i, questus, to complain.

qui, quae, quod, who, which.

quicumque, whoever.

quidam, §89.

quidem, indeed.

quin, but that, that, but.

quindecim, (§63), fifteen.

quingenti, ae, a, (§63), five hundred.

quippe, surely, since.

quis, §89; quis? §88.

quisnam, §88.

quispiam, }

quisquam, } §89.

quisque, }

quisquis, §87, 2.

quivis, quilibet, §89.

quo, whither.

quo-ad, to what point, as long as, until.

quòd, because.

quo-minus, §193, Rem. 5.

quoniam, since, because.

quoque, also.

quot, how many, as.

quotannis, yearly.

quotidie, daily.

quum, when, since, although.

R.

ramus, i, branch, bough.

rapina, ae, plunder, pillage.

RAPIO.

rapio, ere, rapu-, rapt-, to snatch,
seize, carry off.
ratio, onis, plan, reasoning, cause.
Rauraci, orum, a tribe of Gauls.
rebellio, onis, rebellion.
recens, entis, recent.
receptus, us, retreat.
recipio, cep-, cept-, to take back,
regain, recover. se recipere, to
retreat, to recover oneself.
rectus, a, um, straight, right.
recupero, are, &c., to recover.
recuso, are, to object, repudiate.
red-do: ere, did-, dit-, to give back,
render, make.
red eo, ire, redi-, redit-, to return.
redigo, ere, eg-, act-, to reduce.
red integro, are, &c., to renew.
reditus, us, return.
re duoq, ere, dux-, duct-, to lead
back.
re fero, ferre, tul-, lat-, to with-
draw.
re fert, retulit, it concerns.
reficio, ere, fec-, fect-, to repair.
regina, æ, queen.
regio, onis, region, tract.
regnum, i, kingdom.
rego, ere, rex-, rect-, to rule.
religio, onis, vow, religion.
re linquo ere, liqui, lictum, to leave.
reliquus, a, um, the rest.
re nuncio, are, &c., to carry back
word.
reor, reri, ratus, to suppose
repens, entis, sudden.
repente, suddenly.
reperio, ire, reper-, repert-, to find
out.
repeto, ere, iv-, -it, to seek back.
repudio, are, &c., to refuse.
res, rei, thing
re scindo, ere, scid-, sciss-, to cut
down.

SCAPHA.

re sisto, ere, stit-, to resist.
re spondeo, ere, spond-, spons-, to
answer.
rete, is, net.
re vello, ere, vell-, vuls-, to tear off.
re vereor, eri, &c., to reverence.
re voco, are, to recall.
rex, regis, king.
Rhenus, i, the Rhine.
Rhodanus, i, the Rhone.
robur, oris, heart of oak, strength.
rogo, are, &c., to ask.
Roma, æ, Rome.
Romanus, a, um, Roman.
rosa, æ, rose.
ruber, a, um, red.
rudens, entis, rope, cable.
rudis, e, rude, uncivilized,
rumpo, ere, rup-, rupt-, to break.
rupes, is, rock.
rursus, again.
rus, ruris, country.
rusticus, a, um, living in the coun-
try, rustic.

S.

Sabini, orum, Sabines.
sacer, a, um, sacred.
sacerdos, otis, priest.
sæpe, often
sævus, a, um, savage, fierce.
sagitta, æ, arrow.
salar, aris, trout.
salto, are, &c., to dance.
saluber, bris, bre, wholesome.
salus, utis, safety, health.
sanctus, a, um, sacred, pure.
sanguis, inis, blood.
sænus, sound, healthy.
sapiens, entis, wise.
sapientia, æ, wisdom. [ciently.
satis, enough, sufficient, suffi-
saucius, a, um, wounded.
saxum, i, rock.
scapha, æ, boat, skiff.

SCELUS.

scelus, eris, crime, wickedness.
 scio, ire, &c., to know.
 Scipio, onis, Scipio. [write
 scribo, ere, scrips-, script-, to
 scriptor, oris, writer.
 scutum, -i, shield.
 se cado, ere, cess-, cess-, to secede.
 se cerno, ere, crev, cret-, to se-
 parate. [to cut.
 seco, are, secui, sectum, secaturus,
 secundus, a, um, following, sec-
 ond, favorable.
 secundum, following, according to.
 securis, is, axe.
 sed, but.
 sedeo, ere sed-, sess-, to sit.
 sedes, is, seat, settlement.
 sedile, is, seat.
 seditio, onis, sedition.
 semper, always.
 sempiternus, a, um, everlasting.
 senatus, us, & i, senate.
 senex, senis, old.
 sententia, æ, opinion: ex senten-
 tia, satisfactorily.
 Sequanus, a, um, Sequan.
 sequor, i, secutus, to follow.
 sermo, onis, conversation, talk.
 servio, ire, &c., to be a slave, serve.
 servitus, tutis, slavery.
 servo, are, &c., to preserve.
 servus, i, slave.
 sex, (‡ 63,) six.
 sibilo, are, &c., to hiss.
 sic, thus.
 sidus, eris, star, constellation.
 signum, i, sign, signal.
 silva, æ, wood, forest.
 silvestris or ter, e, woody.
 similis, e, like.
 simul, at the same time.
 simul ac, as soon as.
 sine, without.
 singuli, æ, a, single, one at a time.

SUPERBUS.

sino, ere, siv-, sit-, to put, permit.
 sinus, us, gulf, bay.
 sitio, ire, ivi, to be thirsty.
 sitis, is, thirst.
 socor, i, father-in-law.
 socius, i, companion.
 soleo, ere, solitus, to be used, wont.
 solus, a, um, only, alone.
 solvo, ere, solv-, solut-, to loose.
 somnus, i, sleep.
 sonus, i, sound.
 soror, oris, sister.
 spatium, i, room, space, time.
 specus, us, den, cave, grotto.
 spero, are, &c., to hope.
 spes, ei, hope.
 spolio, are, to spoil, rob, plunder.
 statuo, ere, statu-, statut-, to place,
 put, determine.
 statura, æ, stature, size, height.
 stella, æ, star.
 stimulus, i, goad.
 stipendium, i, tax, tribute.
 strenuus, a, um, nimble, active.
 studeo, ere, to attend to, be eager
 for.
 studium, zeal, desire; pl. studies.
 stultus, a, um, foolish.
 stultitia, æ, folly.
 suadeo, ere, suas-, suass-, to advise.
 subeo, ire, ii, itum, to go under.
 subigo, ere, eg, act-, to subdue.
 subitus, a, um, sudden.
 sub levo, are, &c., to relieve.
 subsidium, reserve, support, help.
 sub venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to come
 to one's assistance, help.
 sui, ‡ 78.
 suus, a, um, ‡ 80.
 sum, esse, fui, to be.
 sumo, ere, sumps-, sumpt-, to take.
 supellex, lectilis, furniture.
 superbia, æ, pride.
 superbus, a, um, proud.

SUPERO.

supero, are, &c., to overcome.
 superstitio, onis, superstition.
 surgo, ere, surrex-, surrect-, to
 rise. [dertake.
 suscipio, ere, cep-, cept-, to un-
 suspicor, ari, &c., to suspect.
 sustineo, ere, tinu-, tent-, to sus-
 tain.

T.

taceo, ere, &c., to be silent.
 taedet, uit, it wearies, disgusts.
 talentum, i, talent.
 talis, e, such.
 tam, so.
 tamen, nevertheless.
 tametsi, although.
 tandem, at length.
 tango, ere, tetig-, tact-, to touch.
 tantus, a, um, so much, so great.
 tantus-dem, adem, undem, just as
 much.
 tardo are, &c., to delay, retard.
 tardus, a, um, slow.
 Tarquinius, i, Tarquin.
 taurus, i, bull.
 tectum, i, roof.
 tellus, uris, earth.
 telum, i, dart.
 temere, rashly.
 tempestas, tatis, time, weather,
 (good or bad), tempest.
 templum, i, temple.
 tempus, oris, time.
 tenax, acis, tenacious.
 teneo, ere, tenu-, tent-, to hold.
 tento, are, &c., to attempt.
 tenuis, e, slender.
 tergum, i, back.
 terminus, i, end, limit.
 terra, æ, earth, ground.
 terreo, ere, &c., to frighten.
 terror, oris, terror, fright.
 tertius, a, um, (263), third.
 testis, is, witness.

TURBIDUS.

Thebæ, arum, Thebes.
 Thrax, acis, Thracian.
 thronus, i, throne.
 Tiberis, is, the Tiber.
 timeo, ere, timu-, to fear.
 timidus, a, um, cowardly.
 timor, oris, fear, panic.
 tolero, aro, &c., to endure.
 tondeo, ere, totond-, tons-, to
 tonitrus us, thunder. [shear.
 tot, so many.
 totus, a, um, whole.
 tra do, ere, did-, dit-, to deliver
 over, hand down.
 tra jicio, ere, jec-, ject-, to ship
 trames, itis, by-path. [over.
 tra no, are, &c., to swim across.
 trans, across, beyond.
 trans duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to
 lead over.
 trans eo, ire, transi-, transit-, to
 go across, pass over, pass away.
 transjicio, see traj.
 tres, tria, (263), three.
 tribunus, i, tribune.
 tribus, us, tribe.
 tribuo, ere, ui, utum, to give, assign.
 triduum, i, three days' time.
 triennium, i, three years' time.
 tripartito, in three divisions.
 triplex, icis, triple.
 tristis, e, sad.
 trucidō, are, &c., to slay, butcher.
 tuba, æ, trumpet.
 tueor, eri, tuitus & tutus, to protect.
 Tullius, i, Tully.
 Tullianum, i, a prison at Rome:
 built by king Servius Tullius.
 tum, then.
 tumultus, us, tumult, uproar.
 tumulus, i, mound.
 tunc, then.
 turba, æ, crowd.
 turbidus, a, um, disordered, muddy.

TURBO.

turbo, are, &c., to throw into con-
 turbation, whirlwind. [fusion.
 turris, e, base.
 turris, is, tower.
 tutor, ari, &c., to defend, protect.
 tutus, a, um, safe.
 tuus, a, um, § 80.
 tyrannus, i, tyrant.

U.

ubi, where, when.
 ubique, every where.
 ulciscor, i, ultus, to avenge.
 ullus, a, um, eius, any.
 ululo, are, &c., to howl.
 umbra, æ, shadow, shade.
 unquam or unquam, ever.
 una (parte), in one place, together.
 unda, æ, wave.
 unde, whence, from which.
 undique, on all sides.
 universus, a, um, all, universal.
 unus, a, um, one.
 urbs, urbis, city.
 uro, ere, uss-, ust-, to burn.
 usus, us, using, use, practice.
 ut, that, in order that.
 uter? a, um, which of the two?
 uterque, aque, umque, both.
 utilis, e, useful.
 utinam, O that!
 utor, i, usus, to use.
 uxor, oris, wife.

V.

vaco, are, &c., to be unoccupied.
 vacuus, a, um, empty.
 vadum, i, ford.
 vagor, ari, &c., to wander about.
 valeo, ere, -ui, to be strong, well.
 vallis, is, valley.
 vallum, i, rampart.
 varius, a, um, various.
 vastitas, atis, devastation.
 vasto, are, &c., to lay waste.
 vates, is, prophet.

VIRTUS.

vestigal, alis, tax.
 vehementer, excessively.
 veho, ere, vex-, vect-, to carry.
 vel, or, even.
 velox, ocis, swift.
 velum, i, sail.
 venator, oris, hunter. [sell.
 vendo, ere, vendid-, vendit-, to
 venenum, i, poison.
 venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to come.
 venter, tris, belly.
 ventus, i, wind.
 ver, veris, spring.
 verbum, i, word.
 vereor, eri, &c., to reverence, fear.
 vergo, ere, to turn, incline.
 veritas, atis, truth.
 Verres, is, Verres, (boar).
 versus, us, verse.
 veras, a, um, true.
 vescor, i, to eat.
 vesper, i, & is, evening.
 vester, a, um, § 80.
 vestigium, i, foot-print.
 vestis, is, clothing.
 vetus, eris, old, ancient.
 vexillum, i, flag, ensign.
 vexo, are, to vex, harass, annoy.
 via, æ, way.
 victor, oris, conqueror.
 vicus, i, village.
 video, ere, vid-, vis-, to see; pas-
 sive, to seem.
 vigilia, æ, watch.
 vigilo, are, to watch.
 viginti, (§ 63), twenty.
 vincio, ire, vinx-, vinct-, to bind.
 vinco, ere, vic-, vict-, to conquer.
 vinculum, i, chain.
 vinum, i, wine.
 vir, viri, man, husband.
 virgo, inis, virgin.
 viridis, e, green.
 virtus, tutis, courage, virtue.

VITA.

vita, æ, life.
 vitium, i, vice.
 vitreus, a, um, made of glass.
 vivo, ere, vix-, vict-, to live.
 vivus, a, um, alive.
 vix, scarcely.
 voco, are, to call.
 volo, velle volui, to will.
 volo, are, &c., to fly.
 volvo, ere, volvi, volut-, to roll.

VULTUS.

voluptas, tatis, pleasure.
 voro, are, &c., to devour.
 voveo, ere, vovi, vot, to vow.
 vox, vocis, voice.
 vulgus, i, common people.
 vulnero, are, &c., to wound.
 vulnus, eris, wound.
 vultus, uris, vulture.
 vultus, us, countenance.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

ability, potestas.
 able, (to be), possum.
 abound, abundo.
 about, circiter, de.
 above, super, supra.
 absent, absens: to be abs, abesse.
 abuse, abuti, (use amiss;) maledicere, (speak amiss.)
 access, aditus.
 accomplish, conficere. For the ac of those things, ad eas res conficere.
 accuse, arguo, accuso.
 accustom, consueco.
 accustomed (to be), soleo.
 acquire, comparo.
 acquit, absolvo.
 across, trans.
 active, a, ilis.
 add, addo.
 address, appellare, compellere.
 admire, miror.
 admonish, moneo.
 adorn, decoro.
 advance, progredior, procedo.

ALTHOUGH.

advantage, commodum.
 advise, consilium.
 Ædian, Ædus.
 affair, res.
 afford, præbeo.
 afraid, (to be,) timeo, metuo, vereor.
 after, (prep.) post; (conj.) postquam.
 afterwards, postea.
 against, contra, ad, adversus.
 age, ætas.
 agreeable, acceptus, gratus.
 agriculture, agricultura.
 aid, (n.) auxilium.
 aid, (v.) subvenio.
 air, aer.
 alarm, perturbo, permoveo.
 Alexander, Alexander.
 all, omnis.
 allare, illicio.
 already, jam.
 also, etiam, quoque.
 altar, ara.
 although, licet, quamvis, quoniam, etsi, &c.

AMBASSADOR.

ambassador, legatus
 embassy, legatio.
 ambush, insidie.
 among, (of things,) inter; (of persons) apud.
 ancient, vetus, antiquus
 anger, ira
 angry, iracundus.
 —, to be, irascor.
 animal, animal.
 annoy, vex.
 another, (of two,) alter; (of many,) alius
 answer, respondeo. [alius
 any, § 89
 apiece, 'expressed' by distributive numerals § 63. 1, c.
 approach, aggredior, accedo.
 archer, sagittarius.
 arise, orior
 arm, (v.) armo.
 arms, arma
 around, circum.
 arrival, adventus.
 arrow, sagitta.
 art, ars.
 as, (conj.) quam.
 as great—as tantus—quantus.
 as many—as tot—quot.
 such—as, talis—qualis
 just as much—as, tantusdem—qu.
 ascend, ascendo
 ascertain, cognosco.
 ashamed, (to be), pudet. § 135, c.
 ask, rogo, peto, interrogo.
 asleep, (to fall), dormito.
 assault, oppugno.
 assert, confirmo.
 assistance, auxilium to come to one's assistance, subvenio.
 atrocious, atrox.
 attack, (n.), impetus.
 attack, (v.), oppugno, aggredior.
 attempt, tento, conor.
 authority, auctoritas.

BODY.

avoid, vito.
 avail, exspecto.
 B.
 back, tergum.
 bad, malus.
 barbarian, barbarus.
 base, turpis.
 battle, proelium.
 be, esse.
 bear, fero, tolero.
 beat, (defeat) pel'o, vinco.
 beautiful, pulcher.
 beauty, pulchritudo.
 because, quod, quia, quoniam.
 become, fio it becomes, decet.
 bed chamber, cubiculum.
 bee, apis.
 before, (prep.) ante; (conj.), antequam, priusquam.
 beg, rogo, peto.
 begin, coepi.
 behold, conspicio, aspicio.
 behoove, it behooves, oportet.
 believe or do
 benefit, beneficium.
 best, optimus.
 bestow (labor, pains), operam dare.
 between, inter.
 beware, caveo
 big, magnus, amplius.
 bind, vincio
 bird, avis
 birth, natus, us. before one's birth, ante aliquem natum.
 bite, mordeo.
 biting, morsus
 blame, reprehendo, incuso.
 blind, cæcus.
 blood, sanguis.
 pour, aper.
 boast, prædico
 boat, scapha linter.
 body, corpus nobody, nemo, nullus. anybody § 89.

BOLDLY.

boldly, audaciter.
 book, liber.
 born, (to be), nascor
 both, ambo (both together), uterque
 (both separately) On both sides,
 utrimque; by both parties, ab u-
 tri-que.
 boundary, finis.
 bow, arcus.
 boy, puer.
 brave, fortis.
 bravely fortiter.
 bread panis.
 break through, perfringo.
 break (a law), violo.
 bribe, (v.), largior.
 bribe (n.), largiti pecunia.
 bridle iufreno.
 bring, fero; bring word, nuntio;
 bring back word, renuntio.
 Britain, Britannia.
 Briton Britannus.
 broad, litus.
 brother, frater.
 build ædificare.
 bull taurus.
 burden, onus.
 burn me into, exuro. burn down,
 he burnt down, d. flagro
 business negotium, res, (pl)
 but sed, verum, vero.
 buy emio
 by far, longe.

C.

calamity, calamitas.
 call, vocare; — together, convo-
 care; — back, revocare.
 camp, castra.
 can, possum
 canton, pagus.
 captive, captivus.
 care, cura.
 carry porto, fero.
 cause, causa.

COUNTRY.

cavalry, equitatus.
 certain, certus: a. c. one, quidam.
 chain, vinulum
 chance, casus, fors.
 characteristic, (it is c. of a poor
 man, pauperis est.)
 chariot, currus
 chief princeps.
 children, liberi.
 choose, deligo.
 citizen, civis.
 city, urbs.
 civil, civilis.
 civilization cultus, humanitas.
 cloud, nubes.
 collect, colligo, comparo.
 come venio.
 command, jubeo, impero.
 commit (to any one,) mando.
 common, communis c. people, plebs
 commonwealth, respublica.
 companion, comes, socius.
 compel, cogo.
 complain, queror.
 conceal, celo.
 condemn, condemno.
 confess, confiteor.
 conquer, vincere.
 conscious, conscius.
 conspire, conjuro
 conspiracy conjuratio.
 consul, consul.
 consult, consulo.
 contend, contendo, certo.
 contest, certamen.
 convenience, commodum.
 conversation, sermo.
 cook, coquo
 corn, frumentum.
 correct, corrigo
 corrupt, corumpo
 cost, stare aliqua re.
 countenance, vultus
 country, terra, regio.

COURAGE.

courage, virtus, fortitudo.
covetous, avarus.
cowardly, timidus.
create, creo.
crime, scelus.
cross, transeo.
crown, corona.
cruel, crudelis, atrox.
cultivate, colo.
cup, poculum.
custom, consuetudo: according to
custom, ex consuetudine.
cut, seco.

D.

dance salto.
danger, periculum.
dare, audeo.
dart, telum.
day, dies; *to-day*, hodie.
dead, mortuus.
dear, carus.
death, mors.
debate, disputo.
deceive, fallô.
deceit, illicio.
dedicate, dico.
deem, existimo, duco, habeo.
deep, altus.
defend, defendo, defenso, tueor.
defer, differo.
delay, moror.
delight, delecto, juvo.
demand posco, posulo, flagito.
deny, nego.
depart, discedo.
depraved, pravus.
deprive, privo, spolio.
depth, altitudo.
desire, cupio.
desirous, avidus, cupidus.
despair, despero.
destitute, expers., inops.
destroy, deleo.
devoid, vacuus, expers.

END.

devour, voro, devoro.
dictator, dictator.
die, morior.
differ (in opinion,) dissentio.
difference: — what d. does it make?
Quid interest?
difficult, difficilis.
disgrace, dedecus.
dish, c. tinus catinum.
dismiss, dimitto.
displease, displiceo.
dispute, disputo.
distant, (to be,) absum.
distinguished, præstans, præclarus.
ditch, fossa.
divide, divido.
do, facio.
dog, canis.
double, duplex. *to double* duplico.
doubt, dubitatio: *to doubt*, dubito.
doubtful, dubius.
dove, columba.
down-hill, deorsum.
drink, bibo.
dust, pulvis.
duty, officium, munus. *It is the*
king's duty, my duty, §183.
dwell, habito, incolo.

E.

eagle, aquila.
earth, terra tellus.
ear hen, fectilis.
easy facilis: *easily*, facile. *very*
easy perfacilis.
eat, edo, ve-eor. [edico.
edict, edictum; *to issue an edict*,
egi, ovum.
eight, octo, §63.
either — or, aut — aut.
el quenee, eloquentia.
embassy, legatio.
encamp, ca-tra pono, con-sido.
encourage, hortor, cohortor.
end, finis.

ENDEAVOR.

endeavor, conor.
 endure, fero, patior, tolero.
 enemy, hostis.
 enmity, inimicitia.
 enough, satis.
 err, erro.
 especially, præcipue.
 especial, præcipuus.
 establish, confirmo, constituo.
 esteem, æstimo.
 even etiam; *not even*, ne quidem.
 every, omnis.
 evil, malus, (noun,) malum.
 excellent, præstans.
 excite, concito, excito, instigo.
 excuse, purgo.
 exercise, exerceo.

F.

face, facies.
 faithful, fidus.
 fall, cado.
 fame, fama.
 famous, clarns.
 far, (adv.), longe.
 farmer, agricola.
 father, pater.
 fault, culpa, delictum, peccatum.
 it is my fault, per me stat.
 favor, faveo.
 fear, timor. *metus*. *to fear*, timeo.
 feather, pluma. [metuo, vereor.
 fertile, ferax.
 fever, febris.
 few, pauci.
 field, ager.
 fifty, 50.
 fight, (v.), pugno; (n.), pugna.
 figure, figura.
 fill, complico, impleo.
 find, invenio, reperio.
 finish, conficio.
 fire, ignis.
 first, primus.
 fish, pisces.

GATE.

fit, aptus, idoneus.
 five, 50.
 flag, vexillum.
 flank, latus: *on the fl.* ab latere.
 flattering, blandus.
 fleet, classis.
 flesh, caro.
 flock, grex.
 flog, verbero.
 flow, fluo: — *into*, infuso.
 flower, flos.
 fly, volo.
 follow, sequor.
 fond, amans, cupidus.
 food, cibus.
 fool, foolish, stultus.
 folly, stultitia.
 foot, pes; *at the foot of a mountain*,
 footman, pedes. [sub monte.
 for, (conj.). nam, enim, &c.
 for these things, ob has res.
 for grief, (preventing cause,) præ
 for the purpose, causa. [merore.
 force, vis.
 forces, copie.
 forest, silva.
 forget, obliviscor.
 form, forma, figura.
 fortify, cōmūnio.
 fortitude, æquus animus, fortitudo.
 fortune, fortuna.
 four, 40.
 free, (adj.), liber; (v.), libero.
 fresh, integer.
 friend, amicus.
 friendship, amicitia.
 fright, pavor, timor, terror.
 frighten, terreo.
 fruit, fructus.
 full, plenus.
 of — *figure*, supellex.
 G.
 mind, animus.
 miserable, mis.

GENERAL.

general, imperator.
German, Germanus.
Germany, Germania.
gift, donum.
girl, puella.
give, do.
glory, gloria.
go, eo, proficiscor.
 — *out*, exeo.
God, deus.
gold, aurum.
golden, aureus.
good, bonus.
gose, auser.
govern, rego, impere.
grammar, grammatica.
grandson, nepos.
great, magnus.
green, viridis.
Greece, Græcia.
grief, dolor, mæror.
ground, terra, humus.
grow, cresco.
guard, præsidium.
guest, hospes.
guide, dux.
gulp down, devoro.

H.

half, dimidium.
hand, manus.
happy, lætus.
harbor, portus.
hasten, propero, festino, maturo.
hatred, odium.
have, habeo, esse with dative.
head, caput.
hear, audio.
heart, cor.
heavy, gravis; *heavily*, graviter.
heel, calx.
height, altitudo.
help, auxilium.
hide, abdo, lateo.
high, altus.

INSOLENCE.

hill, collis.
hinder, impedio. obsto.
hindrance, impedimentum.
hold, teneo, habeo, — *in*, contineo.
home, domus.
hope, spes; *to hope*, spero.
horn, cornu.
horse, equus.
horseman, eques.
hostage, obsec.
hour, hora.
house, domus.
human, humanus.
hunger, famo.
hungry, esuriens.
hunter, venator.
hurt, conicio.
hurt, noceo.
hurtful, noxius.

I.

I, ego.
if, si.
ignorant, ignarus, insciens.
image, effigies.
imitate, imitor.
immortal, immortalis.
immortality, immortalitas.
impatient, impatient.
implore, obsecro.
import, importo.
impossible (*it is*.) fieri non potest.
incapable of restraining, impotens.
increase, augeo, cresco.
indulge, indulgeo.
infant, infans.
inferior, of less account, inferior.
infinite, infinitus.
inflict, inferre.
inform, certiorum facere.
inhabitant, incolæ.
inhabitant, incolæ.
incamp, ea, noceo, injuria, læssio.
incourage, injuria.
insult, finis. insolentia.

INSTIGATE.

instigate, insito, instigo.
instruct, instituo, præcipio.
introduce, introduco.
intrust, mando.
invade, invado.
inventor, inventor.
invincible, invictus.
invite, invito.
iron, ferrum.

J.

journey, iter.
joyful, letus, jucundus.
judge, iudex.
just, justus, æquus.

K

keep, servo; *keep in*, continuo; *keep*
key, clavis. [off. prohibeo
kid, hædus.
kill, occido, trucidô, neco.
kind, benignus.
king, rex.

kingdom, regnum.

knife, culter.

know, nosco, scio; *not to know*

L.

labor, labor.

lamb, agnus.

language, lingua.

land, terra, ager.

last, ultimus.

law, lex, jus.

lead, duco; *lead on*, adduco indu-

co; *to lead over*, tran-duco; *to*

lead against, adduco

leaf, folium.

learn, disco.

learned, doctus.

leave, relinquo.

legion, legio.

length, longitudo.

less, minor. [(*epistle*), epistol-]

letter (of the alphabet), litera

levy, conscribo.

liberty, libertas.

MISERABLE.

lie (hid), lateo.

to lie, mentior.

lie (falsehood), mendacium.

liar, mendax.

life, vita, anima.

light, (adj.), levis; (n.), lux.

like, similis.

line of battle, acies.

lion, leo.

little, parvus.

live, vivo, habito.

liver, jecur.

load, onus.

to load, onero.

long, (adj.), longus; (adv.), diu.

look at, aspicio.

look to, consulo (with dat.)

lose, amitto.

love, amor; *to love*, amo.

low, humilis.

lure, lateo.

trust, fides, iam.

M.

magnanimous, magnanimus.

maid-servant, ancilla.

make, facio, reddo.

maltrait, violo.

man, homo, vir.

manner, modus.

many, multi; *how many*, quot.

marble, marmor.

must, malus.

master, magister, dominus.

means, facultas.

measure, metior.

medicine, medicîna.

memory, memoria.

merchant, mercator.

Mercury, Mercurius.

messenger, nuntius.

mile, lac.

mile, mille passus.

mind, animus, mens.

miserable, miser.

MONEY.

money, pecunia.
 month, mensis.
 moon, luna.
 morals, mores.
 more, plus, amplius, magis.
 mother, mater.
 mountain, mons.
 move, moveo.
 much, multus.
 murder, neco, occido.
 music, musica.
 nest, 2178.

N.

name, nomen.
 nation, natio, gens.
 nature, natura. [quus.
 near, (*prep.*) prope; (*adj.*) propin-
 need, opus.
 neglect, negligo.
 neighboring, finitimus.
 neither, (*of two*) neuter.
 neither—nor, neque—neque, nec—
 neque
 nest, nidus; to build *n.*, nidifico.
 net, rete
 never, nunquam, ne unquam
 new, novus.
 next, proximus.
 night, nox.
 nine, 263
 no, nullus
 no one, nemo, ne—quisquam.
 noble, nobilis.
 nobility, nobilitas.
 noise, clamor, strepitus.
 none, nullus.
 not, non.
 nothing, nihil.
 number, numerus.

O.

O! O! oh!
 O that! utinam.
 oath, ju-jurandum.
 obedient, dico audiens.

PERISH.

obey, pareo.
 obscure, obscuro.
 obtain, potior, nanciscor.
 occupy, occupo. [bus.
 off. — two miles off, a duobus milli-
 often, sæpe. [annos datus.
 old, senex: five years old, quinque
 oldest, maximus natu.
 one, unus; — of two, alter: of
 many, alius, (when followed by
 another.)
 on horseback, ex equo or equis.
 opinion, sententia.
 opportunity, facultas, potestas.
 oppress, opprimo:
 or, vel, ve, aut.
 oracle, oraculum.
 orator, orator:
 oration, oration.
 origin, origo.
 ought, oportet, gerundive with esse.
 our, noster.
 out of, e, ex.
 overcome, supero, vinco
 overtake, consequor.
 o, hos.

P.

pace, passus.
 pain, dolor.
 pains, opera.
 panic, timor.
 paper, charta.
 parent, parens.
 parricide, parracida.
 part, pars.
 partly, partim.
 pass away, transeo.
 pass by, prætereo.
 patiently, æquo animo.
 pay, pendo.
 peace, pax. [piebes.
 people, populus; common, p. plebs,
 perceive, intelligo, animadverto.
 perish, pereō.

PERSUADE.

persuade, persuadeo.
philosopher, philosophus.
pirate, pirata.
pity, misereor, miseret, § 135.
place, locus.
pleasant, gratus.
please, placeo.
pleasure, voluptas.
plow, arō.
to plunder, prædō, diripio.
plunder, præda.
poet, poeta.
point, acies.
poison, venenum.
poor, pauper.
post, locus.
poverty, paupertas, egestas.
power, potestas; vis.
powerful, potens.
prefer, præpono.
prepare, paro.
present, præsens.
preserve, servo, conservo.
prevent, impedio, obsto, deterreo.
price, pretium.
pride, superbia.
priest, sacerdos.
prison, carcer.
prisoner, captivus.
private, privatus.
promise, polliceor.
protect, tutari.
proud, superbus.
providence, providentia.
province, provincia.
provoke, laceesso.
prudent, prudens.
public, publicus.
punish, punio. [sulto.
purpose, propositum; *on p.*, con-
pursue, persequor.
put, pono;—*into winter quarters*,
 in hiberna collocare.

Q.

queen, regina.
quickly, celeriter.
 R.
rain, imber.
ram, aries.
rampart, vallum.
rank, ordo.
reach, ad locum pervenio.
read, lego.
ready, promptus, paratus.
reason, mental faculty, ratio.
rebellion, rebellio.
rebuke, reprehendo.
recall, revoco.
receive, accipio.
recent, recens.
redress, (to ask,) res repetere.
refinement, humanitas.
refrain, sibi temperare quin.
reject, repudio.
rejoice, gaudeo.
relieve, levō.
religion, religio.
remain, maneo.
remember, memini, memoria teneo.
remind, moneo, admonéo.
render, reddo.
renew, redintegro.
repair, reficio.
repent, pœnitet, § 135.
reply, respondeo.
report, renuntiatio.
reprove, reprehendo.
resolve, statuo.
rest, reliquus, § 128, *Rom.* 8.
retard, tardo.
retire, excedo, se recipere.
retreat, recipio.
return, redeo, reddo.
reverence, revereor.
reward, præmium.
Rhine, Rhenus.
Rhone, Rhodanus.
rich, dives.

RICHES.

riches, divitiæ.
ride, equito.
river, flumen, amnia.
road, via, iter.
robber, prædo.
rock, rupes, saxum.
rope, rudens.
rose, rosa.
rough, asper.
route, fugo, profligo.
rule, rego.
run, curro; — *forward*, præcurro.

S.

sacred, sacer, sanctus.
sacrifice, mactō.
safe, tutus.
safety, salus.
sagacious, argutus.
sail, velum. *to sail*, navigo.
sailor, nauta.
sake, causa.
same, idem.
savage, atrox, ferus.
save, servo.
say, dico, inquam.
scout, explorator.
sea, mare.
seat, sedile.
second, secundus.
see, video.
seek, peto, quæro.
seem, videor.
seize, occupo, rapio, arripio.
sell, vendo.
senate, senatus.
send, mitto; — *forward*, præmitto.
separate, divido, secerno.
serpent, serpens.
serve, servio.
set, pono; *set up*, colloco, propono.
seven, 763.
severe, gravis.
shade, umbra.
sharp, acer, acutus.

STIR UP

sheaf, merges.
sheep, ovis.
shear, tondeo.
shepherd, pastor.
shield, scutum.
ship, navis.
shore, litus.
short, brevis.
shortness, brevitās.
shout, clamor; *to* —, clamo.
show, monstro.
side, latus, pars.
signal, signum.
silver, argentum.
sin, peccatum.
since, quum, quoniam.
sing, canto.
sister, soror.
sit, sedeo.
six, 768.
size, magnitudo.
slave, servus.
slavery, servitus.
slay, trucidō, occido.
sleep, dormio.
slinger, funditor.
slow, tardus, piger.
small, parvus, exiguus.
snaich up, arripio.
soldier, miles.
some, aliquis, quidam, &c.
son, filius.
soon, mature.
soul, animus.
space, spatium.
spare, parco.
spark, loquor.
speech, oratio.
spur, calcar.
stag, cervus.
stand, sto; — *out*, exsisto.
state, civitas.
stay, maneo.
stir up, excito, concito.

STONE.

stone lapis.
 storm, tempestas.
 strength, robur, vis.
 strike, percussio.
 strong, firmus, validus.
 study studia, pl.
 subdue, paco.
 subjugate, subigo.
 such talis.
 sudden, subitas, repentinus.
 sue for, peto.
 sufficiently, satis.
 suitable, aptus, idoneus.
 summer, æstas.
 sun, sol.
 sunset, solis occasus.
 sup, cœno;
 superstition, superstitio.
 support, sustineo.
 suppose, arbitror, opinor, existimo.
 suppress, opprimo. [deactio.
 surrender, trado, dedo; *surrender*,
 surround, circumdo, circumfundo.
 suspect, suspicor.
 sustain, sustineo.
 sweet, dulcis.
 swell, augeo.
 swift, celer, velox.
 swiftly celeriter.
 swiftness, celeritas.
 swim across, trano.
 sword, gladius; *the sword*, ferrum.

T.

table, mensa.
 take, sumo, capio.
 talk, loquor, colloquer.
 teach, doceo.
 tear, lacrima.
 tear to pieces, lanio.
 tempest, tempestas.
 temper, (hasty,) iracundia.
 ten, 63.
 tenacious, tenax.
 terrible, atrox, terribilis.

UNDERTAKE.

terrify, perterreo.
 than, quam.
 then, tum.
 thick, densus.
 thief, fur.
 thing, res.
 think, reor, cogito, existimo, puto.
 thirst, sitis. *to thirst*, sitio.
 thirty, 63.
 though, 200.
 thousand, mille.
 threaten, minor,
 through, per. [transjicio.
 throw, jacio, jacto; *throw across*,
 thrust through, transigo.
 thunder, tonitru.
 till, dum, donec, quoad
 time, tempus
 together, una, con.
 tooth, dens.
 top, summus, (mons, &c.)
 torture, cruciatus.
 towards, ad, adversus.
 tower, turris.
 town, oppidum.
 traitor, proditor.
 transport, transporta.
 treaty, fœdus.
 tree, arbor.
 tribute, stipendium.
 true, verus.
 truth, veritas.
 trumpet, tuba.
 trust, confido.
 turn, verito.
 twenty, two, &c., 63.

U.

unable, impotens, *to be* —, non posse.
 unaccustomed, insuetus.
 unarmed, inermis.
 uncertain, incertus.
 under, sub.
 understand, intelligo.
 undertake, suscipio.

INDULY.

induly, præter modum.
indulfulness, impietas.
unhurt, integer.
unjust, iniquus.
unlike, dissimilis.
until, dum, donec, quod.
unwilling, invitus; *to be* —, nolo.
urge on, concito, incito.
use, usus.
useful, utilis.

V.

vacant, (to be), vaco.
valor, virtus, fortitudo.
vast, ingens, immanis.
very, valde, maxime, *superlative*.
vex, vexo.
vice, vitium.
victory, victoria.
violate, violo.
virtue, virtus, probitas.
voice, vox.
vow, votum.
vulture, vultur.

W.

wage, gero; — *upon*, infero.
wait for, exspecto.
walk, ambulo.
wall, murus.
wander, erro, vagor.
want, be in want of, egeo.
war, bellum.
warn, moneo, admoneo.
watch, vigilia; *to watch*, vigilo.
water, aqua.
wave, fluctus.
way, via, iter.
weak, infirmus.
weary, fessus, defessus.
weep, lacrimo, fleo.
weight, pondus.
well, bene; *to be*—valeo.
what? quid? quis? *what*, quod.
when, quum.
whence, unde.

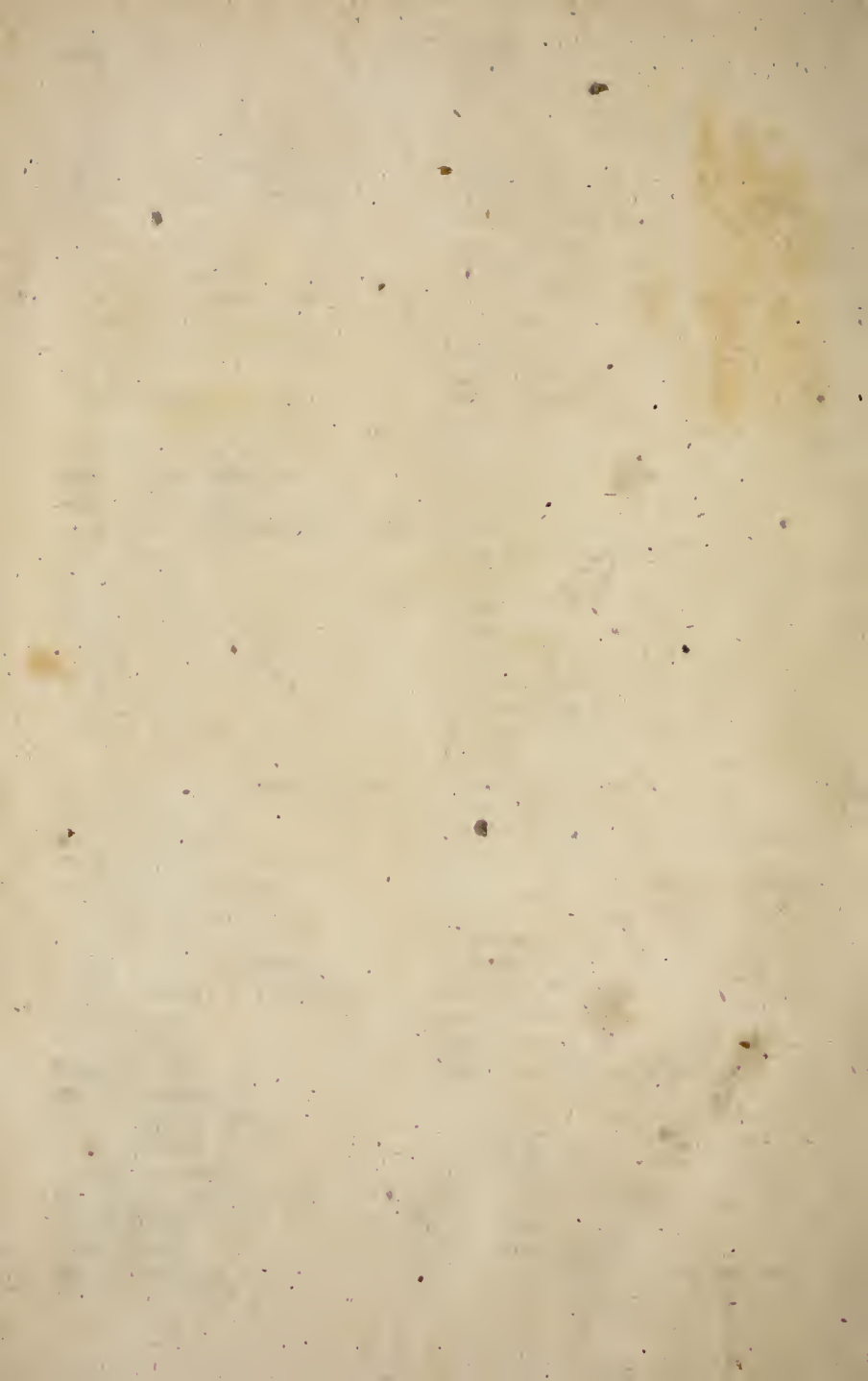
YOUTH.

where, ubi.
whether, num, utrum, an.
which? quis? uter, (of two)
white, albus.
whither, quo.
who? qui? quis?
whole, totus.
why? cur? quare?
wicked, improbus.
wide, latus.
wife, uxor, conjux.
wind, ventus.
wine, vinum.
wing, ala.
winter, hiems.
winter quarters, hiberna.
wisdom, sapientia.
wise, sapiens.
wish, volo.
with, cum.
without, sine.
witness, testis.
woman, mulier.
wonder, miro r.
wonderful, mirus.
wood, silva.
word, verbum; *bring*,—nuntio.
work, opus.
world, mundus, orbis terrarum.
worse, *worst*, pejor, pessimus.
worship, colo.
worthy, dignus.
wound, vulnus; *to wound*, vulnere.
wretched, miser.
write, scribo. *writer*, scriptor.
wrong, (to do,) peccô, male facio.

Y.

year, annus. *yearly*, quotannis.
yesterday, heri.
yet, tamen.
yield, cedo, concedo.
yoke, jugum.
your, tuus, vester.
young, juvenis. *youth*, juvenus.

$$\begin{array}{r} 729 \\ 54 \\ \hline 189 \end{array}$$





Nov 24 33F



OWN Series of School Books

PREPARED BY

Richard Sterl... A. M., & J. D. Campbell, A. M.

CONSISTING OF

I. Our Own Primer. For the use of children, pp. 34, 12mo

II. Our Own Book. For schools, pp. 112.

III. Our Own Book. Arranged to follow the Primer and containing lessons for... to read with the Primer.

IV. Our Own Book. pp. 12, 12mo.

V. Our Own Book. Have been carefully...

VI. Our Own Book. Have been...

VII. Our Own Book.

VIII. Our Own Book.

IX. Our Own Book.

X. Our Own Book.

XI. Our Own Book.

XII. Our Own Book.

XIII. Our Own Book.

XIV. Our Own Book.

XV. Our Own Book.

XVI. Our Own Book.

XVII. Our Own Book.

XVIII. Our Own Book.

XIX. Our Own Book.

XX. Our Own Book.

XXI. Our Own Book.

XXII. Our Own Book.

XXIII. Our Own Book.

XXIV. Our Own Book.

XXV. Our Own Book.

XXVI. Our Own Book.

XXVII. Our Own Book.

XXVIII. Our Own Book.

XXIX. Our Own Book.

XXX. Our Own Book.

XXXI. Our Own Book.

XXXII. Our Own Book.

XXXIII. Our Own Book.

XXXIV. Our Own Book.

XXXV. Our Own Book.

XXXVI. Our Own Book.

XXXVII. Our Own Book.

XXXVIII. Our Own Book.

XXXIX. Our Own Book.

XL. Our Own Book.

XLI. Our Own Book.

XLII. Our Own Book.

XLIII. Our Own Book.